

New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors



معاك

Ma3akApp

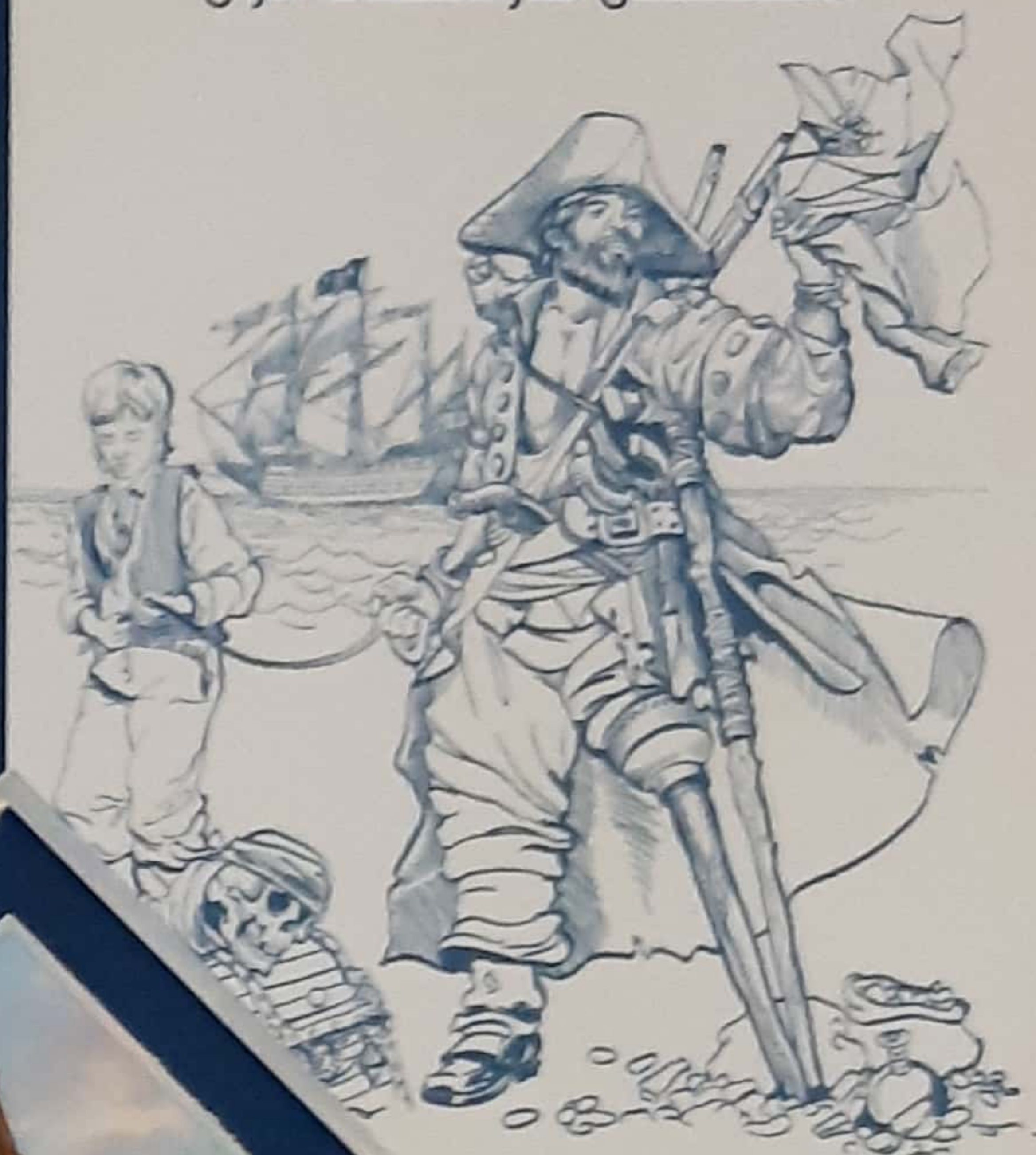
التطبيق التفاعلي
للتعلم عن بُعد



EL-MORASSER

GUIDE

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



1st
Sec.
2021
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

MODULE 1 Community

Unit 1	Getting away	page 11
Unit 2	Supporting the community	page 69
Unit 3	Improving lives	page 121
Review 1		page 171

MODULE 2 Communication

Unit 4	Making new friends	page 179
Unit 5	Communication	page 236
Unit 6	Learning from literature	page 284
Review 2		page 339

STORY ON Treasure Island

page 339

تنوية

للمعلومات التي لم يتعرض لها الطالب العام
الماضي نظرا لأزمة فيروس كورونا (كوفيد ١٩).



أنظر

• ملحق المعاصر للمهارات Skill builder

أو

• من خلال Qr code

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة✪ **Reading :**

An article about ecotourism;
two blogs about the summer holidays

✪ **Writing :**

An essay on ecotourism

✪ **Listening :**

A story about travelling and what happened
when something went wrong

✪ **Speaking :**

Describe an event

✪ **Language :**

Past simple and past continuous

✪ **Life skills :**

Collaboration

**إتقان الوحدة**

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
- ملحق المهارات.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

ancient(n)	قديم - عتيق	material (n - adj)	مادة / قماش - مادي
collaboration(n)	تعاون / تآزر	modern(adj)	حديث - مُعاصر
conservationist(n)	محافظ على البيئة	orangutan(n)	إنسان الغابة
conservation(n)	صيانة - حماية البيئة	peaceful(adj)	هادئ / ذو سَكينة
coral reefs(n)	شعاب المرجانية	peace(n)	السلام - السَكينة
crowded(adj)	مُزدحم	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
ecosystem(n)	النظام البيئي	relaxing(adj)	مريح
ecotourism(n)	السياحة البيئية	spicy(adj)	حريف - حار - متبل بالبهارات
ecotourist(n)	سائح مُراعي للبيئة	sustainable(adj)	دائم - صديق للبيئة
endangered(adj)	مُعَرَّض للخطر	swell - swelled -	يتورم - يتضخم -
environment(n)	البيئة	swollen (up) (v)	يتزايد
environmentally(adv)	من الناحية البيئية	trek(ked) (v - n)	يسير لمسافة طويلة -
exotic(adj)	غريب - أجنبي		رحلة طويلة سيراً
impact(ed) (n - v)	تأثير - يؤثر	unique(adj)	فريد - مميز
isolated(adj)	بعيد - مُنْعَزَل	voluntourist(n)	سائح مُتطوع
isolate(d) (v)	يَعْزِل / يفصل	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
isolation (n)	عُزلة - انعزال	volunteer(n)	مُتطوع
lean - leaned /	ينحني / يميل -		
leant(v)	يتكى		

2 Definitions تعريفات

ancient (n) قديم / عتيق	something that is very old
conservation (n) حماية البيئة	the protection of natural things such as animals, plants, forests, etc. to prevent them from being spoiled or destroyed حماية الطبيعة
conservationist (n) ناشط بيئي / محافظ على البيئة	a person whose job is to help protect natural things such as wild animals الحيوانات البرية
crowded (adj) مُزدحم	when a place has lots of people or things

ecosystem (n) النظام البيئي	all the animals and plants that exist توجد in a place, considered يُعتبر as a single system with parts that depend تعتمد on each other
ecotourism (n) السياحة البيئية	a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment
endangered (adj) مُعرض للخطر	an adjective that describes something that is in danger of disappearing forever للأبد
exotic (adj) غريب / نادر - أجنبي	unusual and often from a different country
exciting (adj) شيق - مثير	something that makes you feel excited
impact (n) أثر / تأثير	the effect أثر that an action حَدَث or a person has on someone or something
isolated (adj) منعزل	an adjective that describes something that is disconnected from منفصل عن other people and places
lean (v) ينحني / يتكئ	to be in a sloping
materials (n) مواد - لوازم - أغراض	the things that are used for making or doing something
modern (adj) حديث / معاصر	something which is new and connected مرتبط to the present
orangutan (n) إنسان الغابة	a large ape قرد with long arms and long orange-brown hair
peaceful (adj) مليء بالسكينة - هادئ	feeling calm, quiet, without any problems
relaxing (adj) مريح	making you feel relaxed and not stressed
spicy (adj) متبل بالبهارات	containing chili فلفل حار or other spices that give a burning feeling
sustainable (adj) ملائم للبيئة	an adjective that describes an activity نشاط that can be repeated because it does not harm يضر the environment

sustainable (adj) صديق للبيئة	able to continue without causing damage to the environment
swell (up) (v) بتورم / يلتهب	to become larger and rounder than normal المعتاد - used especially about parts of the body
the environment (n) البيئة	the air, water, and land on Earth, which are affected by man's activities / the natural world around us
trek (n) رحلة طويلة (سيراً)	a hike / walk on difficult journey
unique (adj) فريد - مميز	an adjective that describes something special خاص أو مميز or the only one
volunteer (n) متطوع	someone who does a job willingly برغبته without being paid دون مقابل
voluntourist (n) سائح متطوع	a tourist who visits a place and spends some time doing work that helps the people or the environment there

3 Important Vocabulary

actually (adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	historic (adj)	تاريخي
advantage (n)	ميزة	increase (d) (n - v)	زيادة / يزيد - يزداد
adventure (n)	مغامرة	introduce (d) (v)	يطرح - يُقدِّم - يُصدِّر
advert = ads =	إعلانات	island (n)	جزيرة
advertisements (n)		law (n)	القانون
around (adv - prep.)	حول - حوالي	Lemur (n)	قرد الليمور
arrange (d) (v)	يُرتَّب	lettuce (n)	الخس
attractions (n)	عوامل الجذب	limited (adj)	محدود
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	little (adj)	صغير الحجم / السن
awful (adj)	فظيع / شديد	loads of (n)	عدد / كم كبير من
beauty (n)	الجمال	local (adj)	محلي
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عضة - يعض / يقضم	locals (n)	السكان المحليين
blog (ged) (n - v)	مُلوَّنة علي الإنترنت	maybe (adv)	ربما
	- يُدَوِّن	natural (adj)	طبيعي

blow – blew - blown (v)	نَهَبَ - يَنْفِخُ - يُطِيرُ	paradise (n)	جَنَّة
board (n)	متن السفينة أو الطائرة - لوحة	path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
brilliant (adj)	رائع / خلّاب - ذكي	photograph (ed) (n - v)	صورة بالكاميرا - يلتقط صورة
carnival (n)	احتفال / مهرّجان	plaza(n)	ساحة عامة / مجمع تجارى
castle (n)	قلعة	pollution(n)	التلوث
cause (d) (n - v)	سبب - يسبب	population (n)	(عدد) السكان/سكان
clear (ed) (adj - v)	نقي / واضح / يوضّح	provide (ed) (v)	يوفّر - يُزوّد بـ
close (to) (adj)	قريب - مُقَرَّب	rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة
coast (n)	ساحل	rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بناء
colourful (adj)	زاهي الألوان	relax(ed) (v)	يسترخي
council (n)	مجلس / ديوان	remote(adj)	بعيد / ناءٍ
create (d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر = يُوجد	resident(n)	ساكن / نزيل
cruise ship (n)	باخرة سياحية / مركب نزهة	resort(n)	منتجع سياحي
cruise(n)	نزهة بحرية	respect(ed) (n - v)	احترام - يحترم
cycle (d) (v)	يقود دراجة	sail(ed) (n - v)	يبحر - شراع
destination (n)	مقصد - وجهة سفر	sight(n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم
destroy (ed) (v)	يُدمّر	site(n)	موقع
develop (ed) (v)	يُنمّي / يُطوّر - ينمو / يتطور	solution(n)	حل
disconnected (adj)	منفصل / منعزل	souvenir(n)	هدية تذكارية - تذكّار
dive(d) (v)	يغوص / يغطس	steal – stole - stolen (v)	يسرق
dragon(n)	تنين	stuck(adj)	عالق - مُقَيّد
eco-hotel (n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	sunbathe(d) (v)	يأخذ حمام شمس - يتعرض للشمس
eco-trip(n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم
educate(d) (v)	يُعَلِّم	teenager (adj - n)	مُراهق
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجّع	tiny(adj)	ضئيل الحجم
escape(d) (v)	يهرب	together(adv)	معاً / سوياً
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
explore(d) (v)	يستكشف	turtle(n)	سلحفاة مائية
fascinating (adj)	جميل / خلّاب	underwater (adj - adv)	تحت الماء
forever (adv)	للأبد	upset(adj - v)	متزعج / متضايق - بضايق
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	victim(n)	ضحية
gardening (n)	بستنة / فلاحة البساتين	wildlife(n)	الحياة البرية
giant (adj - n)	عملاق - ضخم	wind(n)	الرياح
glad (adj)	مسرور / مبتهج	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
harm (ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر بـ		
otherwise (adv)	وإلا		

a bit (adv - n)	قليلاً - قطعة	Machu Picchu (n)	حضارة ماتشو بيتشو في المكسيك
active (adj)	نشط - فعال	Madagascar (n)	جزيرة مدغشقر
ancient (n)	قديم - عتيق	Mexican (n - adj)	مكسيكي
article (n)	مقال	mosquito (n)	ناموسة
balcony (n)	بلكون	National Park (n)	الحديقة الوطنية
canal (n)	قناة - ترعة	pink (n - adj)	وردي اللون
Ecuador(n)	الإكوادور	pool (n)	حمام سباحة - بركة
Europe(n)	أوروبا	Portugal (n)	البرتغال
excited(adj)	سعيد - مُثار	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
Faroe Islands(n)	جزر الفارو	Sahara(n)	الصحراء الكبرى
feel - felt (v)	يشعر بـ	sunshine(n)	سطوع الشمس
fly (n)	ذبابة	temple (n)	معبد
guide (d) (n - v)	مُرشد - يُرشد	Thai (adj - n)	تايلندي
hobby (n)	هواية	traveller (n)	مُسافر - رَحالة
Indonesia (n)	اندونيسيا	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
interesting (adj)	شيق - مثير للاهتمام	village (n)	قرية
keep - kept (v)	يحافظ علي - يظل	walls (n)	اسوار / جدران
laugh (ed) (n - v)	ضحكة - يضحك		

Part

II

More about Vocabulary

1

Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات	find	a solution to	يجد حلاً لـ
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	forget	your worries	تنسى مخاوفك
do	activities	يمارس أنشطة	increase	pollution	يزيد التلوث
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	introduce	a law	يُصدِر قانون
give	food	يُطعم	protect	ecosystem	يحافظ علي النظام البيئي
go	diving	يمارس رياضة الغوص	provide	a holiday to	يوفر رحلة
	trekking	يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيراً	start	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
have	a reason	لديه مبرر	take	a taxi	يستقل سيارة أجرة
	a holiday	يحصل علي إجازة		photos of	يلتقط صوراً لـ
	an impact	له أثر	try	a cruise	يقوم برحلة بحرية
	a strong taste	ذو مذاق قوي		a hobby	يجرب ممارسة هواية
	a good time	يقضي وقتاً سعيداً			

Mini Test (1)

Collocations

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Laziness الكسل is one of the problems that modern technology
a. brings b. takes c. solves d. protects
2. You no reason for coming late. You live next to the school.
a. have b. introduce c. get d. find
3. At school, students enjoy activities.
a. going b. protecting c. doing d. bringing
4. Scientists work hard to a solution to this health problem.
a. has b. go c. protect d. find
5. My brother university last year.
a. went b. started c. took d. brought
6. The government a new law to protect the environment from pollution.
a. protected b. introduced c. did d. bought
7. The smoke from this factory will health problems to the people living near it.
a. go b. provide c. take d. bring
8. When I first visited Cairo, I lost.
a. had b. introduced c. got d. found
9. When I was on holiday in the countryside, I sometimes trekking.
a. went b. started c. took d. brought

2

Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
exotic	أجنبي foreign
exotic	مذهل / مذهل unusual / unconventional
giant (adj)	عملاق / ضخمة gigantic
isolated	بعيد / ناء - منعزل remote - faraway
material	قماش fabric
over the moon	سعيد جداً very happy
spicy	حريف - متبل بالبهارات hot
trek	رحلة طويلة (سيرا) - يسير لمسافة طويلة hike

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
active	نشيط - فعال	lazy - inactive	كسول - خامل
ancient	قديم / عتيق	modern - new	حديث - جديد
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
boring	مُمل	exciting	مثير
busy	مشغول	free	متفرغ
calm - quiet	هادئ	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
exotic	أجنبي	native	محلي
exotic	مذهل / مذهل	usual / conventional	عادي - تقليدي - مألوف
isolated	منعزل / وحيد	sociable	اجتماعي
relaxing	مريح	stressful	ضاغط / مؤرق / مجهد
sustainable	دائم	unsustainable	غير دائم

Mini Test (2)

Synonyms & Antonyms

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "This bird is exotic. It is unusual and rarely seen here." The antonym of the word 'exotic' is
 a. familiar b. strange c. rare d. foreign
- "Be careful! The forest is full of giant snakes." The synonym of the word 'giant' is
 a. tiny b. minute c. small d. gigantic
- "I went trekking along the beach." The word 'trekking' here is a synonym of
 a. fishing b. hiking c. losing d. fabricating
- Ancient is to as boring is to exciting.
 a. excited b. new c. modern d. b & c
- "He lives in an isolated area." The word 'isolated' can be replaced by ".....".
 a. close b. nearby c. remote d. neighbouring
- "Exotic birds are seen here in winter." In this sentence, the word 'exotic' is an antonym of
 a. native b. unusual c. unconventional d. foreign

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a beach break	استراحة علي الشاطئ	in progress	مستمر
a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا تُنسى	keep ... as a souvenir	يحتفظ بـ ... كتذكّار
a good thing for	شيء مفيد لـ	keep ... safe	يُبقى ... في أمان
a new way to travel	طريقة جديدة للسفر	leave busy city life behind	يبتعد عن ضغوط حياة المدينة
a victim of its own beauty	ضحية جمالها	local population	السكان المحليين
active holiday	اجازة مفيدة	on board = aboard	علي متن سفينة أو طائرة
all without	كل ذلك بدون	on the balcony	في البلكونة
at a certain time	في وقت معين	on the islands	على الجزر
be tired of	يملّ من	on the way there	في الطريق إلى هناك
busy (with)	مشغول بـ	over the moon	سعيد جداً
cause many problems	يُسبب مشكلات كثيرة	riding on boats	ركوب المراكب
close to	لصيق بـ / قريب من	such a remote place	مثل هذا المكان النائي
environmentally-friendly	صديق للبيئة	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
except for	فيما عدا	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما أفعله
famous for	مشهور بـ	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
first of all	قبل كل شيء	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالم	want time to rest	يريد وقتاً للراحة
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	with his mouth open	وكان فمه مفتوحاً
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	working together	العمل معاً
historic buildings	مباني تاريخية		

5 Verb + Preposition

add to	يُضيف إلى	go away	يبتعد - يسافر
arrange to	يرتب أن	go down	يهبط - ينزل - تغرب الشمس
benefit from	يستفيد من	lean on / against	بتكئ على / يسند ... علي
blow ... off	يُسقط - يُطير	learn about	يتعلم عن
bring ... to	يُحضر ... إلى	learn to	يتعلم أن
care for	يهتم بـ	match ... to	يوصل ... بـ
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر	stay with	يقيم مع
decide to	يقرر أن	stop at	يتوقف في
disappear from	يختفي من	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
drive ... to	يُوصّل ... بالسيارة إلى	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
escape from	يهرب من	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
escape to	يهرب إلى		

Mini Test (3)

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The museum is opened daily on Friday.
a. except b. accept c. expectedly d. exist
2. You can a cruise or a boat trip.
a. decide to b. go away c. go on d. trek into
3. The village benefited the new canal.
a. from b. of c. to d. about
4. The tourist is very important.
a. factory b. ecotourism c. ecosystem d. industry
5. The explorers المستكشفين trekked the desert for three days.
a. of b. across c. by d. with
6. When the fan was turned on, its air blew the paper
a. off b. of c. to d. at
7. The ship left the port with 300 passengers
a. abroad b. aboard c. on board d. b & c
8. He escaped prison.
a. to b. with c. from d. on
9. He is a good father who is close his children.
a. to b. of c. with d. a & b
10. It is over, Sama. There's nothing
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing

Part III

Vocabulary Study

1 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

endangered / dangerous

• endangered (adj)

- The workers in the cave الكهف are endangered.

مُعَرَّض للخطر

• dangerous (adj)

- The scorpion العقرب is very dangerous.

خطير

Adjectives ending in ed / ing

- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تعني أن الموصوف (شاعر بالصفة - مُعرّض للصفة):

- I feel **tired** / **excited** / **bored**. إننى اشعر بالتعب / السعادة / الملل

- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تعني أن الموصوف (مُسبّب للصفة):

- This job is **tiring** / **pleasing** / **boring**. هذه الوظيفة مُتعبة / شيقة / مملة

little

• **little** + اسم لا يُعد قليل (الكمية)

- We have **little** work to do.

- He gave us **little** information about the accident.

• **little** + اسم يُعد صغير (الحجم أو السن)

- I saw a **little** boy selling flowers.

else

١- تُستخدم (else) بعد أدوات الإستفهام بمعنى (أيضا):

• **Q.W.** أيضاً **else** + أداة استفهام

- What **else** do you want?

- Where **else** will you go?

٢- تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية:

• Someone / somebody / something / somewhere / anyone / anybody / anything / anywhere / everyone / everybody / everything / everywhere / no one / nobody / nothing / nowhere + **else** آخر

- Ahmed didn't take your camera. Someone **else** took it.

- Do you want to eat something **else** ?

coloured - colourful

• **coloured** (adj) مُلَوّن / ذو ألوان متعددة

- I have no **coloured** photographs for my grandfather. They all are black and white.

• **colourful** (adj) زاهي الألوان - مثير / متنوع

- Little children like **colourful** clothes.

- My uncle has had a **colourful** life. He has worked and lived in different countries.

Mini Test (4)

Clear the Confusion

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Children are usually about the games at the amusement park. الملهي
a. exciting b. excited c. excitement d. b & c
- The games at the amusement park are usually to children.
a. exciting b. excited c. excitement d. b & c
- Lions are animals. They can attack people.
a. coloured b. colourful c. endangered d. dangerous
- Lions are animals. They may die out تنقرض soon.
a. coloured b. colourful c. endangered d. dangerous
- Don't ask Aliaa for help. Ask somebody
a. also b. else c. too d. b & c

جزء لتنمية مهاراتك اللغوية التي تحتاج الى معرفة اكثر
من المفردات اللغوية الآتية ومشتقاتها واستخداماتها.

تنويه

2

More about key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

conserve

- **conserve (v) (d) = preserve(d) (v)**
- We should **conserve** the environment.

يحفظ / يصون / يحمي

- **conserve (d) (v)**
- Everyone must **conserve** energy. الطاقة

يرشد / يقتصد في

- **conserve = jam (n)**
- I like peach **conserve**. مربى الخوخ

مربى

- **conservation = preservation (n)**
- The **conservation** of wildlife الحياة البرية is very important.

حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)

- **conservation (n)**
- Water **conservation** is necessary.

ترشيد / تقليل

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
- nature conservation حماية الطبيعة - wildlife conservation حماية الحياة البرية
- conservation groups جماعات حماية الطبيعة

• **conservationist (n)**

شخص محافظ علي أو صديق للبيئة

- He is one of the **conservationists** who work hard to protect lions from extinction الإنقراض.

ecotourism

• **ecotourism (n)**

سياحة صديقة للبيئة (تُراعي الحفاظ علي البيئة والحياة الطبيعية)

- The Red Sea coast is a promising area in **ecotourism** ذو مستقبل باهر

• **ecotourist (n)**

سائح صديق للبيئة

- Some areas are visited only by **ecotourists**.

danger

• **danger (n)**

خطر

- Don't expose **your life** to **danger**. يُعرض

• **endanger(ed) (v)**

يُعرض للخطر

- Don't **endanger** your life.

• **endangerment (n)**

التعرض للخطر

- Child **endangerment** is a crime. جريمة

• **endangered (adj)**

معرض للخطر / للإنقراض

- Some types of animals are **endangered**.

environment

• **the environment (n)**

البيئة (الطبيعية)

- لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (environment) بهذا المعني :

- Pollution endangers **the environment**. (Not: endangers environment)

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- protect / conserve the environment يحمي البيئة
- harm / damage / destroy the environment يدمر البيئة
- pollute the environment يلوّث البيئة
- the natural environment البيئة الطبيعية

• **environment (n)**

وضع - وسط - جو عام

- In class, students must find a suitable **environment** to learn. مناسبة

• **environmentally (adv)**

بيئياً / من الناحية البيئية

- Ecotourism is **environmentally friendly**.

impact

• impact (on / upon) (n)

تأثير / انطباع

- My friends have a great impact on me.

• impact (n)

إرتطام / اصطدام

- The force of the impact made the car turn over تنقلب.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- have an impact له تأثير - make an impact يترك أثر / يؤثر

- a positive impact تأثير إيجابي

- a negative / damaging / adverse impact تأثير سلبي

- a long-term / lasting impact تأثير دائم

- a short-term / immediate impact تأثير لحظي

- an environmental impact أثر بيئي

• impact (ed)(on / upon) (v)

يؤثر (على)

- The internet has impacted on life in the modern age.

isolated

• isolate (d) (from) (v)

يُبعد / يعزل

- Parents always try to isolate their children from bad friends.

• isolate (d) (from) (v)

يفصل (عن)

- This machine isolates butter الزبدة from milk.

• isolation (n)

العزلة

- No one can live in isolation.

• isolation (n)

الانعزال / البُعد

- The isolation of the oasis الواحة gives it a unique culture فريدة.

• isolated (adj)

بعيد / ناءٍ / منفرد

- He lives in an isolated village.

• isolated (adj)

شاعر بالعزلة أو الوحدة

- Working alone on a farm makes him feel isolated.

crowded

- **crowded (with) (adj)** مُزدحم (ملئ بالاشخاص)
- The house was **crowded** with guests.
- **overcrowded (with) (adj)** مكتظ به / متكدس به (خاص بالأماكن)
- In feasts الأعياد, streets and parks are **overcrowded**.
- **overcrowding (n)** الزحام / التكدس
- **Overcrowding** is a serious problem in cities.
- **crowd (n)** جمع / حشد من الناس
- There's a **crowd** of students near the school gate.
- **crowd (ed) (v)** يحتشد / يتجمع / يتجمهر
- Thousands of people **crowded** to welcome the winning team.
- **crowd in on** + شخص
- Fears المخاوف **crowded in on** her and she was very sad.

- لاحظ ما يلي :

تغالبه / تتزاحم عليه

exotic

- **exotic (adj)** غريب / نادر - أجنبي / وافد
- This park has some **exotic** plants.
- I saw some **exotic** birds on the beach.

lean

- **lean – (leant – leant) / (leaned – leaned) (v)** ينعني / يميل
- He **leaned** and looked down from the balcony.
- **lean (on / against) (v)** يتكئ (علي) - يسند ... علي
- I **leaned** against the wall.
- He **leant** his bicycle against a tree.
- **lean (adj)** نحيف
- Abdulrahman is tall and **lean**.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- lean years سنوات الضنك - lean meat لحوم قليلة الشحم
- lean production انتاج مقتصد
- **leaning (adj)** مائل / متكئ
- He visited the **Leaning** Tower of Pisa برج بيزا المائل.

material

- **material (n)** مادة (تُستخدَم في صناعة الأشياء)
- Building **materials** have become expensive.
- **material (n)** قماش (يُستخدَم في صناعة الملابس)
- She bought a good blouse made of soft **material**.
- This **material** is made of Egyptian cotton.
- **material (adj)** مادي (متعلق بالمال أو المنفعة)
- He is only interested in **material** benefit الفائدة المادية.
- **material (adj)** مادي = ملموس
- The police have **material** evidence دليل مادي against him.

spicy

- **spicy (adj)** حُرِيف / حار - متبل بالبهارات
- I like **spicy** sandwiches.
- **spice - spices (n)** توابل / بهارات
- Fast food restaurants depend تعتمد on **spices** to make food more delicious.
- **spice (n)** اهتمام / إثارة (كلمة لا تُعد)
- Our teacher of English usually adds **spice** to the reading lesson.
- **spice (ed) with (v)** يُتَبَّل بـ
- Mum never forgets to **spice** the food with hot pepper.
- **spice (ed) up (v)** يُضفي نوع من الإثارة أو التنوع
- Ahmed's funny talks أحاديث **spiced (up)** the long train journey.

sustainable

- **sustain (ed) (v)** يُحافظ على / يُبقي على
- It is important that a teacher **sustains** his student's interest اهتمام.
- **sustain (ed) (v)** يتعرض لضرر
- Their company **sustained** some losses الخسائر.
- **sustainable (adj)** ملائم للبيئة / صديق للبيئة
- Bicycles are **sustainable** means of transport وسيلة مواصلات.
- **sustainable (adj)** دائم / مُستدام / قابل للبقاء
- The government wants to achieve تحقق a **sustainable** economic نمو اقتصادي growth.

swell

- **swell – swelled – swollen (up) (v)** يتورم / يلتهب
- He hit his head and soon it **swelled (up)**.
- **swell -swelled – swollen (to) (v)** يتزايد / يزداد في العدد أو الكمية
- Water in the river has **swollen** because of the floods. الفيضانات.
- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :
- swell with pride يشعر بالفخر الشديد - swell with anger يستشيط غضباً
- swell-headed = big-headed مغرور
- **swelling (in / on) (n)** ورم / التهاب (فى)
- She has a painful **swelling** in her hand. مؤلم
- **swollen (adj)** متورم / ملتهب
- His knee is **swollen**.

trek

- **trek = hike (n)** رحلة طويلة (غالباً سيراً على الأقدام كنوع من المغامرة)
- We went on a long **trek(hike)** through the countryside.
- **trek(ked) = hike(d) (v)** يقوم برحلة طويلة وصعبة سيراً
- We **trekked (hiked)** through the countryside.

unique

- **unique (adj)** فريد من نوعه
- Everyone has **unique** fingerprints بصمات أصابع.
- **unique (adj)** مُميّز / خاص
- We had a **unique** time in France.
- لا تُستخدم الصفة (unique) في صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل :
- This horse is more unique than that one. (X)
- لاحظ التعبير التالى :
• **be unique to** يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا فى
- The Komodo dragon **is unique to** Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else.

volunteer

- **volunteer (n)** شخص متطوع (يقوم بعمل دون أجر)
- A lot of **volunteers** work for charities.
- **volunteer (ed) (to / for) (v)** يتطوع - يعرض القيام بعمل دون أجر
- Yara **volunteered** for looking after the baby.
- **voluntary (adj)** تطوعى (دون أجر)
- She does **voluntary** work for a hospital.

voluntourism

- **voluntourism (n)** السياحة الخيرية (أحد أنواع السياحة التي يقوم بها السائح بعمل بدون أجر)
- We should encourage **voluntourism** because tourists enjoy their time and help the people or the environment.
- **voluntourist (n)** سائح يقوم بعمل خيري في الأماكن التي يزورها
- Some **voluntourists** helped treat poor patients.

Note these idioms

- لاحظ التعبيرات الاصطلاحية التالية :

- **over the moon = very excited or happy** سعيد جدًا
- Mum was over the moon when she heard that I came first.
- **be stuck = be forced to stay in a place** عالق / مُقيد
- I'm stuck here at home and I have nothing to do.
- **loads of = a lot of** كثير من
- I didn't go to the office yesterday, so I have loads of jobs to do.

3 مقاطع بادئة Prefixes

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
eco-	متعلق بالبيئة	ecotourism السياحة البيئية ecofriendly صديق للبيئة ecology علم البيئة ecologist عالم متخصص في البيئة ecosystem النظام البيئي
en-	تكون فعل	endanger يُعرض للخطر
teen-	بين سن ١٣ - ١٩	teenager مُراهق
under-	تحت	underwater تحت الماء

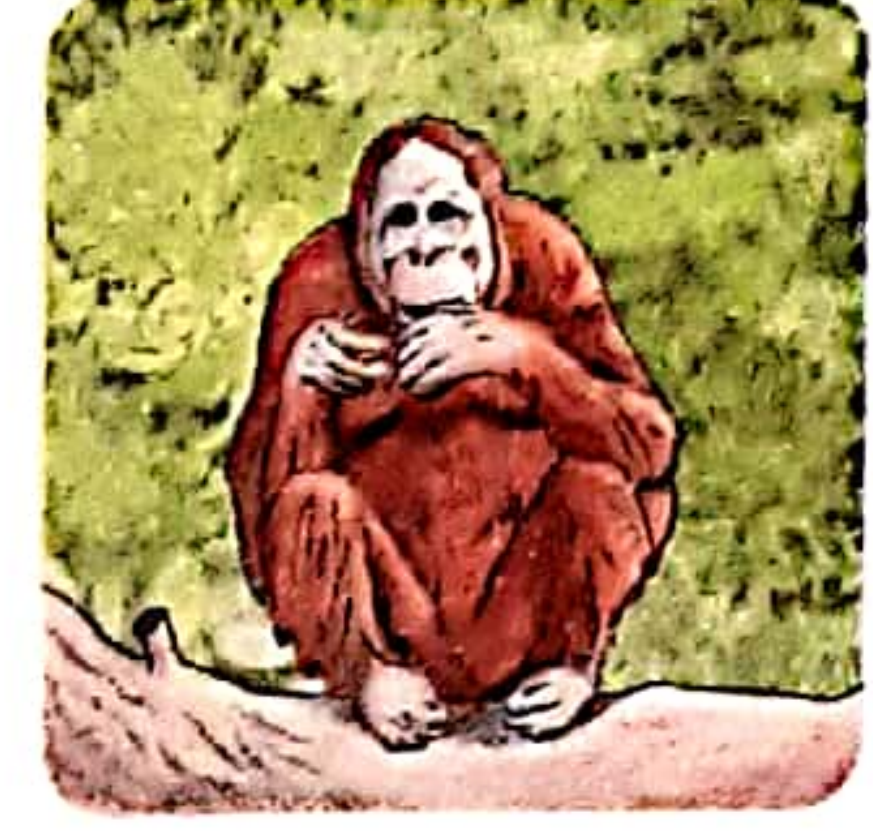
4 مقاطع ناهية suffixes

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ing	تكون اسم / صفة	relaxing (adj) مُريح overcrowding (n) الزحام
-ed	تكون صفة	crowded مُزدحم endangered مُعرض للخطر
-ism	تكون اسم	tourism السياحة
-ist	تكون اسم فاعل / صفة	tourist سائح / سياحي

5 Enrich your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

Orangutan إنسان الغابة

- Orangutan / Orangutang means "man of the forest".
هذا الاسم يعني "إنسان الغابة".
- It is an ape.
هو أحد أنواع القرود.
- It lives in Borneo and Sumatra.
إنه يعيش في بورنيو وسومطرة (في دولة اندونيسيا).



spices التوابل

- They are types of powder or seeds taken from plants.
إنها أنواع من المساحيق أو البذور التي تُؤخذ من النباتات.
- They are put into food you are cooking.
إنها توضع على الطعام الذي يتم طهيهِ.
- They give food a special taste.
إنها تعطي الطعام مذاقاً خاصاً.



Lemur قرد الليمور

- Lemur is a Latin word that means ghosts or spirits.
كلمة "الليمور" كلمة لاتينية تعني الأشباح أو الأرواح.
- Lemurs are mammals.
الليمور (حيوان ثديي).
- Lemurs are native only to the island of Madagascar.
توجد قرود الليمور فقط في جزيرة مدغشقر.
- Most existing lemurs have small, large eyes,
and a long tail.
معظم قرود الليمور الموجودة حالياً صغيرة الحجم ذات عيون كبيرة وذيل طويل.
- They chiefly live in trees.
تعيش قرود الليمور أساساً في الأشجار.
- They are nocturnal animals.
قرود الليمور حيوانات تنشط ليلاً.

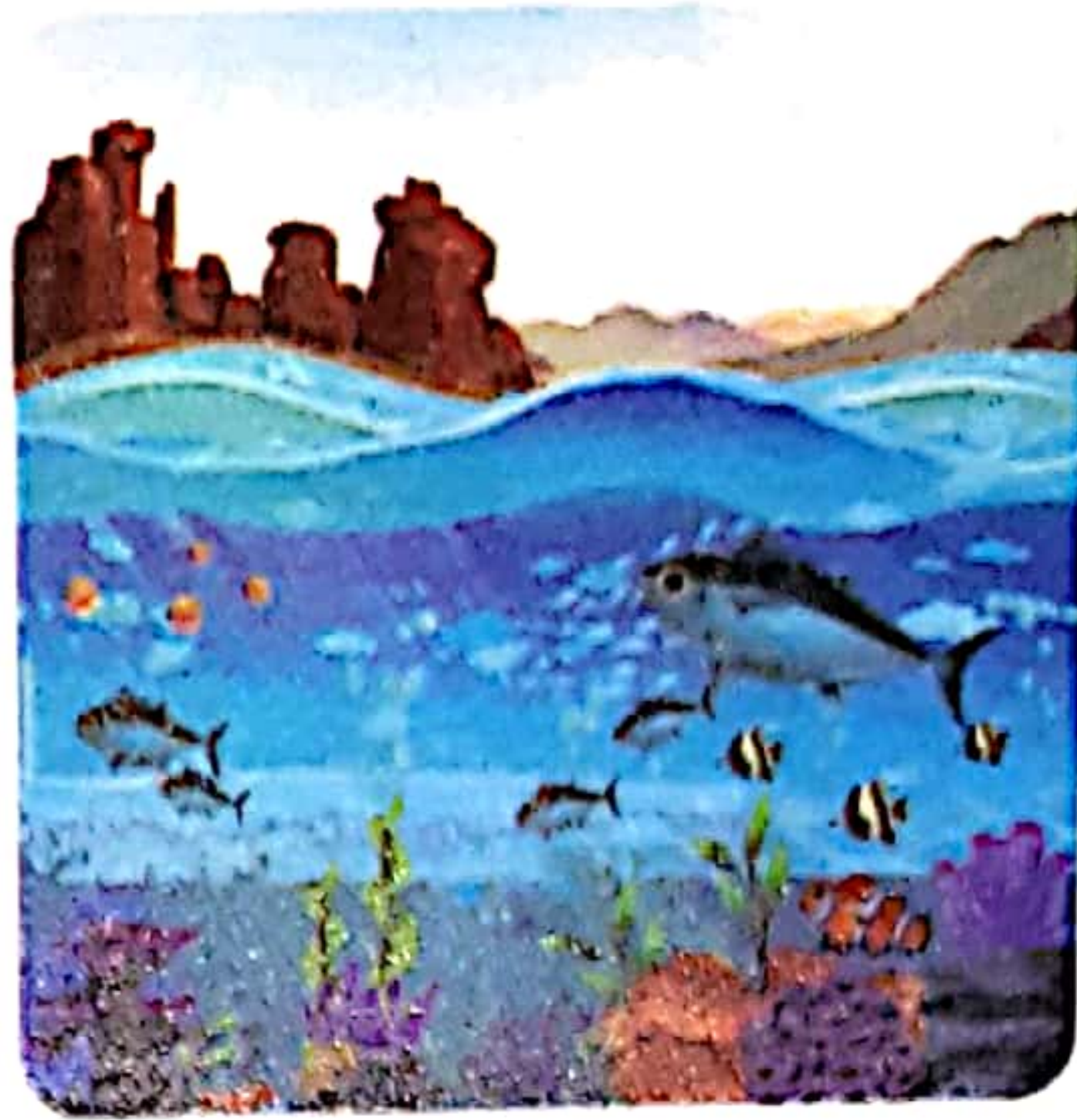


Ecotourism – is this the future?

(SB page 6)

1. What is ecotourism ?

Ecotourism⁽¹⁾ is about providing⁽²⁾ holidays to places which are often endangered⁽³⁾ and isolated⁽⁴⁾. The holidays are designed to have a limited⁽⁵⁾ impact⁽⁶⁾ on the local environment and to educate⁽⁷⁾ tourists about conservation⁽⁸⁾.



Egypt is developing⁽⁹⁾ ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast⁽¹⁰⁾. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly⁽¹¹⁾ natural⁽¹²⁾ materials⁽¹³⁾. When tourists go diving⁽¹⁴⁾, they are taught how to avoid⁽¹⁵⁾ damaging⁽¹⁶⁾ the fish and keeping the special coral reefs⁽¹⁷⁾ safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem⁽¹⁸⁾ (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist⁽¹⁹⁾ anywhere else⁽²⁰⁾ in the world. Lemurs⁽²¹⁾, for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos Islands⁽²²⁾ in Ecuador are famous for the unique⁽²³⁾ animals, such as the giant⁽²⁴⁾ turtles⁽²⁵⁾ which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable⁽²⁶⁾. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park⁽²⁷⁾ in Indonesia is a popular⁽²⁸⁾ ecotourism destination⁽²⁹⁾. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife⁽³⁰⁾, including⁽³¹⁾ the Komodo dragon⁽³²⁾, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) السياحة البيئية
- (2) توفر
- (3) مُعرّض للخطر
- (4) منعزل
- (5) محدود
- (6) أثر
- (7) يُعَلِّم
- (8) حماية البيئة
- (9) تنمّي
- (10) ساحل
- (11) صديق للبيئة
- (12) طبيعي
- (13) مواد
- (14) الغوص
- (15) يتجنب
- (16) إتلاف
- (17) الشعاب المرجانية
- (18) النظام البيئي
- (19) يوجد
- (20) آخر
- (21) قرود الليمور
- (22) جُزُر
- (23) فريد
- (24) عملاق
- (25) سلاحف مائية
- (26) ملائم للبيئة
- (27) الحديقة الوطنية
- (28) مشهور
- (29) مقصد
- (30) الحياة البرية
- (31) بما في ذلك
- (32) التنين

2. Working Together

(SB page 9)

Last year, I **went** to the Faroe Islands for a few days as a (voluntourist)⁽¹⁾ – I was both a tourist⁽²⁾ and a volunteer⁽³⁾. I **helped** the locals⁽⁴⁾ to rebuild paths⁽⁵⁾ and walls⁽⁶⁾. It was very hard work, but great fun⁽⁷⁾ and I **met** other volunteers from all around the world.



Check Vocabulary

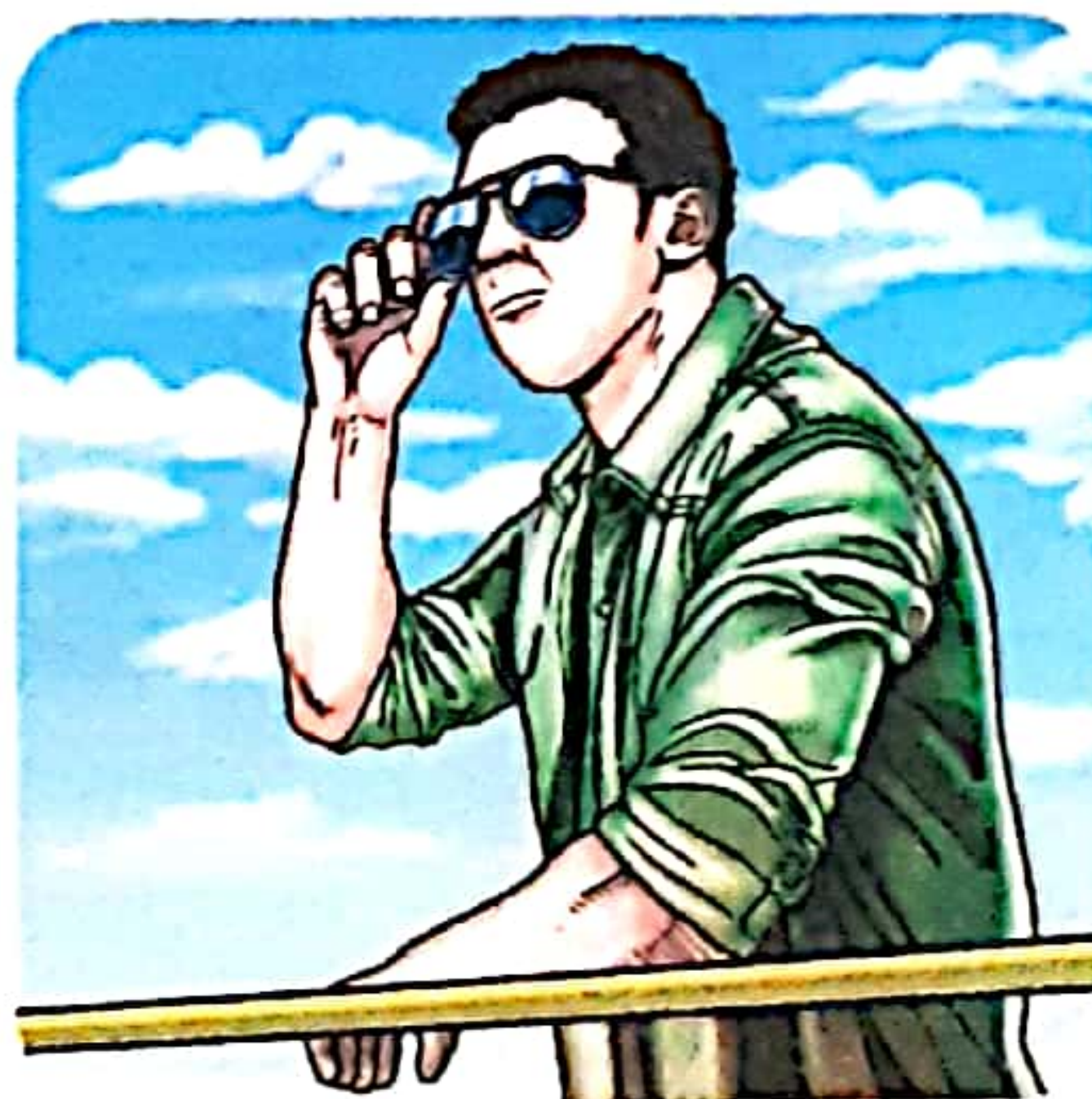
- (1) سائح متطوع
- (2) سائح
- (3) متطوع
- (4) السكان المحليين
- (5) ممرات
- (6) أسوار
- (7) متعة
- (8) بعيد / نائي
- (9) يتسلق
- (10) تَلَّ
- (11) طيرت
- (12) لُحَسِنَ الحِظَّ
- (13) أدفا
- (14) تذكَّار

While I **was working** on the islands, I **talked** to the people who live there about life in such a remote⁽⁸⁾ place. On the second day, I climbed⁽⁹⁾ to the top of a hill⁽¹⁰⁾ when the wind blew⁽¹¹⁾ my hat off. Fortunately⁽¹²⁾, the family I **was staying** with **gave** me another, much warmer⁽¹³⁾ hat which I **kept** as a souvenir!⁽¹⁴⁾

3. James's blog

(SB page 10)

This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant⁽¹⁾ here and there are loads of⁽²⁾ things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) رائع
- (2) كثير من
- (3) مرهقين
- (4) مريح
- (5) تحت الماء
- (6) المعابد القديمة
- (7) في الواقع
- (8) خلاب
- (9) سعيد

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers⁽³⁾ at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing⁽⁴⁾ and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater⁽⁵⁾ camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples⁽⁶⁾ there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually⁽⁷⁾ found them fascinating⁽⁸⁾ and am really glad⁽⁹⁾ we went there.

4. Katy's blog

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so **bored**⁽¹⁾ – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm **stuck**⁽²⁾ here at home. The weather's **awful**⁽³⁾ and there's nothing to do.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) شاعر بالملل
- (2) عالق
- (3) فظيع
- (4) أجساد
- (5) يزرع
- (6) خضراوات
- (7) أرخص
- (8) الخس
- (9) فلاحه البساتين
- (10) هواية

Last week, I went to stay with my **grandparents**⁽⁴⁾ for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He **grows**⁽⁵⁾ all his own **vegetables**⁽⁶⁾ – he says it's **cheaper**⁽⁷⁾ than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some **lettuce**⁽⁸⁾ in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about **gardening**⁽⁹⁾ – maybe I'll have a new **hobby**!⁽¹⁰⁾

2 Listening Texts



Luca : Last summer I decided not to go on holiday⁽¹⁾ to Greece with my friends, but do something different.

(SB page 8)



Check Vocabulary

- (1) ينهب في إجازة
- (2) علم الأحياء
- (3) إنسان الغابة
- (4) السياحة البيئية
- (5) كارثة
- (6) رحلة جوية داخلية
- (7) لمتعة
- (8) منحني

Klara : So where did you go ?

Luca : Well, as I'm studying **Biology**⁽²⁾ I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the **orangutans**⁽³⁾ there. So, I booked a holiday with an **ecotourism**⁽⁴⁾ company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like ?

Luca : A bit of a **disaster**⁽⁵⁾ although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an **internal flight**⁽⁶⁾ to Borneo, but my **luggage**⁽⁷⁾ never arrived so, I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre and while I was **leaning**⁽⁸⁾ out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.

Klara : Oh, no. Did you manage to get it back ?

Luca : No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very **annoyed**⁽⁹⁾, but at least I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the **conservationists**⁽¹⁰⁾ are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide **introduced**⁽¹¹⁾ us to the people working there and then we had dinner.

Klara : What was the food like ?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very **spicy**⁽¹²⁾. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.

Klara : Well, I'm glad to hear you're not such a **fussy eater**⁽¹³⁾ anymore. What did you do every day ?

Luca : We got up about six every morning as that's when the sun rises, had breakfast and then **trekked**⁽¹⁴⁾ into the forest to learn about the orangutans from the people who are looking after them.

Klara : Did you feed them ?

Luca : No, they're wild animals, not pets. We just observed them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a **spider**⁽¹⁵⁾ bit me while I was sleeping and my arm **swelled up**⁽¹⁶⁾.

Klara : So what happened ?

Luca : I had to go to hospital-but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I had to go by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but as soon as I got back I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook. He didn't clean the fish **properly**⁽¹⁷⁾ and everybody was sick. I'm staying at home this summer!

(9) متضايق

(10) حماة البيئة

(11) يقدم

(12) مُتبل بالبهارات

(13) شخص أكل بشكل شره

(14) يسير فى رحلة

(15) عنكبوت

(16) يتورم

(17) بشكل صحيح

3 Workbook Texts

A popular problem!

(WB page 88)

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals, colourful⁽¹⁾ carnivals⁽²⁾, amazing plazas⁽³⁾ and historic⁽⁴⁾ buildings. However, the city is a victim⁽⁵⁾ of its own beauty⁽⁶⁾. Venice has a population⁽⁷⁾ of only 55,000, but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism creates⁽⁸⁾ a lot of jobs for the local population, but it also causes⁽⁹⁾ many problems.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مثيرة / متنوعة
- (2) احتفالات
- (3) أسواق - ساحات
- (4) تاريخي
- (5) ضحية
- (6) الجمال
- (7) السكان
- (8) تخلق
- (9) تسبب
- (10) مراكب سياحية
- (11) يُتلف
- (12) ضيق
- (13) مزدحم
- (14) يتحرك
- (15) مجلس محلي
- (16) حل
- (17) سكان
- (18) يشجع
- (19) معالم / مناظر

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large cruise ships⁽¹⁰⁾ can damage⁽¹¹⁾ the historic buildings. The narrow⁽¹²⁾ streets can be very crowded⁽¹³⁾ and it is difficult for local people to move⁽¹⁴⁾ around the city.

The local council⁽¹⁵⁾ are trying to find a solution⁽¹⁶⁾ which keeps both the tourists and local residents⁽¹⁷⁾ happy. They are also trying to encourage⁽¹⁸⁾ tourists to visit other beautiful sites⁽¹⁹⁾ around Venice.

Salma's email

(WB page 89)

To : Hania

Subject : My funny holiday!

Hi Hania,

How are you? I hope you **had** a great summer! I remember you **talked** about going to the beach with your family. **Did** you **have** a good time? What **did** you **do**?

My summer **was** great! I **did** so many different things. First of all, we **went** to the village where my father was born. In the car, on the way there, my brother leant⁽¹⁾ out of the window with his mouth open and he **ate** two flies!⁽²⁾ We all laughed⁽³⁾ except for⁽⁴⁾ my brother, of course!

Well, that's all for now. I'll tell you more when I see you.

Best wishes,

Salma

Check Vocabulary

- (1) اتكأ / سند
- (2) ذباب
- (3) ضحكنا
- (4) ماعدا / باستثناء

Holiday Adverts!

(WB page 90)

A beach break

Do you want to relax⁽¹⁾ in a quiet and peaceful⁽²⁾ place? Escape⁽³⁾ from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind⁽⁴⁾. Visit this amazing paradise⁽⁵⁾. Enjoy the sunshine⁽⁶⁾ on isolated⁽⁷⁾ beaches and swim in clean, clear⁽⁸⁾ water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the same⁽⁹⁾ old, boring⁽¹⁰⁾ places? Are you looking for an active⁽¹¹⁾ holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you climbing⁽¹²⁾ in the beautiful Alpine mountains⁽¹³⁾.

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller⁽¹⁴⁾. You can go trekking⁽¹⁵⁾ through the Andes⁽¹⁶⁾ and explore⁽¹⁷⁾ ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide⁽¹⁸⁾. You can enjoy peace⁽¹⁹⁾ and quiet⁽²⁰⁾ or you can meet the local people, all without damaging⁽²¹⁾ the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm cruise⁽²²⁾ around the Caribbean⁽²³⁾? On board⁽²⁴⁾ our modern cruise ship⁽²⁵⁾, you can enjoy great food and forget⁽²⁶⁾ your worries⁽²⁷⁾ in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets⁽²⁸⁾ and see many unusual sights.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يسترخى
- (2) ذو سكون
- (3) يهرب
- (4) خلف / وراء
- (5) جنة
- (6) شروق (ضوء) الشمس
- (7) منعزل
- (8) صافى
- (9) نفس
- (10) ممل
- (11) نشيط - مفيد
- (12) يتسلق
- (13) جبال الألبين
- (14) مسافر
- (15) تتنزه سيراً
- (16) جبال الأنديز
- (17) يستكشف
- (18) مرشد
- (19) السكون - السلام
- (20) الهدوء
- (21) تدمير
- (22) نزهة بحرية
- (23) البحر الكاريبي
- (24) متن السفينة
- (25) مركب سياحية
- (26) ينسى
- (27) المقلقات
- (28) أسواق

4 Video script section

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact they have on the place they're visiting ?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with tourists think about how tourism affects their cities. They consider the advantages⁽¹⁾ and disadvantages⁽²⁾. They try to help local⁽³⁾ people cope with lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مزايا
- (2) عيوب
- (3) محلي

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising⁽⁴⁾ the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community⁽⁵⁾ of 1.5 million local people.

- (4) يعلن عن
- (5) مجتمع
- (6) البيئة
- (7) المواصلات العامة
- (8) مراعاة لشعور الآخرين

In future, people should think more about the environment⁽⁶⁾ and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport⁽⁷⁾ if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate⁽⁸⁾ of each other !

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. How do tourist offices help local people ?
2. Why doesn't the tourism office in Amsterdam advertise its city today ?
3. How and when should tourists travel around a country ?

General Exercises

On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

1. All wood used in our furniture comes with a certificate شهادة saying it comes from forests. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)
a. tiny b. sustainable c. tricky d. temporary
2. It is a national duty واجب to and support our environments. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)
a. sustain b. pretend c. intend d. proclaim
3. My brother does charity work. He donates his effort and time. (الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
a. paid b. voluntary c. criminal d. disabled
4. Governments should put strict rules to save animals. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٠)
a. danger b. dangerous c. endangered d. angered
5. The feeling of is unbearable لا يُطاق, especially when you are sociable. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)
a. company b. impact c. isolation d. overcrowding

6. Lions only in the wild, not in towns or cities. (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)

- a. exist b. expire c. extract d. exercise

7. Students complain about being in their classes for a long time.

(المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)

- a. struck b. studied c. stuck d. stunned

8. When he wanted to buy an expensive car, he not on his father but himself.

(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٠)

- a. focused b. leaped c. impacted d. leaned

9. These great monuments are They are found only in Egypt.

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٠)

- a. exotic b. strange c. unique d. common

10. She on her hot soup to make it cool.

(أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)

- a. grew b. drew c. drank d. blew

II Key & important vocabulary

11. Madagascar is the of many ecotourism seekers. راغبى

- a. domination b. destination c. donation d. determination

12. Indonesia is the habitat موطن of the

- a. monkey b. lion c. panda d. orangutan

13. When she was bitten by a spider, her arm up.

- a. spilt b. spelt c. split d. swelled

14. We enjoyed our to many ports.

- a. cruise b. flight c. picnic d. journey

15. The charity will go under ينهار unless a donor can be found soon.

- a. cheap b. generous c. miserable d. mean

16. Tour guides are teaching tourists how to go for a for oysters المحار over there.

- a. diving b. dove c. dive d. dived

17. The police have a evidence against him.

- a. material b. local c. sustainable d. national

18. We use friendly materials in ecotourism to keep the surroundings.

- a. environment b. environmental
c. environmentally d. environmentalist

19. I can't live on a/an island as there are a lot of dangers.

- a. instilled b. isolated c. decorated d. installed

20. Cars are useful, but their on the environment is another matter altogether.
 a. boredom b. impact c. tyres d. noise
21. I was when they told me that I had been promoted.
 a. depressed b. stressed c. terrified d. excited
22. Spicy is to hot as is to hike .
 a. sustain b. trek c. spice d. isolate
23. I spent the weekend in a place where it is calm and peaceful.
 a. crowded b. endangered c. relaxing d. swollen
24. We all like hot food, so my mother always our dishes with hot pepper.
 a. leans b. spices c. isolates d. treks
25. I want to join one of the groups that looks after wildlife.
 a. environmental b. sick c. excited d. dirty
26. I don't want to go to the park. , I am meeting some friends in the club.
 a. Environmentally b. Otherwise
 c. Actually d. Naturally
27. The controls everyone and everything in society.
 a. low b. law c. environment d. conservation
28. Forests us with the oxygen we need.
 a. respect b. dive c. provide d. design
29. Secondary school students are
 a. babies b. teenagers c. granddads d. toddlers
30. My little son dropped my mobile from the balcony. , it didn't break.
 a. Fortunately b. Unfortunately c. Fortunate d. Fortune
31. It is useful for students to be That makes them willing راغبين to work hard.
 a. endangered b. stuck c. encouraged d. upset
32. It is that a bride العروسة wears a white dress for the wedding. الزفاف
 a. exotic b. traditional c. glad d. environmental
33. is one of the dangers that affects people and the environment.
 a. Pollution b. Conservation c. Souvenir d. Education
34. Don't worry. The side effects الآثار الجانبية of this medicine are
 a. close b. awful c. giant d. limited

35. I have an online where I post أناشر my articles. مقالات
 a. impact b. lettuce c. blog d. environment
36. The of some African countries suffer from malaria.
 a. locals b. local c. loads d. load
37. I live to my school which is only a five-minute walk from my home.
 a. away b. close c. remote d. far away
38. You can dive in the Red Sea and see the nice and the coloured fish.
 a. rainforests b. resorts c. corals d. gardens
39. Smoking smokers' health.
 a. describes b. benefits c. develops d. damages
40. We have to the environment where we live.
 a. destroy b. respect c. pollute d. cycle
41. A / An is designed to harm the environment as little as possible.
 a. ecology b. ecosystem c. eco-hotel d. ecologist
42. When we travel on holidays, we usually buy to remind us of the nice time we spent.
 a. souvenirs b. sails c. turtles d. paths
43. He lives in a village. It takes you a long time to go there.
 a. nearby b. near c. remote d. close
44. It is healthier for you and kinder to the environment to to school.
 a. drive b. fly c. cycle d. sail
45. is the activity of looking after plants in a garden or a park.
 a. Garden b. Gardening c. Park d. Parking

III Derivatives, synonyms, antonyms & word-building

46. We have to electricity to avoid paying much money.
 a. conserve b. conservation c. conservationist d. desirable
47. As a, he thinks it is a crime جريمة to hunt lions.
 a. conserve b. conservation
 c. conservationist d. desirable
48. Which of the following prefixes turns the noun "danger" into a verb?
 a. In- b. En- c. Dis- d. Non-

49. does the least harm to the environment.
 a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism c. Ecology d. Geology
50. do the least harm to the environment.
 a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism c. Ecology d. Ecosystem
51. Never put your life in
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
52. Never put yourself in a/an situation.
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
53. Never your life.
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
54. Never put yourself in a situation where your life is
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
55. Which of the following adjectives is an antonym of "sociable"?
 a. Exotic b. Sustainable c. Relaxing d. Isolated
56. The suffix forms the noun for a person or an adjective.
 a. -ism b. -ist c. -ing d. -ed
57. It is necessary ضروري to keep your children in from bad company الصُحبة.
 a. isolate b. isolated c. isolating d. isolation
58. It is necessary to your children from bad company.
 a. isolate b. isolated c. isolating d. isolation
59. It is necessary to keep your children from bad company.
 a. isolate b. isolated c. isolating d. isolation
60. People living in a big city suffer from
 a. crowd b. crowded c. overcrowding d. crowds

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lung diseases أمراض الرئة are some of the problems pollution
 a. protects b. brings c. has d. takes
2. Never interrupt تقاطع us while the meeting is progress.
 a. for b. with c. on d. in

3. is the air, water, and land on Earth, which is affected by man's activities.
- a. Orangutan b. Orangutang
c. Environment d. The environment
4. Children need to be brought up in a warm family
- a. island b. Sahara c. environment d. weather
5. My first teacher has a long-term impact on my life.
- a. made b. done c. impacted d. protected
6. Thoughts in on me and I found it impossible مستحيل to sleep.
- a. encouraged b. isolated c. crowded d. endangered
7. This is a /an type of plant here in England. It is common منتشر in tropical استوائي areas only.
- a. conventional b. exotic c. sociable d. spicy
8. My granddad sat down on his armchair before his stick against the wall.
- a. impacting b. isolating c. crowding d. leaning
9. Some relations العلاقات are now based on benefit. People usually think how they can benefit from you.
- a. material b. spiritual c. religious d. emotional

Part IV

Structure



شاهد وتعلم

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

يتكون الماضي البسيط فى الجمل الخبرية من :

..... التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل subject

- ex. - Ahmed **visited** his friends yesterday. - They **saw** a show last night.

عند النفي :

subject فاعل + **did not / didn't** + **inf.**

- ex.** - Ahmed **did not (didn't)** visit his friends yesterday.
- They **did not (didn't)** see a show last night.

عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Did + subject فاعل + Inf. ?

- ex. - Did you tidy your room ?
- Did Omar do his homework ?

- Yes, I did.
- No, he didn't.

عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

question word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject + Inf. ?

- ex. - Where did you watch the match ? - Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبني للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

object مفعول + was/were + P.P. التصريف الثالث

- ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

كلمات وتعابير زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

- ذات مرة once - منذ ago - الماضي ... last - أمس yesterday
في الماضي in the past - مؤخرًا the other day - ذات مرة once upon a time
- in 2011 ... etc. - فيما سبق previously - قديمًا in ancient times

- ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.
تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية مع عادات الماضي البسيط :

always - usually - sometimes - never ... etc.

- ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

Mini Test (1)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- A week ago, I an apple tree in my garden.
a. plant b. am planted c. planted d. was planted
- A week ago, an apple tree in my garden.
a. plant b. am planted c. planted d. was planted
- They their animals yesterday.
a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed
- Their animals yesterday.
a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed

5. that film in the cinema?

a. You watched

c. You were watched

b. Did you watch

d. Were you watched

6. at the cinema?

a. That film watched

c. That film was watched

b. Did that film watch

d. Was that film watched

7. Who the door?

a. you opened

c. opened

b. did you open

d. were you opened

8. Who ?

a. was the door opened by

c. was opened the door

b. did you open the door

d. were you opened the door

9. Ahmed read an interesting story

a. everyday

b. ago

c. now

d. the other day

10., a lorry hit a motorbike.

a. Yesterday

b. In the future

c. Ago

d. Now

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

❶ في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (was / were) تُستخدم (not) في النفي وفي السؤال
نبدأ بـ (was / were) :

- He **was** at school yesterday. (إثبات)

- He **wasn't** at school yesterday. (نفي)

- **Was** he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ 'هل')

- Where **was** he yesterday? (سؤال بـ 'أداة إستفهام')

❷ في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (had) تُستخدم معه (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال:

- She **had** lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)

- She **didn't have** lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)

- **Did** she **have** lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال بـ 'هل')

- When **did** she **have** lunch? (سؤال بـ 'أداة إستفهام')

Mini Test (2)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Hassan at school yesterday.

a. isn't

b. doesn't be

c. wasn't

d. didn't be

2. at school yesterday?

a. Was Hassan

b. Did Hassan be

c. Had Hassan

d. Did Hassan have

3. Where yesterday?

- a. did Hassan be
c. were Hassan

- b. does Hassan be
d. was Hassan

4. I lunch at home yesterday.

a. haven't

b. hadn't

c. don't have

d. didn't have

5. lunch at home yesterday?

a. Had you

b. Did you have

c. You had

d. Do you have

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم الماضي البسيط في حالات كثيرة منها :

التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

- ex. - I **visited** my grandmother last Friday.
- My father **built** this house ten years ago.

سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

- ex. - The baby **was called** Oliver Twist. He **was sent** to the orphanage.

بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

- ex. - If I **studied** hard, I'd **pass** this exam.

Past Habits عادات الماضي

يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر :

1. **subj. + used to + inf.** ...

- ex. - He **used to swim** in the sea.

2. **It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit + to + inf.** ...

- ex. - It was his **habit to swim** in the sea.

3. **subj. + had + the habit of + n. / inf. + ing** ...

- ex. - He **had the habit of swimming** in the sea.

4. **subj. + was / were + in the habit of + (n. / inf. + ing)** ...

- ex. - He **was in the habit of swimming** in the sea.

5. **It was + habitual + for + someone / ضمير مفعول + to + inf.** ...

- ex. - It was **habitual for him to swim** in the sea.

٢ يمكن استخدام (**was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing**) للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان معتادًا بالنسبة للفاعل :

- ex. - They were used to working in the sun.
- I was used to eating salty food.

٣ يمكن استخدام (**got / became + used to + n. / inf. + ing**) للتعبير عن التعود :

- ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.
- I became used to working on a farm.

Mini Test (3) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- If we by the sea, we'd go swimming every day.
a. live b. lived c. is lived d. was lived
- When I was a student, I up early.
a. get b. used to getting
c. was used to get d. was used to getting
- go for a walk every week?
a. Was he used to b. Did he use c. Did he use to d. He used to

Notes for Advanced level ملاحظات للفائقين

١ **لاحظ :**

- أ. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I wish) تعبر عن تمنى في المضارع :
ex. - I wish I had a car. (ليتني كنت أمتلك سيارة حاليًا !)
- ب. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I would rather) تعبر عن عدم رضا أو رفض :
ex. - I'd rather you used your own mobile. (يعني ذلك أنني لا أريدك أن تستخدم تليفوني !)
- ج. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (It is time) تعبر عن تذكير أو لوم :
ex. - It is time you returned my money. (هنا تذكير أو لوم !)

٢ في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's time) استخدم بعدهم الماضي التام (had + P.P.) :

- ex. - I'd rather she had arrived home earlier yesterday.

٣ عند استخدام ظروف التكرار التي تحمل معنى النفي مثل (never / rarely / seldom / little) في بداية الجملة لابد من استخدام فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل :

- ex. - Rodayna rarely leaves for school before 7:30. (Rarely ...)
- Rarely does Rodayna leave for school before 7:30.

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

١ في الجملة المثبتة :

subject فاعل + **was / were** + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Ahmed **was reading** a story.
- Rodayna and Heba **were cooking** lunch.

٢ في الجملة المنفية :

subject فاعل + **was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't)** + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Ahmed **was not (wasn't)** reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba **were not (weren't)** cooking lunch.

٣ في السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى «هل» :

was / were + **subject** فاعل + (inf. + ing)?

- ex. - **Was** Ahmed reading a story ?
- Yes, he **was reading** a story.
- **Were** you running fast?
- No, I **wasn't**. = No, I **was not running** fast.

٤ في السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

question word أداة استفهام + **was / were** + **subject** فاعل + (inf. + ing)?

- ex. - **What** was Ahmed doing (reading)?
- **Who** was running fast?

٥ في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

object مفعول + **was/were** + **being** + **P.P.**

- ex. - A story **was being read** by Ahmed.

Mini Test (4) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Some people on the farm from morning to afternoon that day.
a. was worked b. were worked c. was working d. were working
- I saw that she on her mobile, so I decided to return later.
a. talked b. was talked c. was talking d. wasn't talking

3. It was not polite of him to interrupt **يقاطع** what I
 a. was doing b. did c. had done d. was done
4. What you doing when I called ?
 a. are b. were c. did d. had
5. Some boys when the teacher entered the classroom.
 a. fought b. were fought c. was fighting d. were fighting

Uses الاستخدامات

١ يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي :

ex. - I **was playing** on the beach last Friday's afternoon.

٢ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي :

جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى مستمر + **while / As / when**

ex. While I **was reading** a story, Ali **was watching** TV.

٣ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر :

جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى مستمر + **while / As / when / Just as**

ex. - While he **was playing** a tennis match, he **broke** his arm.

جملة ماضى بسيط + **(inf. + ing)** + **while / when**

ex. - While **playing** a tennis match, he **broke** his arm.

جملة ماضى بسيط + اسم + **during**

ex. - During a tennis match, he **broke** his arm.

جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى بسيط + **when**

ex. - When I **arrived**, Shahd **was watching** a cartoon.

جملة ماضى بسيط / جملة ماضى مستمر + **on + noun / (inf. + ing)**

ex. - On **my arrival** at my office, I **checked** my email.

لاحظ استخدام المبني للمجهول في الصيغة التالية:

while / on + being + p.p.

ex. - While **the food** was being cooked, it smelled nice.

= **While / on being cooked**, Mum's food smelled nice.

في المثال السابق استخدمنا (being cooked) وليس (cooking) لأن الجملة الثانية بدأت بـ (the food) الذي يُعتبر مفعول الجملة الأولى.

يُستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلا من الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التالية:

ex. - Feelings المشاعر : like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish ... etc.

- **Senses** الحواس : hear, see, smell, feel, sound, taste, appear, seem, look ... etc.

- **Mental state** الإدراك : realise, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine, recognise, remember, forget ... etc.

- I **was hearing** a noise outside. (x)

- I **heard** a noise outside. (✓)

لكن يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال السابقة في حالة استخدامها بمعاني أخرى غير معانيها الأصلية:

✖ - I **was seeing** an old friend when you called. (= was meeting)

- I **was having** some pizza when the phone rang. (= was eating)

تذكر أن الماضي المستمر لا يُستخدم مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق زمناً) :

✂ - My car broke down تعطل. (Not: was breaking down)

كما أن (being) لا تُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الماضي المستمر :

ex. While we were in the park, our children were playing around us.

(Not: were being)

Mini Test (5)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

☼ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My car down as I was driving to work.

a. breaks

b. broke

c. was breaking

d. was being broken

2. While I at the club, I played tennis.

a. was

b. was being

c. am

d. am being

3. Nada when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.

a. slept

b. was slept

c. has slept

d. was sleeping

4. the film, I ate popcorn فشار and drank juice.
 a. As b. While c. During d. When
5. watching the film, I ate popcorn فشار and drank juice.
 a. As b. While c. During d. As soon as
6. When you called me, I a shower. That's why I didn't reply.
 a. was having b. had c. had had d. has had
7. During yesterday's match, most players fit.
 a. hadn't been b. weren't c. weren't being d. have been
8. I my toys when I was young.
 a. was loving b. am loving
 c. was being loved d. loved
9. While I the door of my flat, I heard a loud noise in the street.
 a. was shutting b. had shut
 c. was being shut d. shutting

Exercises

On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I a call from an important client عميل yesterday.
 a. receive b. am received c. received d. was received
2. A call from an important client yesterday.
 a. receive b. am received c. received d. was received
3. He the money he needed.
 a. gave b. didn't give c. give d. wasn't given
4. They him the money he needed.
 a. given b. didn't give c. give d. wasn't given
5. Did to the secretary?
 a. you hand the report b. you handed the report
 c. the report hand d. the report handed
6. Was to the secretary?
 a. you hand the report b. you handed the report
 c. the report hand d. the report handed
7. When your medicine, Ola?
 a. you last took b. did you last take
 c. were you last taken d. you were last taken
8. I Omar in the street the other day.
 a. meet b. meets c. met d. was met

UNIT 1

9. A week, I was offered a good job.
a. last b. ago c. since d. once
10. I last from her on Friday.
a. heard b. was heard c. hear d. is heard
11. I showered and before checking my inbox.
a. dress b. dressed c. am dressed d. don't dress
12. I play football on Fridays.
a. was used to b. used to c. be used to d. became used
13. I playing football on Fridays.
a. was used to b. used to c. be used to d. became used
14. My sister and I mum with the housework.
a. was helping b. were helped c. was helped d. helped
15. From 9 to 12 last Friday, I an important meeting.
a. had attended b. was attended
c. was attending d. was being attended
16. From 9 to 12 last Friday, an important meeting
a. had attended b. was attended
c. was attending d. was being attended
17. doing when I called you?
a. Were you b. You were
c. What you were d. What were you
18. While my brother the match, I was writing an essay.
a. watched b. was watching c. had watched d. watched
19. When the doorbell rang, we lunch.
a. had b. were had
c. are having d. were having
20. the football match, he broke his leg.
a. While b. As c. During d. For
21. she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.
a. Before b. After c. When d. On
22. my sleep, I had a nightmare. كابوس.
a. While b. As c. When d. During
23. The police arrested him as he the scene of the crime.
a. had left b. was leaving c. was left d. has left
24. Everybody was at the office at 08:30 yesterday. The meeting at nine o'clock.
a. starts b. has started c. had started d. started
25. I into a good family in the south of Egypt.
a. bore b. was born c. had been born d. have been born

26. When Mariam was young, she used to in London.

- a. lives b. living c. live d. lived

II Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

27. I visit the pyramids every month when I was in Giza.

(الإسكندرية - العامرية ٢٠٢٠)

- a. used b. used to c. used for d. am used to

28. the flight, I was reading a book called "To Whom the Bell Tolls."

(الدقهلية - ططا ٢٠٢٠)

- a. While b. During c. Just as d. When

29. Really, they visited the zoo five years

(الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٠)

- a. since b. for c. yet d. ago

30. While studying, he asleep.

(الإسكندرية - التوجيه العام ٢٠٢٠)

- a. fall b. fallen c. fell d. filled

31. What yesterday while the match was being broadcasted?

(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٠)

- a. were you done b. are you doing
c. were you doing d. you were doing

32. She..... in Cairo for ten years. Later, she got married and moved to Alex.

(البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)

- a. lived b. has lived c. had been lived d. was living

33. How fast when the accident happened?

(البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)

- a. did you drive b. were you driving
c. had you driven d. have you driven

34. I borrowed my friend's car because mine

(أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)

- a. was repaired b. has been repaired
c. was being repaired d. was repairing

III Special cases

35. Amira well yesterday.

- a. doesn't look b. didn't look
c. wasn't looking d. looks

36. I ready to take the exam, so I postponed it. أُلّجته

- a. didn't be b. don't be c. wasn't d. am

37. at home when the fire started?

- a. Were you b. You were
c. Did you be d. You are

38. a nice time in the countryside?

- a. Had you b. You had
c. Did you have d. Were you had

39. I lunch until I had returned home.
 a. hadn't b. haven't c. didn't have d. wasn't had
40. I'd call you if I any news.
 a. have b. am had c. had d. was had
41. I wish I a better time today.
 a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
42. I wish I a better time last year.
 a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
43. It's time you back my camera.
 a. gave b. give c. is given d. was given
44. I'd rather here than in Cairo.
 a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
45. I'd rather I here in Cairo.
 a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
46. Rokaya always to her first school on foot.
 a. goes b. went c. was gone d. is gone
47. Every day, I my uncle when he was ill.
 a. am visited b. visit c. was visited d. visited
48. touching the hot pan, Sama cried in pain.
 a. While b. On c. When d. During
49. on holiday, I had a great time.
 a. While b. On c. When d. During
50. While I at home, I helped my mother.
 a. was being b. had been c. had d. was
51. the show, my baby fell asleep.
 a. While b. After c. When d. During
52. On the monkey, my baby was frightened.
 a. was seeing b. had seen
 c. he was seeing d. seeing
53. I last met Ahmed while he off some British friends at the airport.
 a. saw b. was seeing c. had seen d. was seen
54. When I visited my sister, she ill.
 a. seemed b. was seeming c. had seemed d. was seemed
55. Mustafa smokes. He stopped it years ago.
 a. used to b. no longer c. any more d. doesn't
56. My brother work hard on the farm.
 a. used to b. is used c. got used to d. no longer

57. My brother hard work on the farm.
 a. used to b. is used to c. got used to d. no longer
58. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils who a lot of noise soon became calm.
 a. were making b. were being made
 c. had been made d. were made
59. Sorry, I you at 9 o'clock as arranged because I was having a meeting.
 a. haven't called b. was not calling
 c. hadn't called d. didn't call
60. When I was young, I always before going to school.
 a. crying b. cry c. cried d. was crying
61. "She used to wear black clothes" means she usually them.
 a. wears b. wore c. worn d. wearing
62. Did you go out last night or you busy?
 a. did b. were c. are d. have

IV Check your understanding

63. I used to be overweight. This means I am now.
 a. fat b. overweight c. no longer thin d. not overweight
64. I wish I were taller. This means I
 a. like my height b. don't like my height
 c. would like to be short d. enjoy being short
65. "While having lunch, my mother called me in." Who was having lunch?
 a. It was me. b. It was my mother.
 c. Both my mother and me. d. Neither of us.
66. I didn't answer the phone because I my shower.
 a. had taken b. was taken c. was taking d. had been taken
67. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means that
 a. Sama was drinking juice.
 b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.
 c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.
 d. Sama said her friends were drinking juice.
68. "She wishes she were tall." What does this mean?
 a. She was tall. b. She wasn't tall.
 c. She isn't tall. d. She is no longer tall.

69. "I'd rather you didn't use my mobile." This means that
- I wanted you to use my mobile
 - I didn't want you to use my mobile
 - I want you to use my mobile
 - I don't want you to use my mobile
70. "You have to pay the bill الفاتورة right now." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
- It is about time you paid the bill.
 - It is about time you had paid the bill.
 - It is time you pay the bill.
 - It is time you have paid the bill.
71. "During the football match, he fell and broke his leg." This means
- he was a player in that match
 - he was one of the fans watching that match on TV
 - he was not interested in that match
 - his leg was broken soon after the match
72. Mum always set the table for lunch.
- This is a present habit.
 - This was a past habit.
 - This always takes place.
 - This never took place.
73. "While on holiday, some thieves broke into our neighbour's flat." Who was on holiday?
- We
 - The thieves
 - Our neighbours
 - No one

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

• هذا السؤال لا يعتمد على قواعد الوحدة فقط، لكنه يعتمد أيضا على القواعد التراكمية التي سبق دراستها، وأهم هذه القواعد تم شرحها في الملحق الخاص بكتاب المعاصر.

تنويه

1 Yesterday, everyone at home was busy. My sister (a) busy revising for her final exams. My father (b) the whole evening working on a business report. Mum was helping my little brother (c) his English homework (d) I was watering the plants in the garden.

a.

b.

c.

d.

2 Last Monday was a special day for me. From five (a) seven, I (b) playing a tennis match with a professional محترف player. He beat me (c) I learnt a lot from (d)

a. b. c. d.

3 I was out yesterday afternoon. I (a)..... visited my uncle. (b)..... that, I (c)..... the shopping. Finally, I (d)..... a taxi to take me home.

a. b. c. d.

4 My brother travelled to the USA yesterday. (a)..... was his life dream to study chemistry (b)..... . He (c) always dreamt of that journey. Before (d) , he had taken a language course.

a. b. c. d.

5 I had a difficult day at work yesterday. First, I interviewed (a)..... number of applicants. After (b), I (c) asked to accompany يصطحب the general manager to a four- (d) meeting.

a. b. c. d.

6 When you are nervous, you don't take the right decision. (a) was what (b) yesterday. I (c) an argument with my manager at work. I (d) like the way he talked to me and was quick to leave my job.

a. b. c. d.

Advanced Exercise on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.

a. During b. On c. While d. As

2. on holiday, I met a lot of my old friends.

a. During b. Just as c. While d. As

UNIT 1

3. My elder brother watching a movie on his computer last night.
a. used to enjoy b. was enjoying c. enjoyed d. would enjoy
4. I waited at the door for ten minutes until he it at last.
a. opened b. had opened c. has opened d. was opening
5. I had my lunch. After that, I to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
6. Don't open the door until I you.
a. tell b. told c. had told d. was told
7. Rodayna to bed. Before that, she finished her homework.
a. go b. went c. had gone d. going
8. While, the baby was laughing to the doctor.
a. examining b. was examining
c. being examined d. having examined
9. to hospital in the ambulance, the injured man was put on a ventilator جهاز تنفس صناعي.
a. While taking b. When taking
c. On taking d. While being taken
10. "During the football match, he fell asleep." This means
a. he was a player in that match
b. the match might have been boring
c. that match was very exciting
d. he watched the whole match

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

- 1 I had a severe pain ألم حاد in my teeth yesterday. I had no solution
(a) to see a dentist. (b) that, I had tried taking painkillers
المسكنات but (c) was in vain دون جدوي. Not until the dentist had
taken the bad molar الضرس off (d) the pain start to disappear.
a. b. c. d.

2

I was on my way home from work. Suddenly, (a) was a loud scream صرخة. (b) was a voice of a woman. When I looked, I saw a thief (c) away with the woman's bag. At once, I rushed and got hold of (d) اندفعت وأمسكت به.

a.

b.

c.

d.

Part V Grammatical Hints from Reading & Listening

So

١ تستخدم مع الصفة أو الظرف بمعنى جداً :

so + adj. / adv.

- ex. - You can answer this question. It is not **so difficult**.
 - We have enough time. I don't know why you are driving **so quickly**.

٢ تُستخدم (so + adj. + that) بمعنى (جداً لدرجة أن) :

so + adj. + that + جملة

- ex. - The exam was **so easy that** all students passed it.
 - He ran **so slowly that** he came last in the race السباق.

٣ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار صفة أو ظرف بمعنى (هكذا / بهذه الطريقة) :

- ex. - The weather is **cold** and I think it will remain **so** (=cold) for another two days.

٤ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار عبارة بمعنى (ذلك) :

- ex. - A: Do you think **Rokaya will come first** ?
 B: I think **so**. (= I think she will come first.)

٥ تُستخدم (so) في الصيغة التالية بمعنى (وكذلك ...) :

فاعل + فعل مساعد أو ناقص + so

- ex. - Mr Helmi felt sick after the meal and **so did Mr Ashraf and Fady**.
 - My mother likes spicy food. **So do I**.

UNIT 1

٦ تُستخدم (so) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (لذلك / لهذا السبب) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :

جملة نتيجة + لذلك so

ex. - Mr Abdulrahman was tired, so he went to bed early.

٧ تُستخدم (so) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (حتى / لكي) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :

جملة غرض + لكي / حتى so = so that

ex. - I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of the corals.

ing

أحياناً يُستخدم (inf. + ing) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

(inf. + ing) = جملة مبنية للمعلوم + who / which / that

ex. - I have a cousin who works for a tourist company.

= I have a cousin working for a tourist company.

with = who / which / that + have

لاحظ استخدام (with) كبديل لعبارة وصل :

اسم noun + have / has / had + who / whom / which / that

= with + noun اسم

ex. - I saw a little girl who has green eyes and long hair.

= I saw a little girl with green eyes and long hair.

- They live in a tiny village which has no shops.

= They live in a tiny village with no shops.

when + ing

يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (when) بمعنى (عند / حين) بشرط أن يكون الفاعل نفس فاعل الجملة الرئيسية :

..... when + (inf. + ing) = when + جملة

ex. - When I was leaving the office, I heard the manager shouting.

= When leaving the office, I heard the manager shouting.

(أنا كنت أغادر وسمعت المدير يصيح).

= When leaving the office, the manager was shouting.

(المدير هو من كان يصيح وهو يغادر المكتب).

• or / otherwise أو / وإلا •

يمكن استخدام (or) أو (otherwise) في جمل شرطية بمعنى (وإلا) بدلاً من (if / unless):

- ex. - You must study hard, **otherwise** you won't pass the exam.
 = If you don't study hard, you won't pass the exam.
 = Unless you study hard, you won't pass the exam.

• someone / anything ... + adj. صفة •

تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها:

someone / somebody / something / somewhere / anyone
anybody / anything / anywhere / everyone / everybody
everything / everywhere / no one / nobody / nothing / nowhere

- ex. - I sat next to **someone important** on the plane. (Not: important someone)
 - Children like **everything new**. (Not: new everything)

• It + verb to be + ... من ... •

It + be + adj. صفة + to + inf. **من ... أن ...**

- ex. - It is difficult to understand this lesson without your teacher's help.
 - It is enjoyable to spend your free time in the club.

It + be + adj. صفة + ing. **من ... أن ...**

- ex. - It is dangerous walking in the forest alone.

It + be + adj. صفة + of / for + subj. فاعل + to + inf. **من ... أن ...**

- ex. - It is easy for Ayman to do this work on his own. بمفرده
 - It is kind of you to help me solve my problems.

• help + inf. / to + inf. •

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) أو (inf.) بعد (help):

- ex. I helped Sama to do the cooking.
 = I **helped** Sama **do** the cooking.
 - The babysitter **helps to look** after the baby.
 = The babysitter **helps look** after the baby.

UNIT 1

busy

--- **busy with + noun** اسم

ex. - The manager is **busy with** some clients. العملاء.

--- **busy + (inf. + ing)**

ex. - We were **busy doing** the housework.

• **verb + object + inf. / ing** •

الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على متابعة الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing)
ليدل على متابعة جزء من الحدث:

see - watch - hear - notice

ex. - I **saw** the sun **go** down. (شاهدت الغروب بالكامل)

- I **saw** the sun **going** down. (شاهدت جزء من الغروب)

• **including** •

تُستخدم (including) كحرف جر بمعنى (بما في ذلك / مشتملاً على) :

including بما في ذلك \neq **excluding** فيما عدا

ex. - I called all my family members, **including** my uncle who lives in Canada.

• **stop** •

تُستخدم (stop) بمعنى (يتوقف - يُوقِف - يمنع) كالتالي:

stop + to + inf. + يتوقف (عما يفعله) لكي

ex. - While Leen was doing homework, she **stopped to make** herself a cup of tea.

stop + (inf. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

ex. - Ashraf **stopped** chatting with his online friends to revise for the exams.

stop + obj. مفعول + (from) + inf. + ing. يمنع ... من القيام بـ ...

ex. - Mr Ayman **stopped** us **from talking** to each other.

= Mr Ayman **stopped** us **talking** to each other.

Exercises**On Grammatical Hints**

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1. Ali is busy his homework.
a. to do b. did c. doing d. has done
2. When the bank, the manager was calling the police.
a. leaving b. leaves c. leave d. had left
3. Children like Tom and Jerry cartoons because they are funny.
a. such b. such a c. so d. so much
4. She saw her father for work earlier than usual.
a. leaving b. to leaving c. leaves d. left
5. It is nice you to help her.
a. in b. with c. for d. of
6. I have to wear the uniform, I won't take part in أشارك في the game.
a. as b. so c. otherwise d. if
7. He writes so that I can't read anything.
a. bade b. badly c. good d. well
8. They are busy the preparations of the wedding تجهيزات الزفاف.
a. from b. to c. for d. with
9. Can you suggest to do?
a. a something important b. an important something
c. something important d. important something
10. talking to a client, the manager's mobile rang.
a. It b. So c. During d. When
11. Mum was tired that she slept in her chair.
a. so b. such c. very d. too
12. Mr Magdi helped us the experiment.
a. doing b. do c. to doing d. done
13. It is useful us to have a work plan.
a. at b. about c. for d. of
14. He has a villa a swimming pool.
a. of b. with c. into d. out of
15. He is very tired. He will remain unless he gets enough free time.
a. else b. also c. so that d. so
16. I heard a bird beautifully before it flew away.
a. to sing b. singing c. sing d. b&c

UNIT 1

17. We have told about the new project.
 a. everybody interested b. interested everybody
 c. an everybody interested d. an interested everybody
18. I gave her all the keys, the front door key.
 a. in b. at c. from d. including
19. A: Is Omar ill? B: I think He looks pale شاحب.
 a. it b. this c. so d. as
20. It was helpful some days off. تأخذ إجازة.
 a. to taking b. take c. takes d. to take
21. The horse by the gate is mine.
 a. stand b. stands c. standing d. to stand
22. Marwa is hard-working and so
 a. I am b. am I c. I do d. do I
23. Shaza helped all of us ready for the competition المسابقة.
 a. to getting b. got c. getting d. to get
24. Be careful you might fall.
 a. if b. unless c. or d. and
25. I know the girl the big nose.
 a. with b. in c. of d. to
26. I am full, I can't eat anything else.
 a. so b. as c. because d. since

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

1 Everyone needs to work hard. It is useful (a) the whole society (b) have individuals (c) hard-working nature, (d) women.

a. b. c. d.

2 At seven o'clock yesterday, I was walking to school as usual. Suddenly, I heard someone (a) my name from the other side of the street. I didn't know the man, (b) I was puzzled. Crossing the street, I saw the man busy (c) out a cigarette out of a box and he asked for matches. I was so furious (d) I didn't even reply to him.

a. b. c. d.

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

برجاء الرجوع لملحق المهارات الخاص بكتاب المعاصر للتدريب على كيفية كتابة المقال.

تنويه

Model Essay

* Write an essay of about 150 words about voluntary work :

Voluntary work

What is voluntary work? Simply, voluntary work is work that you do for free. You do not expect or ask to be paid money or anything else for doing it. It is a type of help to the whole society or a certain group of people in society.

Voluntary work has always been very important. There are a lot of problems and challenges تحديات that face تواجه the society. The government cannot face all these problems and challenges without the people's help. We can say that volunteering role is complementary مكمّل to that of the government.

What can people volunteer? Most people would say money. That's not an accurate answer. Money is a donation not volunteering. Volunteering is mainly أساساً taking part in doing something useful or necessary for the society or the people living in it. Those who volunteer have enough time and experience with which they can help.

Voluntary work is very important. It helps with difficult problems. It creates a type of unity الاتحاد and strength in society. If you haven't volunteered so far , you had better try now.

2 Translation الترجمة

Skill builder برجاء الرجوع للجزء الخاص بالترجمة في الكتاب التأسيسي

تنويه

① Translate into Arabic :

1. Tourism is one of the chief sources of national income. Every citizen has to do their best to help attract more tourists.
2. Ecotourism is a type of tourism that pays great attention to the environment. It is based on enjoying tourists as well as protecting the environment.
3. Some species of animals are endangered in one way or another. Those face the danger of dying out like dinosaurs and other creatures.

② Translate into English :

١. يوفر النشاط السياحي الآلاف من فرص العمل للمواطنين من مختلف الأعمار، لذا فتشجيع السياحة والعمل على جذب المزيد من السُّيَّاح واجب وطني.
٢. تضع السياحة البيئية في الاعتبار الحفاظ على البيئة الطبيعية، لذلك يتم تحديد أعداد السُّيَّاح والأنشطة التي يقومون بها والأماكن التي يزورونها.
٣. إن حماية الأنواع النادرة من الحيوانات والنباتات من الانقراض واجب بيئي، فهذه الكائنات تلعب دوراً حيوياً في التوازن البيئي.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

as well as	بالإضافة إلى	in the idealist way	بالشكل الأمثل
attention	انتباه	invest	يستثمر
attract	يجذب	job opportunities	فرص عمل
balance	التوازن	monuments	الآثار
chief	رئيسي	national income	الدخل القومي
citizen	مواطن	necessary	ضروري
create	يخلق	promotion	الترويج
creatures	كائنات / مخلوقات	rare	نادر
deny	يُنكر	sources	مصادر
duty	واجب	species	أنواع / سلالات
dying out	الانقراض	type	نوع
extremely	للغاية	vital role	دوراً حيوياً

أحرص على التدريب المستمر

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدريبات للتقويم المستمر على كل وحدة

★ اختبار تراكمي

★ تدريبات للأزهر

★ تدريبات على المهارات

★ اختبارات على المنهج



المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية
بالقصة المقررة جزء القصة نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A / An is a steep piece of land or rock.
a. scar b. cliff c. stone d. desert
2. means light in colour.
a. Blind b. Frightened c. Pale d. Strong
3. A / An is a mark on skin from a cut or wound.
a. weapon b. sword c. inn d. scar
4. To is to be brave enough to do something that is risky.
a. dare b. fear c. frighten d. die
5. A / An is a weapon with a long, sharp blade.
a. gun b. mark c. cannon d. sword
6. To is to protect a person, place, or object by staying near them and watching them.
a. kill b. attack c. guard d. donate
7. means unable to see.
a. Blind b. Generous c. Frightened d. Disabled
8. A / An is a small hotel, especially an old one in the countryside.
a. restaurant b. inn c. station d. corridor
9. To is to take hold بـ of someone or something with a sudden مفاجئة or violent movement عنيفة.
a. scare b. arrest c. grab d. release
10. To means to need to pay someone for something that they have done for you or sold to you.
a. guard b. grab c. own d. owe



A. Vocabulary and Structures



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The mother was with importance when she spoke of her son.
It means that she took pride in her son's achievements.
a. swelling b. showing c. rising d. puffing
2. Mariam is going in the Himalayas this year.
a. trekking b. tricking c. kicking d. pickling
3. is the protection of natural life.
a. Conservation b. Reservation c. Admiration d. Organization
4. There will be an international meeting to discuss the environmental
..... of global warming.
a. impacts b. affections c. results d. destinations
5. We and our teacher into a forest to learn some things about
rare animals and plants.
a. trekked b. tricked c. traced d. tracked
6. Doubts him and he was disappointed.
a. crowded b. crowded up c. crowded in on d. crowded off
7. The suffix..... forms the noun for a person or an adjective.
a. ism b. ist c. ing d. ed
8. During epidemics, الأوبئة it is necessary to keep yourself and your
children in
a. isolate b. instated c. isolated d. isolation
9. I prefer meat. That is meat which isn't fatty.
a. white b. sheep c. lean d. raw
10. Put some ice on your knee before it up.
a. treks b. swells c. leans d. isolates
11. the email sent before the office was closed ?
a. Are b. Had c. Was d. Does
12. Adel was watching a match at home and his father arrived. This means
that Adel's father arrived the match.
a. during b. before c. while d. after
13. Civil engineers get used to in the sun.
a. work b. working c. works d. worked

14. He punished for his mistakes until his father had arrived home.
 a. didn't b. isn't c. wasn't d. hadn't
15. Dad always set the car for the picnic. It is
 a. a present habit b. a past habit c. a & b d. neither a nor b
16. On hearing the unexpected news, he remained silent for a
 a. when b. why c. while d. times
17. **Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :**

I was in a tight corner موقف صعب yesterday. While (a) my car along the desert road to Assuit, (b) ran out of petrol. I thought (c) I would surely pass a petrol station, but there was (d) I had to wait for three hours. Finally, a passing lorry stopped and the driver agreed to help me.

a. b. c. d.

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins have become a popular attraction at zoos in recent years. They are more and more interesting than lions and tigers because they are livelier and perform tricks like circus animals. But although they are more willing to cooperate with the trainer than other mammals in captivity, they get bored if they are asked to do the same trick twice. This is one reason for believing they are very intelligent.

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them about helping drowning sailors have been common since the Romans. We now have more reliable evidence of their usefulness than sailors' tales. In South Africa, two dolphins have been trained to help swimmers in difficulties and drive sharks away from the beach. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that they are better organized and their society is more complex than people have previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weak as we do.

Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language system which is similar to bats' one and man cannot hear. It is much more probable that they have an echo-location. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man? The question cannot be answered.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

18. Most sharks are

a. man's friends

b. man's enemy

c. dolphins' friends

d. as friendly as dolphins

19. Dolphins communicate with each other by using

a. words similar to man's ones

b. sounds like other animals

c. the language of birds

d. movements of the body

20. Dolphins are

a. as intelligent as man

b. more intelligent than man

c. more intelligent than sea animals

d. the most intelligent of all

21. In South Africa, two dolphins were trained so as to

a. drown swimmers

b. organize society

c. give a hand to others

d. tell tales to sailors

B. Answer the following questions :

22. Can bats live with dolphins together? Why / Why not?

23. Summarize in TWO sentences what you learnt from the passage about dolphins' life.

24. Do you like dolphins? Why / Why not?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

No one can deny that tourism in Egypt is extremely necessary.

It creates job opportunities and brings hard currency to the country.

26. Translate into Arabic :

تمتلك مصر الجزء الأكبر من الآثار القديمة الموجودة بالعالم، لذا يجب استثمار ذلك بالشكل الأمثل لجذب المزيد من السياح عن طريق الترويج الجيد.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

A place you have been to

.....

.....

.....

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة★ **Reading :**

A text about Egyptian people who help their communities

★ **Writing :**

write a blog on a famous person;
a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah

★ **Listening :**

An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah

★ **Speaking :**

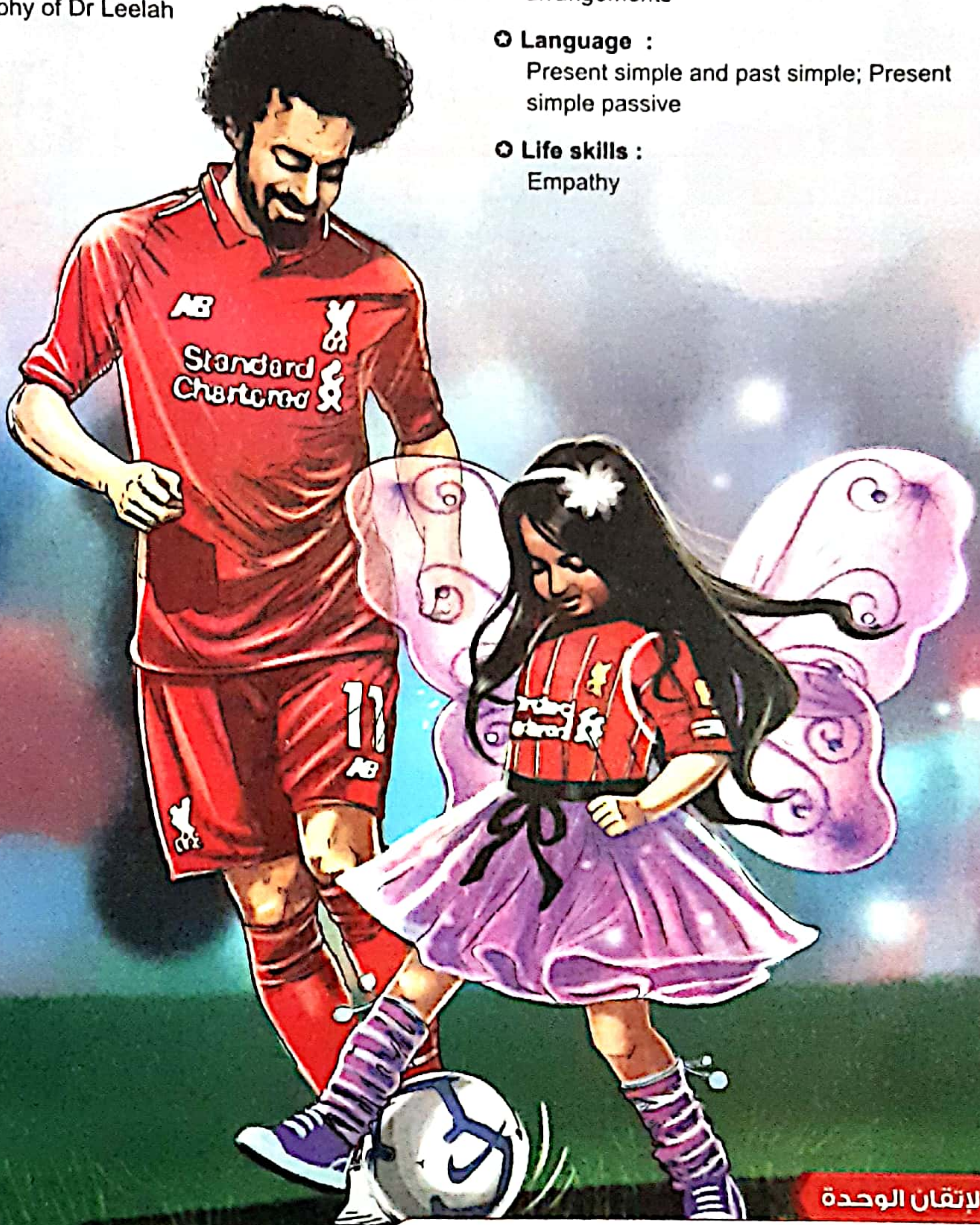
Discussion about helping people; Making arrangements

★ **Language :**

Present simple and past simple; Present simple passive

★ **Life skills :**

Empathy



لا إتقان الوحدة

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
- ملحق المهارات.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

admire (d) (v)	يُعْجَبُ بِهِ	injured (adj)	مصاب
agreement (n)	عَقْدٌ - اتِّفَاقٌ - موافقة	intelligent (adj)	ذكي
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	intelligence (n)	ذكاء
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	iron level (n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم
blood pressure (n)	ضغط الدم	iron (ed) (n - v)	حديد - مكواة - يكوي
blood donation (n)	التبرُّع بالدم	level (n)	مستوي / نسبة
blood (n)	الدم	livestock (n)	حيوانات المزارع
cattle (n)	الماشية	long-term (adj)	طويل المدي
community (n)	المجتمع	model (n)	نموذج
compassion (n)	رَأْفَةٌ / رَحْمَةٌ	monitor (ed) (v - n)	يُرَاقِبُ / يرصد - جهاز
conservation (n)	حماية البيئة		عرض
conservationist (n)	مُحَافِظٌ عَلَى الْبَيْئَةِ	organisation (n)	مؤسسة - مُنَظَّمَةٌ
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع به	party (n)	فريق - جماعة - حزب
donation (n)	التبرُّع	pressure (n)	ضغط
donor (n)	مُتَبَرِّعٌ	prestige (n - adj)	نُفُوزٌ / هَيْبَةٌ / وَجَاهَةٌ
empathy (n)	تَعَاظُفٌ - مراعاة ظروف الآخرين		- عالي الجودة
employ (ed) (v)	يُوظِّفُ - يُشْغِلُ	roar (ed) (n - v)	زئير - يزأر
estimate (d) (v)	يُقَدِّرُ - يفترض	role model (n)	قدوة - نموذج يُحتَذَى
generous (adj)	كريم - سخي	role (n)	دور
go- went - gone (v)	يختفي / يزول	speed (n)	سرعة
guardian (n)	حارس	track (ed) (v - n)	ممر - يرصد - يتابع
hunting parties	فرق الصيد	transplant (ed) (v - n)	يزرع (عضو) -
injure (d) (v)	يُصِيبُ - يؤذي	villagers (n)	زراعة أعضاء القرويين

2 Definitions تعريفات

admire (v)	يُعْجَبُ بِهِ	to respect and approve of person or their behaviour
agreement (n)	عقد - اتفاقية	an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something
blood pressure	ضغط الدم	a measure of the pressure at which the blood flows through the body
community (n)	مجتمع	all the people who live in the same area, city etc.

desire (n)	رغبة	a strong feeling that you want something
donate (v)	يتبرع	to give money or goods to help a person or organisation
generous (adj)	كريم	willing مُستعد to give money, help... etc. especially more than usual
guardian (n)	حارس - وصي	someone who is legally responsible for مسئول عن looking after someone or something
intelligence (n)	الذكاء	the ability to think, reason يَعْقِل and understand
iron level	مستوى الحديد	the iron is a chemical element (symbol) which exists in small amounts in the blood. The level is the amount or quantity of iron presence وجود
livestock (n)	حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
long-term	طويل المدى	continuing for a long into the future
monitor (v)	يرصد - يراقب	to watch carefully and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses تنظر over a period of time
persuade (v)	يقنع	to make someone decide to do something, especially by giving them reasons.
prestige (n)	نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة	the respect احترام and admiration إعجاب that someone or something gets because of their success or important position مكانة in society
roar (v - n)	زئير - يزأر	(to make) a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice
role model	قلوة	a person who people admire and try to copy يُقلد their behaviour سلوك
speed (n)	السرعة	how fast something moves or travels
transplant (n)	زراعة أعضاء - نقل	medical طبي operations جراحية in which a new organ is put into someone's body

3

Important Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة	include (d) (v)	يُضمّن - يتضمن
achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	inspire (d) (v)	يُلهم - يَحثّ / يُحفّز
aim (ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف	interview (ed) (n - v)	حوار / مقابلة شخصية - يحاور
amazing (adj)	مذهل / رائع	introduction (n)	مقدمة
angle (n)	زاوية - جانب	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
attack (ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	killer (n)	قاتل
belief (n)	اعتقاد	locate (d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع

UNIT 2

benefit (ted) (n - v)	فائدة / يستفيد	movement (n)	حركة
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	bring - brought (v)	يُحضِر - يجلب
both (deter. / pron.)	كل من / كلا / كلتا	paw prints (n)	آثار أقدام الحيوان
cancer (n)	مرض السرطان	paws (n)	برائن - مخالب الحيوانات
chance (n)	فرصة	plan (ned) (n - v)	خطة - يخطط
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	persuade (d) (v)	يُقنع
check (ed) (v)	يفحص / يتحقق	praise (d) (n - v)	المديح - يُثني على - يمتدح
conclusion (n)	خلاصة - خاتمة	presenter (n)	مُقدِّم برنامج
cute (adj)	جذاب - جميل	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
date (n)	تاريخ اليوم - موعد	recognize (d) (v)	يتعرف علي
disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى	reduce (d) (v)	يُقلِّل / يُخفِّض
documentary (n - adj)	فيلم وثائقي - وثائقي	regular (adj)	معتاد / مألوف - منتظم
expert (n - adj)	خبير	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
field (n)	مجال - حقل	roleplay (n - v)	(العبة) تمثيل الأدوار
finals (n)	النهائيات	safe (adj)	- يُمثِّل آمن
happiness (n)	السعادة	score (d) (v - n)	يُحرز / يسجل - النقاط المسجلة
headquarters (n)	مركز القيادة	sense (n)	حاسة
hometown (n)	مسقط رأس	skill (n)	مهارة
hope (d) (n - v)	أمل - يأمل / يتمني	soccer (n)	كرة القدم
hunt (ed) (v)	يصاد - يطارد / يلاحق	success (n)	النجاح
hunter (n)	صياد	support (ed) (n - v)	دعم / مساندة - يدعم
illness (n)	المرض	supporting (adj)	داعم / مساند
nickname (n)	لقب - اسم شهرة	talk (ed) (n - v)	حديث / حوار - يتحدث
objective (adj)	موضوعي (مُحايد)	tribe (n)	قبيلة
lose - lost (v)	يفقد / يخسر	viewers (n)	المشاهدين
maker (n)	صانع	wild (adj)	برِّي
missing (adj)	مفقود - ناقص	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
move (d) (v)	يتحرك / ينتقل - يُحرِّك / ينقل		

4 Extra Vocabulary

appearance (n)	مظهر	life (lives) (n)	حياة (حيوات)
birth (n)	ميلاد	list (ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يضع في قائمة
centre (n)	مركز / وسط	Maasai (n)	شعب الماساي
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	nearby (adj / adv)	قريب / مُجاوِر

completed (adj)	مُكْتَمِل	recent (adj)	حديث
currently (adv)	حالياً	repeated (adj)	مُتَكَرِّر
description (n)	وَصْف	save (d) (v)	يُنْقِذ - يَدْخِر / يوفّر
discussion (n)	مناقشة / نقاش	scientist (n)	عالم
Egyptians (n)	المصريون	sign (n)	علامة / إشارة / لافتة
essay (n)	مقالة	single (adj)	منفرد - أعزب
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع - يتتبع	situations (n)	مواقف
formal (adj)	رسمي	stadium (n)	ستاد
frequency (n)	تكرار	summary (n)	ملخص
great (adj)	عظيم	Tanzania (n)	تنزانيا
Kenya (n)	كينيا	teach - taught (v)	يُدْرَس
kids (n)	الأطفال	together (adv)	معاً / سوياً
kind (n) (adj)	نوع - طيب	well-known (adj)	مشهور
personality (n)	شخصية	World Cup (n)	كأس العالم

Part

II

More about Vocabulary

1

Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	your understanding	تتحقق من فهمك	go	missing	يتوه / يضل الطريق
	blood pressure	يقيس ضغط الدم	have	a desire to	لديه رغبة أن
	iron level	يقيس نسبة الحديد في الدم		health benefits	ذو فوائد صحية
donate	blood	يتبرع بالدم		long-term illness	يعاني من مرض مُزْمِن
do	money	يتبرع بالمال	leave	nothing to do	ليس لديه ما يقوم به
	work with	يقوم بأعمال مع		an impact	له تأثير
	research	يُجرّي أبحاث		the ability to	لديه القدرة علي
give	a chance	يمنح فرصة	make	skills	لديه مهارات
	blood	يتبرع بالدم		health problems	يعاني من مشكلات صحية
	work / jobs	يُشغَل		school	يُنهي دراسته
	a title	يُلَقَّب	save	friends	يُكوّن صداقات
get	a sense of responsibility	يعطي إحساس بالمسؤولية		sure	بتأكد / يتيقن / يتحقق
	a nickname	يُلَقَّب - يُسَمَّى		movements	يقوم بحركات
	a job	يحصل علي وظيفة		wild animals	يُنقذ الحيوانات البرية

Mini Test (1)

Collocations

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The loss of his job a negative impact on him.
a. had b. took c. provide d. did
- You may money, blood or both.
a. donate b. have c. check d. make
- We need to more research into coronavirus.
a. go b. do c. get d. leave
- He has the ability to friends with others easily.
a. donate b. have c. check d. make
- Young men join the army after school or university.
a. going b. doing c. getting d. leaving
- Vegetables a lot of health benefits if eaten fresh.
a. donate b. have c. check d. make
- When I was young, I missing when I was shopping with my mum.
a. went b. did c. got d. left
- You need to your blood pressure and iron levels regularly.
a. donate b. have c. check d. make
- Some students try to a job during the summer holiday.
a. go b. do c. get d. leave

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
a long-term illness	مرض مُزْمِن	a serious illness
admire	يُعْجَبُ بِهِ	praise / approve of / appreciate / respect
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	giving blood
conservation	حماية البيئة	preservation
desire	رغبة - يرغب	wish
donate	يتبرع	give
famous	مشهور	well-known
livestock	الماشية	cattle
monitor	يُراقِبُ / يرصد	track / observe / watch / keep an eye on
search for	يبحث عن	look for

Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
admire	يُعجب به	disapprove of	يستقبح - يستنكر
donate	يتبرع	keep / receive	يحتفظ به / يتسلم
generous	كريم - سخّي - جواد	mean / selfish	بخيل / أناني
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity	الغباء
long-term	طويل المدى	short-term	قصير المدى
regular	معتاد / مألوف - منتظم	irregular	غير مألوف - شاذ
wild	برّي	domestic / tame	أليف / مستأنس

Mini Test (2) Synonyms & Antonyms

مجاب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "I admire your idea." In this sentence, 'admire' is an antonym of
a. praise b. approve of c. disapprove of d. appreciate
- "She's a long-term illness." "Long-term" here means
a. serious b. temporary c. short d. simple
- "He donated some blood." The word 'donated' can be replaced by
a. received b. gave c. kept d. a & c
- "I know you are generous." 'Generous' here is antonymous with
a. helpful b. selfish c. mean d. b & c
- Donate is to keep as is to stupidity.
a. intelligence b. intelligent c. domestic d. tame

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسؤولية	blood donors	المتبرعين بالدم
all over	في كل أنحاء	happiness maker	صانع السعادة
around the world	حول العالم	hunting parties	فرق الصيد
as much as	بنفس الكم	in a friendly way	بشكل ودود
away on holiday	مُسافر في إجازة	in groups	في مجموعات
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	kill animals for sport	بسطاد الحيوانات كرياضة
be admired for	يحظى بالإعجاب بسبب		

UNIT 2

be badly injured
be interested in
be praised for
community centre
early life
earn regular money
expert at / on / in
formal piece of writing

يُصاب بشدة

يُهتم بـ

ينال الشناء بسبب

مركز اجتماعي

مرحلة مبكرة من العمر

يحصل علي دخل منتظم

خبير في

عمل كتابي يستخدم اللغة الفصحى

from different angles

من زوايا مختلفة

giving blood

التبرع بالدم

life skills

local communities

regular blood transplants

send Egypt to the World Cup finals

take part in

thanks to

the World Blood Donor Day

working together

مهارات حياتية

المجتمعات المحلية

نقل دم بشكل منتظم

يُبعث بمصر لنهائيات كأس العالم

يشارك في

بفضل

اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم

العمل معاً

5

Verb + Preposition

admire ... for

be based in

be based on

bring ... into

choose ... to

compare ... with

complete (...) with

deal with

donate ... for / to

encourage ... to

find out (about)

hear (...) about

hear of

يُعْجَب بـ ... / بسبب ...

مَقَرُّهُ فِي (+ مكان)

قائم على (+ الفكرة)

يُخْضِر ... إلى

يختار ... لـ

يقارن ... بـ

يُكْمِل (...) بـ

يتعامل مع / يواجه

يتبرع بـ ... لـ

يُشْجِع ... لكي

يكشف / يعرف (عن)

يسمع (...) عن

يسمع بـ / يعرف عن

know (...) about

look after

move to

play for

praise ... for

run past

search for

send (...) to

teach ... (how) to

turn from ... to

work with

worry about

يعرف (...) عن

يرعى / يعتنى بـ

ينتقل إلى

يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)

يمدح ... بسبب

يجري متجاوزاً

يبحث عن

يُرْسِل (...) إلى / يؤهل (...) لـ

يُعَلِّم ... كيف أن

يتحول من ... إلى ...

يعمل مع / على

يقلق على

Mini Test (3)

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He won't take the race as he is injured.

a. place

b. care of

c. part in

d. turns

2. The Lion Guardians is an organization based Kenya.

a. on

b. in

c. at

d. to

3. My mother's taught me cook.
a. to b. how to c. like d. a & b
4. blood is necessary, especially when there's an accident.
a. Giving b. Making c. Earning d. Running
5. This film is based a true story.
a. in b. on c. of d. with
6. He succeeded in his life thanks hard work.
a. for b. to c. from d. about
7. My father praised me helping the poor old man.
a. for b. of c. with d. to
8. People can't drink as as camels do.
a. long b. well c. much d. soon
9. Kind people donate money or other things the poor.
a. from b. to c. for d. b & c
10. He was taken to hospital because he was injured.
a. bad b. badly c. good d. well
11. When I was talking with her for the first time, I found that she was intelligent.
a. in b. out about c. out d. b & c

Part III

Vocabulary Study

1 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be based in / be based on

- **be based in** مقره في / مكانه في
- Our company is based in Cairo.
- **be based on** مؤسس على - قائم فكرياً على
- This film has been based on a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.

every day

- **every day (adv)** كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)
- I play football every day. = - Every day, I play football.
- **everyday (adj)** يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الموصوف)
- He feels bored because of his everyday routine.

biography / autobiography

• biography

السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها شخص عن حياة شخص آخر)

- I read the biography of President Sadat written by Anees Mansour.

• autobiography

السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها الشخص بنفسه عن حياته)

- Al-Ayyam is Taha Hussein's autobiography.

charity

• charity (n)

جمعية خيرية (اسم يُعد)

- There are some charities that help poor people.

• charity (n)

العمل الخيري - التبرعات (اسم لا يُعد)

- Salah donates money to charity in Egypt.

hear of / about - hear from

• hear of / about

يعرف / يسمع بـ

- I haven't heard of / about this writer before.

• hear from

يتلقى اتصالاً أو أخباراً من (رسالة / مكالمة / خطاب ...)

- I haven't heard from Mr Ashraf lately. I hope he is well.

angle / angel

• angle

زاوية - جانب

- A square has four angles.

- Try to look at the subject from a different angle.

• angel

ملاك - شخص حسن الخلق

- Children are little angels.

Mini Test (4)

Clear the Confusion

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. In his , Taha Hussein wrote about all that happened to him in his life.

a. graphy

b. autobiography

c. biography

d. geography

2. Doing sport is a part of my activities.

a. angel

b. angle

c. everyday

d. every day

3. I do sport

- a. angel b. angle c. everyday d. every day

4. Finally, I heard my brother in the USA. He sent me an email.

- a. from b. of c. about d. b & c

5. I have just heard your health problems.

- a. from b. of c. about d. b & c

6. My first novel was based my early life.

- a. in b. on c. of d. a & b

7. My school is based Edfu.

- a. in b. on c. of d. a & b

جزء لتنمية مهاراتك اللغوية التي تحتاج الى معرفة اكثر
من المفردات اللغوية الآتية ومشتقاتها واستخداماتها.

تنويه

2 More about key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

admire

• admire (d) (v)

يُعْجَب بـ (بدون حرف جر)

- I **admire** the way you teach your students.

- لاحظ أن :

عادة لا يُستخدم الفعل (**admire**) بهذا المعنى في الأزمنة المستمرة:

- We **are admiring** Mohammed Salah. (X)

- We **admire** Mohammed Salah. (✓)

• admire for

يُعْجَب بـ / بسبب ...

- Students **admire** Mr Hossam **for** working hard.

• admire (d) (v)

ينظر بإعجاب إلى / يستمتع بجمال الشيء أو جودته

- She was **admiring** herself in the mirror.

مُعْجَب

• admirer = fan (n)

- Football stars have millions of **admirers**.

إعجاب (بـ)

• admiration (for) (n)

- I want to express **my admiration** for your wisdom. الحكمة

field

حقل / مزرعة

• field (n)

- Farmers work in **fields**.

UNIT 2

مجال / نشاط

• field (n)

- Mr Yaseen works in the **field** of teaching.

أرض الملعب

• field (n)

- The players are warming up on the **field**.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- on the field داخل الملعب
- off the field خارج الملعب

- take the field = go into the field يدخل الملعب

الواقع العملي

• field (n)

- I think this opinion won't work in the **field**.

- لاحظ المصطلحات التالية :

- field research بحث ميداني
- fieldwork عمل ميداني

blood

الدم

• blood (n)

- The heart pumps **blood** all over the body.

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- blood transplant / transfusion نقل الدم
- blood donation = giving blood التبرع بالدم
- blood donor مُتبرع بالدم
- blood pressure ضغط الدم

community

مجتمع

• community (n)

- The governor **community** holds a meeting every month to discuss **community** problems.

جالية / جماعة / طائفة

• community (n)

- The Egyptian **community** in France welcomed our team.

- لاحظ أن :

بصفة عامة يُستخدم فعل مفرد بعد كلمة (community) لكن في الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع :

- The **community is / are** interested in the new educational system.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- the local community المجتمع المحلي
- a community leader قائد مجتمعي
- community care رعاية اجتماعية
- minority communities الأقليات
- a community centre مركز اجتماعي
- community services خدمات اجتماعية
- a religious community طائفة دينية
- international community المجتمع الدولي

- لاحظ أن :

العلاقة بين (community) و (society) هي علاقة بين الجزء والكل، فكلمة (community) تدل على مجتمع أصغر داخل المجتمع الأكبر (society)

desire• **desire (d) (v) = want ... very much**

يرغب في

- He **desires** to live in a villa, not a flat.

- لاحظ أن :

لا يُستخدم الفعل (desire) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- The Egyptians **are desiring** peace. (X) السلام- The Egyptians **desire** peace. (✓).• **desire (to + inf.) / (for + n) = strong wish or hope** رغبة / أمنية شديدة- Sama has a strong **desire to succeed**.= Sama has a strong **desire for success**.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- have a desire لديه رغبة - a strong / great / burning desire رغبة قوية

- show a desire يُظهر رغبة - express a desire يُعبر عن رغبة

- satisfy/ fulfill a desire يُلبّي أو يُشبع رغبة

donate• **donate (d) (v) = give**

يتبرع بـ

- It is kind of you to donate blood.

- donate + شيء + to + شيء / شخص ... لـ ... يتبرع بـ ...

- Salah **donates** a lot of money to poor people.• **donation (n)**

تبرّع

- Most charities **get** money from **donations**.• **donation to** + الطرف الذي يحصل على التبرّع- Salah made a **donation to** a children's hospital.• **donation from** + الطرف الذي يُقدّم التبرّع- A children's hospital got a **donation from** Salah.• **donation of** + الشيء الذي يتم التبرّع به- The **donation of blood** is something very important.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- make / give a donation يتبرع

- receive a donation يتلقى تبرّع

- a generous donation تبرّع كريم / هائل

- charitable donation تبرّع خيري

- anonymous donation تبرّع من فاعل خير (المتبرع مجهول)

• donor (n)

- Blood **donors** must be healthy people.

مُتَبَرِّع

empathy

• empathy (with) (n)

التعاطف مع - المُرَاعَاة أو تقدير ظروف الآخرين

- His **empathy** with poor people is clear. واضح

• empathetic = empathic (adj)

مُتَعَاظِف مع - مُرَاعِي أو مُقَدِّر لظروف الآخرين

- Mr Helmi is **empathetic** with my opinion.

generous

• generous (adj)

جَوَاد - كَرِيم - سَخِي

- People who donate money and other things are **generous**.

• generous + to + شخص

كريم مع

- He is **generous to the poor**. الفقراء

• generous + with + الشيء (adj)

كريم بـ

- Rodayna is **generous with her effort**. الجهد

• generosity (n)

الكَرَم - الجود - السخاء

- The people of Aswan are famous for their **generosity**.

- Giving money to charities is an **act of generosity**. تصرف ينم عن الكرم

hunt

• hunt (ed) (v)

يَصْطَاد (حيوانات وطيور)

- It is known that lions **hunt** in packs. في قطعان

• hunt (ed) = search (v)

يَبْحَث عن - يَفْتِش عن

- She **hunted** for an hour but she couldn't find the lost ring. خاتم

• hunt (ed) ... down (v)

يَطَارِد - يَتَعَقَّب - يُلاحق

- The police have **hunted** the gang **down** and arrested them. العصابة

• hunt (n)

البحث - التفتيش عن

- Some people helped in the **hunt** for the missing boy.

• hunter (n)

صَاد - قناص

- It is not allowed for **hunters** to kill lions.

intelligence

• intelligent (n)

ذكي

- To be good at maths and physics, you need to be very **intelligent**. الفيزياء

• intelligence (n)

الذكاء - الفطنة

- To be good at maths and physics, you need much **intelligence**. الفيزياء

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- show intelligence . يُظهر ذكاء . - high / low intelligence ذكاء عالي / محدود
- artificial intelligence (الحاسوبي) الذكاء الاصطناعي

• **intelligence (n)**

المخابرات

- Our **intelligence** has found out a lot of secret plans. الخطط السرية.

livestock• **livestock (n)**

حيوانات المزارع - الماشية (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع)

- The **livestock needs** more care. رعاية
- The **livestock need** more care.

cattle• **cattle (n)**

أنعام / ماشية (تأخذ فعل جمع)

- **Cattle are** kept for meat and milk.

long - term• **long-term (adj)**

بعيد المدى / على المدى البعيد (تستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

- This plan is **long-term**. (X)
- This is a **long-term** plan. (✓)

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- a long-term plan خطة طويلة المدى
- a long-term strategy استراتيجية طويلة المدى
- in the long term على المدى البعيد
- a long-term illness مرض مزمن

monitor• **monitor (ed) (v)**

يراقب - يَرُصَد - يتجسس على

- The situation is **monitored** carefully.
- It is not legal قانوني to **monitor** people's phone calls.

• **monitor (n)**

جهاز عرض

- Don't look at the computer **monitor** for a long time.

• **monitor (n)**

مُراقب (شخص يراقب وضع معين ليتأكد أن الأمور تسير بشكل صحيح)

- There are peace **monitors** سلام between the two countries.

party• **party (n)**

حفل

- I invite you to my birthday **party**.

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- have a party لديه حفل
- hold / give a party يقيم حفل
- attend a party يحضر حفل

• party (n)

- I have never joined any political party. حزب سياسي (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع)

• party (n)

- I saw a tour guide and a party of tourists. فوج / مجموعة (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع)

track

• track (ed) (v)

- The police are tracking the terrorists. بطارِد - يُلاحق - يتعقَّب
 - The enemy planes were tracked and attacked. الإرهابيين

• track (ed) (v)

- Teachers must track the progress of their students. بنابع - يرصد

• track (n)

- I followed the track down the mountain. طريق

• track (n)

- The first runner to reach the end of the track wins the gold medal. مضمار السباق

transplant

• transplant (n)

- My uncle had a heart transplant surgery. نقل أو زراعة الأعضاء

• transplant (ed) (v)

- His kidney was transplanted in his brother. ينقل أو يزرع عضو

• transplant (ed) (v)

- I transplanted an apple tree next to the old palm tree. بنقل نبات

support

• support (ed) (v)

- You must support people when they need you. بدعم / يساند - يؤيد
 - I support your opinion.

• support (n)

- Your support helped me a lot. دعم - مساندة - تأييد

3 مقاطع بادئة Prefixes

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
bio-	خاص بعلم الأحياء أو الحياة	biology علم الأحياء
dis-	تكوّن العكس	biography السيرة الذاتية
inter-	بين	disappear يختفي - يتلاشى
trans-	عبر	interview يجرى مقابلة / مقابلة شخصية
		transplant نقل أو زراعة الأعضاء

4 مقاطع ناهية suffixes

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ation	تُكوّن اسم	admiration إعجاب
-ce	تُكوّن اسم	intelligence الذكاء
-er / -r	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	villager قروي
-ion	تُكوّن اسم	donation تبرّع
-ist	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	biologist عالم أحياء
		artist فنان
		scientist عالم
-or	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	donor مُتبرّع
-ure	تُكوّن اسم	pressure ضغط
-ment	تُكوّن اسم	agreement عقد - إتفاق

5 Enrich your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

Maasai شعب الماساي

- The Maasai are primitive African tribes. شعب الماساي هم قبائل بدائية إفريقية.
- They live in northern, central and southern Kenya and northern Tanzania. يعيش شعب الماساي في شمال ووسط وجنوب كينيا، وشمال تنزانيا.
- They live near the many game parks of the African Great Lakes. يعيش شعب الماساي بالقرب من المحميات الطبيعية الكثيرة في منطقة البحيرات العظمى في إفريقيا.

Iron level نسبة الحديد

- The amount of iron stored in the body. كمية الحديد الموجودة بالجسم.
- Having too much or too little iron in the blood can cause serious health problems. وجود الحديد بنسبة أكثر أو أقل من اللازم قد يؤدي إلى مشكلات صحية خطيرة.
- People with low levels of iron suffer from anemia. المصابون بنقص الحديد يعانون من الأنيميا.
- People with low levels of iron may need to eat more: liver, red meat, dark green vegetables and beans. المصابون بنقص الحديد قد يحتاجون إلى تناول المزيد من: الكبد، اللحوم الحمراء، الخضروات الداكنة والبقوليات.

ضغط الدم (BP) = blood pressure

- Blood pressure is the force with which blood travels through the body. ضغط الدم هو القوة التي يتم ضخ الدم بها في أرجاء الجسم.
- Normal blood pressure is less than 120/80 mm Hg. ضغط الدم الطبيعي أقل من ١٢٠ - ٨٠ ملليمتر زئبقى.

6 Listening & Reading Texts

1 Reading Text

People who help

(SB page 16)

1. Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers⁽¹⁾. He is admired⁽²⁾ for his speed⁽³⁾ and ability⁽⁴⁾ to score⁽⁵⁾ goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals⁽⁶⁾ since 1990.



Salah has been praised⁽⁷⁾ for his kind and generous⁽⁸⁾ donations⁽⁹⁾ to charity⁽¹⁰⁾ in Egypt. He donated⁽¹¹⁾ money to his hometown⁽¹²⁾ of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer⁽¹³⁾ hospital in Cairo.

Salah's desire⁽¹⁴⁾ to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance⁽¹⁵⁾ to succeed⁽¹⁶⁾. He is a role model⁽¹⁷⁾ to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname⁽¹⁸⁾, The Happiness Maker⁽¹⁹⁾.

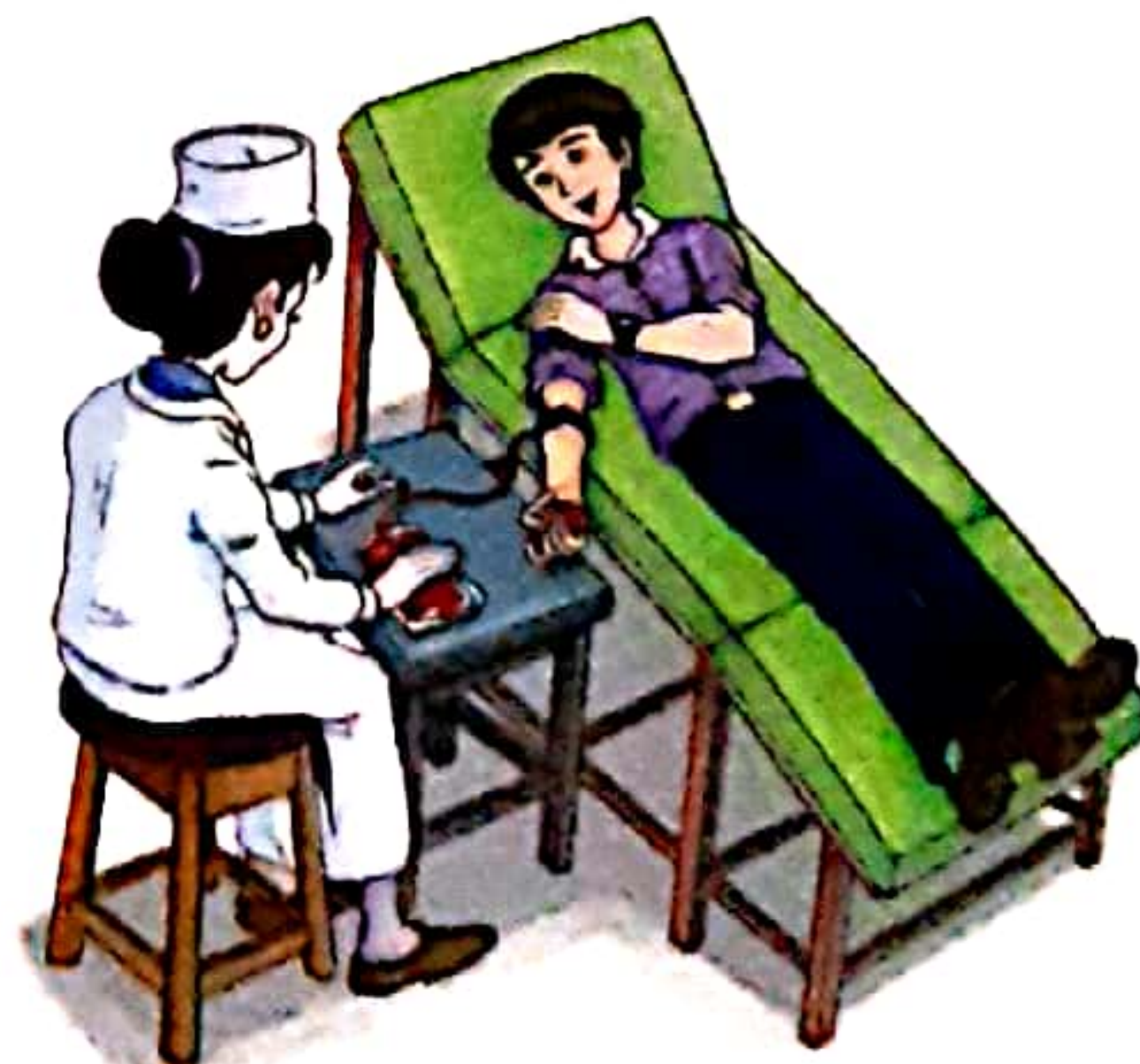
Check Vocabulary

- (1) لاعب كرة قدم
- (2) يُعجَّب بـ
- (3) سرعة
- (4) القدرة
- (5) يُحرز
- (6) نهائيات
- (7) يمتدح
- (8) سخي / كريم
- (9) تبرعات
- (10) العمل الخيري
- (11) تبرع بـ
- (12) مسقط رأس
- (13) السرطان
- (14) رغبة
- (15) فرصة
- (16) ينجح
- (17) قدوة
- (18) لقب
- (19) صانع السعادة

2. Blood ⁽¹⁾ donors ⁽²⁾

(SB page 17)

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in⁽³⁾ World Blood Donor Day to share⁽⁴⁾ information about the importance of giving blood.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) الدم
- (2) المتبرعين
- (3) يشارك في
- (4) يتشارك

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly **injured**⁽⁵⁾ or need **regular**⁽⁶⁾ blood **transplants**⁽⁷⁾ because they have a **long-term**⁽⁸⁾ **illness**⁽⁹⁾.

Giving blood can also have health **benefits**⁽¹⁰⁾. All donors have their blood pressure⁽¹¹⁾ and iron⁽¹²⁾ levels⁽¹³⁾ **checked**⁽¹⁴⁾ before **donation**⁽¹⁵⁾, so people who donate blood can **find out**⁽¹⁶⁾ quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can **save**⁽¹⁷⁾ **lives**⁽¹⁸⁾ and it is easy to do!

(5) مُصاب

(6) منتظم

(7) نقل

(8) مزمّن - طويل المدى

(9) مرض

(10) فوائد

(11) ضغط

(12) حديد

(13) مستويات

(14) يفحص

(15) التبرع

(16) يكتشف

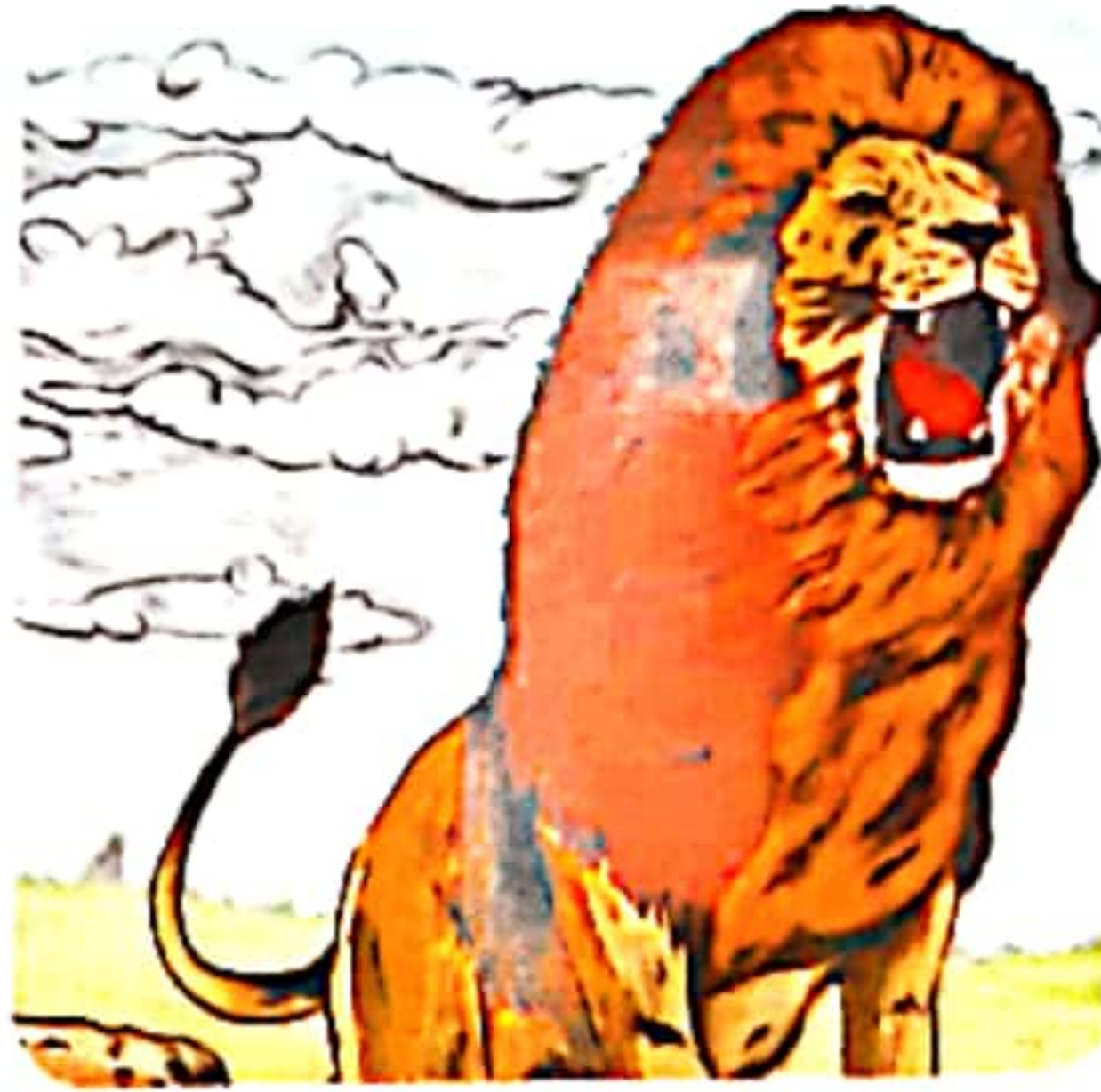
(17) ينقذ

(18) الحياة

3. Working together

(SB page 20)

Lions are disappearing⁽¹⁾ all over Africa but there is some hope now after the amazing⁽²⁾ work of an organization⁽³⁾ called Lion Guardians⁽⁴⁾, which is based in⁽⁵⁾ Kenya, but Guardians help in nearby⁽⁶⁾ Tanzania. The aim⁽⁷⁾ of Lion Guardians is to help local⁽⁸⁾ people to protect⁽⁹⁾ their own livestock⁽¹⁰⁾ and reduce⁽¹¹⁾ the number of lion killings⁽¹²⁾ in the area⁽¹³⁾.



Cattle⁽¹⁴⁾ are important to the villagers⁽¹⁵⁾ but they often go missing⁽¹⁶⁾ or are attacked⁽¹⁷⁾ by lions. Then the lions are killed as⁽¹⁸⁾ villagers worry⁽¹⁹⁾ about losing more livestock.

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organization works with the community⁽²⁰⁾ to help both⁽²¹⁾ the lions and the livestock and this is done by employing⁽²²⁾ local people.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تختفى

(2) مُذهّل

(3) مُنظمة

(4) حُرّاس

(5) مقرها في

(6) قريب

(7) هدف

(8) محلي

(9) يحمي

(10) حيوانات المزرعة

(11) يقلل

(12) حالات القتل

(13) المنطقة

(14) الماشية

(15) القرويين

(16) تضل الطريق

(17) تُهاجم

(18) لأن

(19) يقلق

(20) المجتمع

(21) كل من

(22) يوظف

Maasai⁽²³⁾ men are chosen⁽²⁴⁾ to become guardians as they understand lions and have the skills⁽²⁵⁾ needed to monitor⁽²⁶⁾ their movements,⁽²⁷⁾ find missing⁽²⁸⁾ livestock and stop hunting parties⁽²⁹⁾ who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be field⁽³⁰⁾ biologists⁽³¹⁾ and are given a sense⁽³²⁾ of responsibility.⁽³³⁾

Lions are monitored⁽³⁴⁾ every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make sure⁽³⁵⁾ their cows are safe. Lion Guardians are very successful⁽³⁶⁾. They help the future of lions as well as⁽³⁷⁾ the local communities.

- (23) شعب الماساي
- (24) يُختار
- (25) مهارات
- (26) يراقب
- (27) تحركات
- (28) مفقود
- (29) فرق الصيد
- (30) ميداني
- (31) علماء أحياء
- (32) إحساس
- (33) المسؤولية
- (34) يتتبع / يراقب
- (35) يتأكد
- (36) ناجح
- (37) بالإضافة إلى

2 Listening Text



Interviewer : In today's programme, we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation biologist ⁽¹⁾ and founder ⁽²⁾ of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions ?



(SB page 18)

Martin : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions roaring ⁽³⁾ at night when he was sleeping on the roof ⁽⁴⁾ of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer : What happened next ?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عالم أحياء
- (2) مؤسس
- (3) يزار
- (4) سطح

Martin

: She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions amongst ⁽⁵⁾ the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or so years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

Interviewer: So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

Martin

: There are several reasons⁽⁶⁾. People have built houses in the areas that lions traditionally⁽⁷⁾ hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the villager's livestock⁽⁸⁾, you know, their cows and goats. The villagers⁽⁹⁾ get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is prestige⁽¹⁰⁾ - in Maasai culture⁽¹¹⁾, young men get a lot of respect⁽¹²⁾ from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer: What did Leelah do?

Martin

: She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their views⁽¹³⁾ about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with⁽¹⁴⁾ lions, they admire⁽¹⁵⁾ their beauty⁽¹⁶⁾, but hate them for eating their cattle⁽¹⁷⁾. She also understood the prestige that came from being a lion killer⁽¹⁸⁾ and realised that she needed to persuade⁽¹⁹⁾ the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the advantages⁽²⁰⁾ of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer: Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

Martin

: Yes. Lion Guardians is an organization⁽²¹⁾ that employs⁽²²⁾ local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to track⁽²³⁾ lions in the wild⁽²⁴⁾, so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than⁽²⁵⁾ lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

(5) بين

(6) أسباب

(7) تقليدياً

(8) حيوانات المزرعة

(9) الفلاحين

(10) هبة / وجاهة

(11) ثقافة

(12) احترام

(13) وجهات النظر

(14) علاقة حب وكره معاً

(15) يعجب بـ

(16) جمال

(17) الماشية

(18) قاتل أسود

(19) يقنع

(20) مزاي

(21) منظمة

(22) توظف

(23) يرصد / يتابع

(24) الحياة البرية

(25) بدلاً من

Interviewer : How successful⁽²⁶⁾ is the programme ?

Martin : Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular income⁽²⁷⁾ and a sense of purpose⁽²⁸⁾. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with fondness⁽²⁹⁾.

Interviewer : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians ?

Martin : The importance of listening to people in the community⁽³⁰⁾ and to recognise⁽³¹⁾ how much knowledge⁽³²⁾ local people have. By working together, both the locals⁽³³⁾ and conservations can benefit⁽³⁴⁾.

Interviewer : Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a

- (26) ناجح
- (27) دخل
- (28) هدف / غرض
- (29) شغف / ولاء
- (30) جماعة / مجتمع
- (31) يتعرف على
- (32) معرفة
- (33) المحليين
- (34) يستفيد

3 Workbook Text

Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are experts⁽¹⁾ at tracking⁽²⁾ animals and lions are the most well-known⁽³⁾ animal that they follow⁽⁴⁾. But how do they do it? The lions **are tracked** by the Maasai, who use all their senses⁽⁵⁾ to follow them.

When a paw print⁽⁶⁾ is discovered⁽⁷⁾, it **is checked** to see if it is an old paw print or a recent⁽⁸⁾ one. Then the path **is followed** by the Maasai until the lions **are found**.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs⁽⁹⁾ to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions **are protected** by the Maasai from hunting parties and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to⁽¹⁰⁾ the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) خبراء
- (2) التتبع
- (3) معروف
- (4) يتتبع
- (5) حواس
- (6) آثار أقدام الحيوان
- (7) يكتشف
- (8) حديث
- (9) علامات
- (10) بفضل

4 Video script section

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But they can do a lot to help each other.

In some **communities**⁽¹⁾, children and **teenagers**⁽²⁾ **volunteer**⁽³⁾ to **support**⁽⁴⁾ older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other **tasks**⁽⁵⁾ around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next **generation**⁽⁶⁾.

But what about the young people ? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مجتمعات

(2) مراهقين

(3) يتطوع

(4) يساعد

(5) أعمال / واجبات

(6) جيل

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. How do volunteers help older people ?
2. How does listening to older people help them feel less alone ?
3. What can young people learn from older people ?

General Exercises

On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

1. Blood should be measured regularly. (الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
a. pleasure b. treasure c. pressure d. donation
2. A good citizen has a of duty. (الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity
3. The international is really very worried about the problem of climate change. (المنيا - ديمواس ٢٠٢٠)
a. security b. communication
c. technology d. community
4. The child with a diseased kidney will have a transplant, but we are waiting for a (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor

UNIT 2

5. I have a friend who works in a big company in Kuwait.
(سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٠) d. basis
a. laid b. lied c. based
6. We stopped at the top of the mountain to the view. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٠) d. think
a. look b. admire c. want
7. He money to charities for the victims of the earthquake.
(قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٠) d. made
a. donated b. got c. bought
8. The word "accomplish" is a synonym for the word
(الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٠) d. achieve
a. prepare b. constant c. encourage
9. Your shoes will be repaired and ready for you to in five minutes.
(المنيا - ديرموايس ٢٠٢٠) d. mend
a. collect b. walk c. buy
10. Unfortunately, the old man died after a long-term
(المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠) d. illness
a. ailment b. disease c. condition

II Key & important vocabulary

11. The money I paid to the hotel the continental breakfast which I used to have every morning.
a. included b. consisted c. contained d. constituted
12. It was only later in her life that she found and peace of mind.
a. happy b. happiness c. sad d. sadness
13. If there is a supermarket, we can shop easily.
a. really b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely
14. "Not all that glitters is gold", this means you shouldn't be deceived by
a. appearance b. personality c. politeness d. character
15. My parents always me when I do well at school.
a. praise b. apologise c. bully d. defend
16. It's my father's success at basketball that me to play the game.
a. inspired b. aspired c. conspired d. respire
17. Salah, the happiness maker, became the model to many young men.
a. rule b. role c. roller d. ruler
18. "Farmers keep livestock on their farms." The synonym of "livestock" is
a. kittle b. castle c. cattle d. kettle

19. The child's parents or must give their agreement before she has the operation.
 a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors
20. My father spares no efforts لا يدخر جهداً to me that having a job would give me a prestige.
 a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose
21. Sir Magdi Yacoub's centre for heart in Aswan is famous for heart
 a. transports b. transplants c. plants d. planets
22. Wildlife is necessary to stop species الانقراض from dying out.
 a. pressure b. livestock c. intelligence d. conservation
23. He is really kind. He showed much with my difficult situation.
 a. empathy b. donation c. admiration d. charitable
24. She is a doctor. She works in the medical طبي
 a. transplant b. party c. field d. interview
25. The farmers build fences to protect their from wild animals and thieves.
 a. wildlife b. livestock c. parties d. tracks
26. High blood pressure is a disease.
 a. long-term b. medium-term c. short-term d. first-term
27. There are cameras in the mall that everything that happens.
 a. compare b. list c. roleplay d. monitor
28. He joined the tourist who visited the Valley of Kings.
 a. herd b. party c. flock d. community
29. The police are some criminals.
 a. transfusing b. transplanting c. tracking d. inspiring
30. Most patients are taken to the hospital in our area.
 a. local b. missing c. wild d. repeated
31. He missed the school trip because of his
 a. healthy b. health c. ill d. illness
32. Unlike in the cinema, actors in the theatre are in direct contact with their
 a. viewers b. kids c. situations d. centres
33. I look forward to returning to my of Assuit where I was born and educated.
 a. workplace b. hometown c. track d. support
34. As a striker, you are supposed to goals, not to lose the ball.
 a. miss b. realise c. reach d. score

UNIT 2

35. Tourism national income. الدخل القومي
 a. aim b. aims c. benefit d. benefits
36. Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is a great
 a. loss b. movement c. achievement d. organisation
37. He works for an international that helps poor people in Africa.
 a. organisation b. cancer c. maker d. presentation
38. "King of Egypt" and "The Pride of Arabs" are both given to Salah.
 a. charities b. nicknames c. movements d. qualifications
39. The famous of the programme is the reason why it is so successful.
 a. title b. donor c. presenter d. footballer
40. You will never fail تفشل as long as طالما you work hard to reach your
 a. goal b. score c. talk d. sense
41. Football players have formal to play for their teams for certain periods of time.
 a. nicknames b. agreements c. goals d. benefits
42. We heard a lion, so we returned quickly to the car.
 a. transplanting b. tracking c. printing d. roaring
43. Good education, money and power السلطة give people
 a. prestige b. hometown c. conservation d. monitor

III Derivatives, synonyms, antonyms & word-building

44. I can't help my for your mentality. طريقة التفكير
 a. admire b. admirer c. admiration d. admired
45. I really your mentality.
 a. admire b. admirer c. admiration d. admired
46. Natural blood is 120 / 80.
 a. transplant b. transfusion c. donation d. pressure
47. First, a blood has to be checked carefully to make sure they are healthy.
 a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated
48. First, you need to be checked carefully before blood to make sure you are healthy.
 a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated
49. First, you need to be checked carefully before you blood to make sure you are healthy.
 a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated

50. blood is synonymous with giving it.
 a. Transplanting b. Transfusing c. Pressuring d. Donating
51. He to live in a large villa in a coastal ساحلية town.
 a. desire b. desires c. desiring d. is desiring
52. His is to live in a large villa in a coastal ساحلية town.
 a. desire b. desires c. desiring d. is desiring
53. What makes people admire him more is his
 a. genre b. generous c. generosity d. generously
54. What makes people admire him more is the fact that he is
 a. genre b. generous c. generosity d. generously
55. He gets much from his brother.
 a. support b. supports c. supporter d. supported
56. His brother him a lot.
 a. support b. supports c. supporter d. supported
57. I will lend you the money even if I know you don't have the to pay it back.
 a. able b. ability c. inability d. disability

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. All Egyptians Salah for his skill and generosity. الكرم
 a. are admiring b. admire c. roleplay d. role play
2. The Egyptian in London welcomed and supported the Egyptian handball team.
 a. Frequency b. stadium c. Maasai d. community
3. Which of the following is correct?
 a. A society is a part of a community.
 b. A community is bigger than a society.
 c. A society is a part. A community is a whole.
 d. A society is a whole. A community is a part.
4. We all know that water has become a must.
 a. wasting b. donating c. conservation d. support
5. Although he is rich, he works hard to his desire for success.
 a. satisfy b. donate c. conserve d. monitor
6. When we do not know who paid the money, we say it is a donation.
 a. antonym b. synonym c. synonymous d. anonymous

7. All fans cheered هتفوا when the players the field.
a. ploughed b. took c. lost d. missed
8. The livestock on this farm looked after by three workers.
a. is b. are c. is or are d. has
9. The cattle on this farm looked after by three workers.
a. is b. are c. is or are d. has
10. In the , eating too much food causes overweight.
a. long-term b. field c. hometown d. desire

Part IV

Structure



شاهد وتعلم

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

1 في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

..... التصريف الاول للفعل + فاعل subject

- ex. - I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.
- يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).
- Ahmed likes football very much.
- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ
(ch - sh - ss - o - x).
- Aya watches action films every day.
- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ (y)
مسيبوقاً بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y).
- Mariam studies philosophy at Cambridge University.

2 في النفي :

..... المصدر inf. + don't / doesn't + فاعل subject

- لاحظ تستخدم (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب :

- ex. - I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.
- Ahmed doesn't like football very much.
- Romaisaa doesn't watch action films every day.
- Mariam doesn't study classics at Cambridge University.
- ونستخدم (never) أيضاً للنفي القاطع :
- He doesn't help the poor at all. = He never helps the poor.
- They don't get up late at all. = They never get up late.

٣ في السؤال بـ «هل» :

Do / Does + subject فاعل + Inf. المصدر ?

- ex. - Do you get up at six o'clock every morning ?
 - Yes, I do. OR - Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.
 - No, I don't. OR - No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.
 - Does Aya watch action films ?
 - Yes, she does. OR - Yes, she watches action films.
 - No, she doesn't. OR - No, she doesn't watch action films.

٤ السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

question word أداة استفهام + do / does + subject فاعل + Inf. المصدر ?

- ex. - What do you eat for lunch ?
 - How often does Mr Ashraf go to the club ?

٥ في المبني للمجهول :

- عند تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط إلى صيغة المبني للمجهول نستخدم :

التصريف الثالث + am / is / are + p.p المفعول object

- ex. Farmers grow plants. (معلوم)
 - Plants are grown by farmers. (مجهول)
 - Some people don't eat meat at all. (معلوم)
 - Meat isn't eaten at all by some people. (مجهول)
 - لا تستخدم (have / has) في المبني للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى :

Have = own - possess - belong to - suffer - eat - buy - spend - take

- ex. - I have a car. - A car is (possessed - owned) by me.
 - She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

Mini Test (1) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My son football and tennis in the club.
 a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
- My sons football and tennis in the club.
 a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played

3. Football and tennis in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
4. Football in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
5. These trees their leaves in autumn.
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost
6. This tree its leaves in autumn.
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost
7. The leaves of this tree in autumn.
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost
8. This tree its leaves in autumn.
a. never loses b. don't lose c. never lose d. aren't lost
9. Does Amir your birthday parties?
a. attend b. attends c. is attended d. attending
10. you with your homework?
a. Anyone helps b. Is anyone helped
c. Does anyone help d. Anyone is helped
11. with your homework?
a. You help b. Do you help c. You are helped d. Are you helped
12. We a nice time by the sea.
a. are had b. have c. are spent d. is spent
13. A nice time by the sea.
a. are had b. have c. are spent d. is spent

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ بالنسبة للفاعل (be) كفعل اساسى فى المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (am / is / are) بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) ولا تُستخدم (do / does) فى النفي أو السؤال.

- Ali is at school. (إثبات)
- Ali isn't at school. (نفي)
- Is Ali at school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Where is Ali? (سؤال بـ «أداة إستفهام»)

٢ بالنسبة للفاعل (have) كفعل اساسى فى المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (have / has) بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يشتري) ونستخدم (do / does) معهما كأفعال مساعدة فى النفي أو السؤال.

- They have lunch at three o'clock. (إثبات)
- They don't have lunch at three o'clock. (نفي)
- Do they have lunch at three o'clock? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When do they have lunch? (سؤال بـ «أداة إستفهام»)

Mini Test (2)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ali at home right now. He's at school.
a. is b. doesn't be c. isn't d. has
2. A: at home right now? B: No, he's at school.
a. Is Ali b. Does Ali be c. Ali is d. Does Ali have
3. We lunch before my father returns home.
a. haven't b. don't have c. aren't d. don't be
4. lunch before your father returns home?
a. You have b. Have you c. Are you d. Do you have

Uses الاستخدامات

يُستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (Present simple) في :

١ التعبير عن حقائق ثابتة :

- ex. - The sun gives us light and heat. - People don't live under water.

٢ التعبير عن شيء حقيقي في المضارع (حقيقة تدوم لفترة)

- ex. - Yousif lives in Assuit. - My wife is an engineer.

٣ يدل المضارع البسيط على المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية التالية :

the - قبل **before** - بينما **as / just as** - بينما **while** - عندما **when**
 - بمجرد أن **once** - بعد **after** - قبل **by the time** - في اللحظة التي **moment**
 حتي **until / till** / بمجرد أن **as soon as**

جملة مستقبل + مضارع بسيط/تام + رابط زمني **time connector**

- ex. - When I arrive (have arrived) home, I will take a shower.
 - Before she goes (has gone) to bed, she will kiss her mother.
 - I won't call you until I know (have known) the latest news.

٤ بعد (If) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى و الحالة الصفرية:

- ex. - If I get information about this subject, I'll tell you.

٥ التعبير عن جداول المواعيد الثابتة :

- ex. - My train leaves at nine tomorrow morning.

٦ يستخدم المضارع البسيط بدلاً من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عما يحدث الآن مع الأفعال التقريرية (مثل أفعال الحواس و المشاعر و الادراك.....) :

- ex. - I am seeing some beautiful flowers. (x)
 - I see some beautiful flowers. (✓)

Mini Test (3)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lions meat.
a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
2. Lions grass.
a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
3. He some birds flying in the sky.
a. sees b. see c. is seeing d. is seen
4. My father in a big company. He is an accountant there.
a. works b. work c. is working d. is worked
5. After I my lunch, I will take a short rest.
a. will have b. have c. had d. had had
6. I will take a taxi if I up late.
a. will get b. had got c. got d. get
7. She'll help you as soon as she her work.
a. will finish b. finish c. finishes d. have finished
8. According to the timetable, the train the station at seven.
a. will reach b. had reached c. reach d. reaches

Present Habits عادات المضارع

فعل في (من المضارع البسيط) + **always / usually / sometimes** + فاعل. subj.

- Nada usually goes to the shops on Sunday.

It + is + someone's habit to + inf.

- It is Nada's (her) habit to go to the shops on Sunday.

subj. + am / is / are + in the habit of + (inf. + ing)

- Nada is in the habit of going to the shops on Sunday.

subj. + am / is / are + used to + (inf. + ing) / n.

- Nada is used to going to the shops on Sunday.

subj. + no longer + inf. / (inf + s, es, ies)

- He no longer eats rice.

subj. + don't / doesn't + inf... + any longer / anymore

- He doesn't eat rice anymore.

Adverbs of frequency with the present simple ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط

١ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (am / is / are).

غالبًا **often** - بانتظام **regularly** - عادةً **usually / normally** - دائمًا **always**
 قلما **little** - بين حين وآخر **occasionally** - أحيانًا **sometimes** - غالبًا **frequently**
 مطلقًا **never** - بالكاد **hardly ever** - نادرًا **seldom** - نادرًا **rarely**

ex. - I always go to school in time. - I am always at school in time.

٢ كما يمكن أن تُستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف.
 ex. - Sometimes, I play football. - I play football sometimes.

٣ تُستخدم تعبيرات التكرار التالية أيضًا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

- **once** مرة / **twice** مرتين / **three times** ... / **several times** / **many times** ...
 + **a / an / every + period of time**
 - **every (morning - day - Monday - week - month - summer - year)** / **on Fridays** / **in summer** ...

ex. - I go for a walk twice a week.
 - Once a month, I visit my parents.
 - I take Arabic lessons on Wednesdays.
 - Every morning, my mother wakes me up.

Mini Test (4) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My father works as a doctor. He very busy examining patients.
 a. often is b. is often c. often has d. has often
- Leen something to do. She is very busy.
 a. always have b. have always c. always has d. has always
- I visit my grandparents month; in the beginning and in the middle.
 a. a b. all c. once a d. twice a
- Sama is used in Aswan.
 a. to living b. alive c. to live d. living
- It is Omar's habit for walks on Fridays.
 a. going b. to going c. to go d. goes
- Hussein working on the farm.
 a. is used b. is used to c. used to d. used

② The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

شرح الماضي البسيط فى الوحدة الأولى.

General Exercises

On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. My sister usually the 8 o'clock train to work.
a. has caught b. is catching c. catch d. catches
2. Huda late for work.
a. never is b. is never c. never has d. has never
3. When you usually finish studying your lessons?
a. are b. have c. do d. does
4. Mr Ayman come to work late at all.
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
5. Mr Ayman comes to work late.
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
6. I always the piano after I come home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
7. I always the piano after I came home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
8. He usually very quickly, so we didn't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
9. He usually very quickly, so we don't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
10. My friends often came to my birthday party and me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
11. My friends often come to my birthday party and me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
12. When I was on holiday, I tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played
13. When I am on holiday, I tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played
14. Sama an email to her friend but she has received no reply so far.
a. sends b. is sent c. sent d. was sent

15. Rubbish and burnt.
 a. are collected b. collected c. collects d. is collected
16. He often with me in English to become better at speaking.
 a. is speaking b. has spoken c. spoke d. speaks
17. We an interesting film last night.
 a. watched b. had watched c. watch d. have watched
18. Policemen criminals and arrest them.
 a. follow b. follows c. are following d. followed
19. They attend the conference last month.
 a. wasn't b. won't c. didn't d. don't
20. According to the timetable, the train..... at 11 o'clock.
 a. is arriving b. arrives
 c. is going to arrive d. had arrived
21. She the newspaper every morning. It is a habit of hers.
 a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
22. She the newspaper every morning. It was a habit of hers.
 a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
23. What time you usually arrive at school when you were a student ?
 a. do b. would c. did d. does
24. What time you usually arrive at school when you take a taxi?
 a. do b. would c. did d. does
25. My son ambitious and he wants to study medicine.
 a. is always b. always is c. doesn't always d. isn't always
26. When I finished my work, I closed my office and home.
 a. return b. returning c. had returned d. returned
27. His mother his room door while he was studying his lessons.
 a. opened b. opening c. was opening d. opens
28. The moon around the earth.
 a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved

II Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

29. He phoned me once he the message.
 a. had read b. will read c. reads d. read
30. He will phone me once he the message.
 a. had read b. will read c. reads d. read

31. I was twelve, my family moved into this flat.
a. While b. When c. During d. As
32. He early.
a. rarely is b. is rare c. is rarely d. rare is
33. He up early.
a. rarely gets b. gets rarely c. get rarely d. rarely get
34. It hardly..... in Egypt.
a. is raining b. rains c. have rained d. raining
35. As a schoolboy, my uncle always to school on foot.
a. gone b. went c. goes d. will go
36. Mum by all family members.
a. is loving b. is being loved c. is loved d. loves
37. I'll phone you as soon as I..... my work.
a. finishes b. finish c. will finish d. had finished
38. We all in Allah.
a. believe b. believes c. is believing d. are believing
39. It is time we home.
a. went b. are going c. go d. have gone
40. the email sent before the office was closed?
a. Are b. Was c. Had d. Does
41. During last holiday, Tamer football every day.
a. is playing b. played c. plays d. has played
42. He playing tennis.
a. use to b. is used to c. used to d. was used
43. A: Have you seen her lately?
B: Yes, I her when I was on my way to work the other day.
a. saw b. had seen c. have seen d. was seeing
44. All the information I read in this book very valuable and useful.
a. is being b. has c. is d. are
45. Ten people to have been injured in the crash.
a. had reported b. have reported c. were reported d. were reporting
46. Don't open the door until I you.
a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told

47. I am sure he a Samsung laptop. He just doesn't want to lend it to you.

- a. is having
c. will have

- b. is going to have
d. has

48. When Salma read a story, she interested in its moral.

- a. is usually b. was usually c. usually is d. usually was

III Check your understanding

49. "He used to work as a firefighter." This means

- a. he is a firefighter b. he works as a firefighter
c. he is no longer a firefighter d. he never worked as a firefighter

50. "I wish I were tall." What does this mean ?

- a. I am tall. b. I am not short.
c. I used to be tall. d. I am not tall.

51. "It is time Omar paid me back my money." This means

- a. Omar had returned my money b. Omar hasn't returned my money
c. Omar returned my money d. Omar has just returned my money

52. "I'd rather Sama hadn't used my cream yesterday." This means

- a. Sama used my cream yesterday
b. Sama didn't use my cream yesterday
c. Sama asked to use my cream yesterday
d. Sama agreed to use my cream yesterday

53. "Plants get their food from the sun". This is a

- a. present habit b. past habit c. future fact d. fact

54. "We take mid-year exams in January". This is a

- a. timetable b. future fact c. habit d. hope

55. "I don't smoke heavily any longer." I mean that I

- a. smoke heavily b. used to be a heavy smoker
c. haven't stopped smoking d. didn't use to smoke

UNIT 2

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

1 I get up at six o'clock. I (a) leave for school until I (b) had my breakfast. I (c) hard at school. During the break, I am used to (d) with my friends.

a. b. c. d.

2 When I was a student, I enjoyed the weekends very much. I (a) have to get up early. I (b) to spend a long time playing in our garden with my brothers and sisters. Sometimes, we (c) taken on boat trips on the Nile. In the evening, we were used to (d) our grandparents.

a. b. c. d.

3 Egypt is the birthplace of several world-famous scientists. One of these (a) Dr Zewail. He (b) awarded the Nobel Prize for Chemistry. (c) greatest discovery was the femtosecond. Zewail died a few years (d), namely in 2016.

a. b. c. d.

4 Life is now different from life in the past. Most people (a) to live in the countryside. (b) worked on farms keeping animals and (c) plants. Now, most people prefer to live in the city where there (d) more work opportunities. **فُرص**

a. b. c. d.

5 Yesterday, two of my friends and I went to the club. We (a) some old friends there. We all (b) a nice time. We played (c) football match. (d) match was very exciting.

a. b. c. d.

Advanced Exercise on Structure

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He no longer as he used to do.
a. smoke b. smokes c. smoked d. doesn't smoke
2. He used to smoke but now he
a. isn't anymore b. doesn't no longer
c. doesn't any longer d. any longer doesn't
3. He was used to smoking, but now he
a. is no longer b. no longer is c. does no longer d. no longer does
4. A: Does he smoke? B: No, but he
a. is used to b. is used to doing c. used to do d. used to be
5. A: Is he used to smoking? B: No, but he
a. is used to b. is used to doing
c. used to do d. used to be
6. A: ? B: Yes, but he never smokes now.
a. Is he used to smoking b. Does he get used to smoking
c. Did he use to smoke d. He used to smoke
7. I wish you your time last year.
a. wasted b. didn't waste c. had wasted d. hadn't wasted
8. to bed before 1 a.m.
a. Rarely do I go b. Rarely I go c. I go rarely d. Rarely am I go
9. He never used to eating in class.
a. is b. was c. got d. get
10. It's a habit of to drink a big glass of water when I get up every morning.
a. I b. me c. my d. mine

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

Mr Salah Refaey is a successful librarian. Never (a) he allow students to make any noise in the library. Not until he makes sure everything is all right (b) he leave work. He does his best to make the students (c) reading. If there's an ideal school library, (d) is.

- a. b. c. d.

Part V Grammatical Hints from Reading & Listening

منذ Since

الزمنة التي تستخدم في الجملة الرئيسية مع (since) هي :
أ. المضارع التام.

ex. - I **have lived** in Aswan since 2002.

ب. المضارع التام المستمر.

ex. - I **have been living** in Aswan since 2002.

ج. الماضي التام.

ex. - I **had lived** in Aswan since 2002 before I left it last year.

د. الماضي التام المستمر.

ex. - I **had been living** in Aswan since 2002 before I left it last year.

الزمنة التي يمكن أن تستخدم في الجملة بعد (since) هي :
أ. الماضي البسيط.

ex. - I haven't slept since my mother **stayed** in hospital.

ب. المضارع التام.

ex. - I haven't slept since my mother **has stayed** in hospital.

يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد (since) إذا كان الفاعل مشترك في الجملتين :

ex. - He **has worked** for the same company **since he left** school.

= He **has worked** for the same company **since leaving** school.

يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية قبل (since) :

It + is / was / has been / had been + + since

ex. - It is two days **since** I last saw Sama.

- It **was** the first time that I met the manager **since last Monday**.

تستخدم (since) مع الماضي لتشير للمدي الزمني بين وقتين :

ex. - **In 2017**, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals **since 1990**.

يمكن استخدام (since / since then) دون تعبير زمني بعدهما بمعنى (منذ ذلك الحين) إذا كان الوقت المشار إليه مفهوماً من السياق :

ex. - I returned home at 3 p.m. I **haven't gone out since / (since then)**.

تستخدم (since) بمعنى (الآن) وفي هذه الحالة تُستخدم مثل (because / as) :

ex. - He didn't answer the phone **since** he was angry.

= He didn't answer the phone **because** he was angry.

= He didn't answer the phone **as** he was angry.

The Causative صيغة المفعول لأجله

- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أقنع أو دفع مالا أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.

- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن.

- وتتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:



ex. - I had a doctor check my blood pressure.

(جعلت الطبيب يفحص ضغط الدم الخاص بي)

= I got a doctor to check my blood pressure.

- أما في المبني للمجهول فتتكون هذه الصيغة من :



- I had / got my blood pressure checked (by a doctor).

(لقد تم قياس ضغط الدم لدى عن طريق الطبيب)

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

تُميّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أي تقارن بين أكثر من طرفين) :

- ex. - English is **the easiest** subject.
 - The lion is **the most dangerous** animal.
 - The rabbit is **the least dangerous** animal.

تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the + adj. صفة + est / st / lest

- ex. - fast → the fastest - old → the oldest
 - large → the largest - close → the closest
 - big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest
 - lazy → the laziest - healthy → the healthiest

٣ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

صفة. **adj.** + الأقل **the least** / الأكثر **the most**

ex. - beautiful **the most / the least** beautiful

٤ لا تستخدم **(the)** قبل صفة التفضيل بعد الأعداد الترتيبية مثل :

first / second / third / fourth ...etc.

ex. - Cairo is **the first largest** city in Egypt.

٥ لا تستخدم **(the)** قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو **(s)** الملكية :

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ...'s

ex. - Cairo is Egypt's largest city.
- Is Sama your youngest sister?

• العبارة الاسمية **noun phrase**

العبارة الاسمية تتكون من مجموعة كلمات وتعمل عمل الاسم، ويمكن استخدامها كفاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور :

ex. - Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. (فاعل)
- We all respect Salah's desire to help others. (مفعول)
- I want to know more about Salah's desire to help others. (مجرور)

• التصريف الثالث **p.p**

أحياناً يُستخدم **(p.p.)** كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

التصريف الثالث P.P. + جملة مبنية للمجهول + who / whom / which / that

ex. - I have a cousin **who is called** Karim.
= I have a cousin **called** Karim.
- They have the skills **which are needed** to monitor wild animals.
= They have the skills **needed** to monitor wild animals.

• **as** •

٦ تُستخدم **(as)** بمعنى (ك...) ويأتي بعدها اسم يدل على الوظيفة - المرحلة العمرية - الدور - المظهر :

ex. - **As a student**, Sama is very clever.
- Captain Bassem works **as a police officer**.

يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون اختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول :

- ex. - He works hard **as planned**.
= He works hard **as it has been planned**.

تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة :

- ex. - He fell asleep **as** he was watching a film. (as = when /while)
- **As** she was ill, she didn't go to school. (As = Because)

Own

تُستخدم (own) قبل اسم شيء، للتأكيد على أن شخص ما يملك هذا الشيء، أو أنه هو من قام بعمله، وتأتي (own) بعد صفات الملكية التالية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ...'s

- ex. - I relax well in **my own room**.
- He can't help you because he is busy doing **his own homework**.

يمكن أن تُستخدم (own) كضمير وفي هذه الحالة لا يأتي بعدها اسم:

- ex. - This is my wife's car. **My own** is being checked in the garage.

Plural Titles

للحظ أن عناوين الكتب والمؤسسات التي في صيغة الجمع تأخذ فعل مفرد :

- ex. - Lion Guardians **is** a success story.
- One Thousand and One Nights **has** been translated into several languages.

but / but still

تُستخدم (but) للتعبير عن تناقض في الفكرة الرئيسية بين الجملتين:

- ex. - I asked for another glass of orange juice, **but** there was no more.

تُستخدم (but still) للتعبير عن تناقض في التوقع أو الرأي بين الجملتين:

- ex. - There was no more orange juice, **but still** she asked for another glass.

Thanks to

تُستخدم (thanks to) للتعبير عن السبب مثل (because of) :

- **thanks to / because of / due to / owing to** + اسم (noun) / (inf. + ing)
= **because / since / as** + جملة (sentence)

- ex. - We could solve our problems **thanks to your help**.
= We could solve our problems **because you helped us**.

Exercises

On Grammatical Hints

مخاطب علمه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. That man had his kidney in his brother.
a. transplants b. transplanted c. transplant d. transplanting
2. I went to the mechanic to have
a. repaired my car b. my car repaired
c. my car repair d. my car repairs
3. Gulliver's Travels a children's novel.
a. is b. are c. has d. have
4. We have studied English 2010.
a. at b. on c. since d. for
5. I sleep well in room.
a. own b. an own c. owning d. my own
6. a teacher, I have the qualities and qualifications that make my students understand well.
a. As b. Like c. Since d. When
7. Rodayna has a cousin Zamzam.
a. was called b. called c. is called d. calling
8. It was two years he moved into that flat.
a. as b. while c. when d. since
9. What Mr Ashraf does because he has been very ill recently.
a. is b. are c. has d. have
10. Mr Nasser is my friend.
a. the best b. the better c. better d. best
11. she was busy, she refused to help me.
a. Because of b. On c. As d. During
12. Last August, I went to Alexandria for the second time 2015.
a. in b. since c. for d. by
13. I did the job well agreed.
a. like b. for c. since d. as
14. We have the equipment for our work.
a. needed b. needing c. need d. needs
15. I have my blood pressure every week.
a. check b. checks c. checked d. to check
16. Ahmed hasn't gone out since home last night.
a. went b. has gone c. had gone d. going

17. own car is a KIA.
 a. Him b. His c. He d. Himself
18. The last match was Salah's game ever.
 a. great b. greater c. greatest d. the greatest
19. I got a plumber سباك the water pump.
 a. to fix b. fixes c. fixed d. to fixing
20. She left an hour ago. She hasn't returned
 a. then b. since then c. already d. just
21. I arrived home mum was preparing lunch.
 a. before b. as c. since d. on
22. I have my son after the trees in our house's garden.
 a. to look b. look c. looks d. to looking
23. As , ice is lighter than water.
 a. know b. knows c. knew d. known
24. I was very tired, I didn't finish studying unit 2.
 a. When b. While c. Since d. Because of
25. That isn't my tablet. My is a SAMSUNG.
 a. own b. it c. this d. ones

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

It's been a long and tiring day. (a) we were preparing for the annual سنوي meeting at work, everyone (b) busy. I also (c) an oculist طبيب عيون check my eyes. Finally, I had to check my (d) car which had had some problems with the engine.

a. b. c. d.

Part VI

Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Ⓐ Tips on writing a biography :

* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة السيرة الذاتية :

Early life: المرحلة الأولى من العمر

- Where was he / she born?
- Where did he / she live as a child?
- What did his / her parents do?
- What did he / she study?
- Did anything important happen to him / her as a child?

Description: الوصف

- Describe his / her appearance and her personality.
- How did he / she help the community ?
- What did he / she do in the past to help the community?
- Where does he / she currently live and how is he / she helping the community now?

Conclusion: الخلاصة - الخاتمة

- What is your opinion of him / her?
- Why is his / her work so important?
- What is he / she admired for?
- Why is he / she a good role model?

Ⓑ Tips on writing about a person :

إرشادات للكتابة عن شخص :

عند الكتابة عن شخص ما ، ينبغي أن تتحدث ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 Who this person is | من هو هذا الشخص |
| 2 What his / her job is | ما الوظيفة |
| 3 How old he / she is | كم العمر |
| 4 When he / she lived | متى عاش |
| 5 Where he / she comes from | من أين |
| 6 What he / she did | ماذا فعل |
| 7 When he / she did that | متى فعل ذلك |
| 8 Why that is important | ما أهمية ذلك |

Model Essay

* Write an essay of about 150 words about the person you admire :

The person I admire

Perhaps you think I am going to write about a football star or a famous actor. These are important people, of course. However, I admire professor Magdi Yacoub. For me, he is the best role model. **قدرة** He is a great man for everything he has done for mankind. **البشرية**

Professor Yacoub was the son of a doctor who had to move to a new town every few years. This helped young Yacoub to adapt to **يتكيف مع** different situations. When his aunt died of a heart problem, he decided that he wanted to be a heart surgeon.

He succeeded in achieving his goal. He became a surgeon. He travelled abroad and worked with great heart surgeons in Britain and the USA. That gave him a lot of experience. He was part of the team that did the first heart transplant. زراعة القلب Queen Elizabeth II awarded him the title "Sir" for his great achievements. إنجازات

When he retired, he returned to Egypt and set up أسس Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation in Aswan. This foundation helps people with heart problems for free.

In my opinion, Professor Magdi Yacoub is the best example of greatness among people. He doesn't think of himself. Instead, he thinks how to help the people of his own country. He doesn't care for money. He only cares for saving people's lives. He gives heart patient the hope to live. I hope we all do our best to follow his footsteps.

2 الترجمة Translation

① Translate into Arabic :

1. The Egyptian woman has always been an important partner to man. Women in Egypt are strong, wise, helpful, intelligent and ambitious.
2. No one can deny the role Dr Zewail played in science. With the help of his research team, they discovered the femtosecond.
3. The use of computer tablets will help students in a positive way. It will enable them to reach the sources of knowledge easily.

② Translate into English :

١. من الممكن أن تكون عظيماً ومشهوراً في أحد المجالات، كل ما عليك هو أن تثق بنفسك وتخطط جيداً للوصول لهدفك.
٢. لابد من مساعدة الحكومة في تطوير العملية التعليمية في مصر، فالتعليم الجيد سيوفر لنا العلماء والمفكرين الذين سيجعلون حياتنا أفضل.
٣. يمكن استخدام المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية لزراعة بعض المحاصيل، مما سيوفر الكثير من الغذاء للسكان كما سيوفر الكثير من فرص العمل.

UNIT 2

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

achieve	يُحقِّق	knowledge	المعرفة
ambitious	طُمُوح	population	السكان
chances	الفرص	positive	إيجابي
deny	ينكر	provide	يوفر
development	تطوير	research	بحث
enable	يُمكن	sources	مصادر
fields	المجالات	thinkers	المفكرين
goal	هدف	trust	يثق به
job opportunities	فرص العمل	wise	حكيم

Skill Builder

يهدف إلى تنمية مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية

قم باستخدام مهارات اللغة من قواعد لغوية
ومهارات أخرى بصفه مستمره اثناء العام الدراسي

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



Consolidate

your Vocabulary From Chapter 2

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية
بالقصة المقررة جزء القصة نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A is the most important person in an organization مؤسسة.
a. head b. crew c. clerk d. cleaner
2. A / An is someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning.
a. magistrate b. officer c. servant d. captain
3. To is to steal something from a person, shop etc.
a. give b. donate c. hide d. rob
4. A are the people who work together on a ship, plane etc.
a. crew b. staff c. team d. gang
5. To is to succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you.
a. rob b. escape c. guard d. dare
6. A is someone who decides if a person is guilty مذنب of less serious crimes in a court المحكمة.
a. doctor b. sailor c. cook d. magistrate
7. A is an object or piece of information that helps to solve a crime.
a. servant b. crew c. clue d. head
8. is a group of valuable قيمة ذات things such as gold, الذهب silver, الفضة jewels المجوهرات etc.
a. Treasure b. Scar c. Adventure d. Head
9. A / An is a piece of land completely surrounded مُحاط by water.
a. beach b. island c. desert d. river
10. A / An is the mark علامة (x or +) used on paper, to represent تشير إلى where something is, or where something should be.
a. equal b. plus c. cross d. minus



A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Her sincere expression us that she was telling the truth.
a. denied b. realised c. rejected d. persuaded
2. Mohammed Salah is always by the international papers for his ability to score goals.
a. donated b. praised c. scored d. hacked
3. He committed a fatal مميّت / خطر mistake, so he is
a. of the field b. off the field c. away the field d. on the field
4. Homeless المشردين children is one of the serious خطيرة problems.
a. missing b. community c. empathy d. supporting
5. The success my elder brother has achieved us all.
a. loses b. inspires c. achieves d. kills
6. Use this cream and the red marks on your skin will soon
a. increase b. reduce c. disappear d. appear
7. A/An is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer
8. "He likes his daughters equally." This means he has two daughters.
a. all b. many c. either d. both
9. What is the suffix which can be added to form the noun from the verb "agree"?
a. -tion b. -ness c. -ion d. -ment
10. Primitive بدائيون people for food.
a. praised b. hunted c. role-played d. compared
11. His wife is ill, so their house every day.
a. isn't cleaned b. wasn't cleaned
c. doesn't clean d. didn't clean
12. He rarely comes to school late, he comes early.
a. never b. hardly c. often d. always
13. When he went on holiday, he always a lot of photos.
a. takes b. have taken c. had took d. took

14. He is a famous journalist. He never false news or stories.
 a. writing b. writes c. wrote d. write
15. Scientists useful things for their countries.
 a. do always b. always do c. are always d. always are
16. We what you have just said.
 a. are believing b. had believed
 c. believe d. believed
17. **Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :**

My father is a great man. He (a) a good student and now he (b) a successful businessman. Despite being very busy, he always (c) enough time with us. He wants us (d) have a good education and become successful like him.

a. b. c. d.

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

On a cold night a wealthy woman was lying in bed between wake and sleep. Suddenly the door of the room opened. She didn't move thinking one of her sons wanted something. To her surprise, she found herself face to face with a man holding a revolver in hand. The woman didn't show any sign of fear. Instead, she said in a very loud voice, "Welcome. I think you are the man sent by Mr Jones to take the twenty thousand pounds."

The man's eyes shone saying quickly "Yes." It was the best chance he had ever dreamt of. The woman said much louder, "Then your name must be Tom, Jack or Norman." The door opened and her sons came to see why their mother was calling them. Her sons caught the thief who was so shocked that he couldn't use his revolver. Then they phoned the police. In fact, this wise woman proved that the use of mind is stronger than the use of power.

This situation shows how one can behave in sudden and difficult situations. It was the woman's reaction and her ability to think quickly that saved her. If she had panicked **فزعت**, she would have lost her money and even her life in such a situation.

UNIT 3

Improving Lives

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 100 : 105

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

★ Reading :

An extract from David Copperfield

★ Writing :

A paragraph on a book character;
A summary of a story

★ Listening :

A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books

★ Speaking :

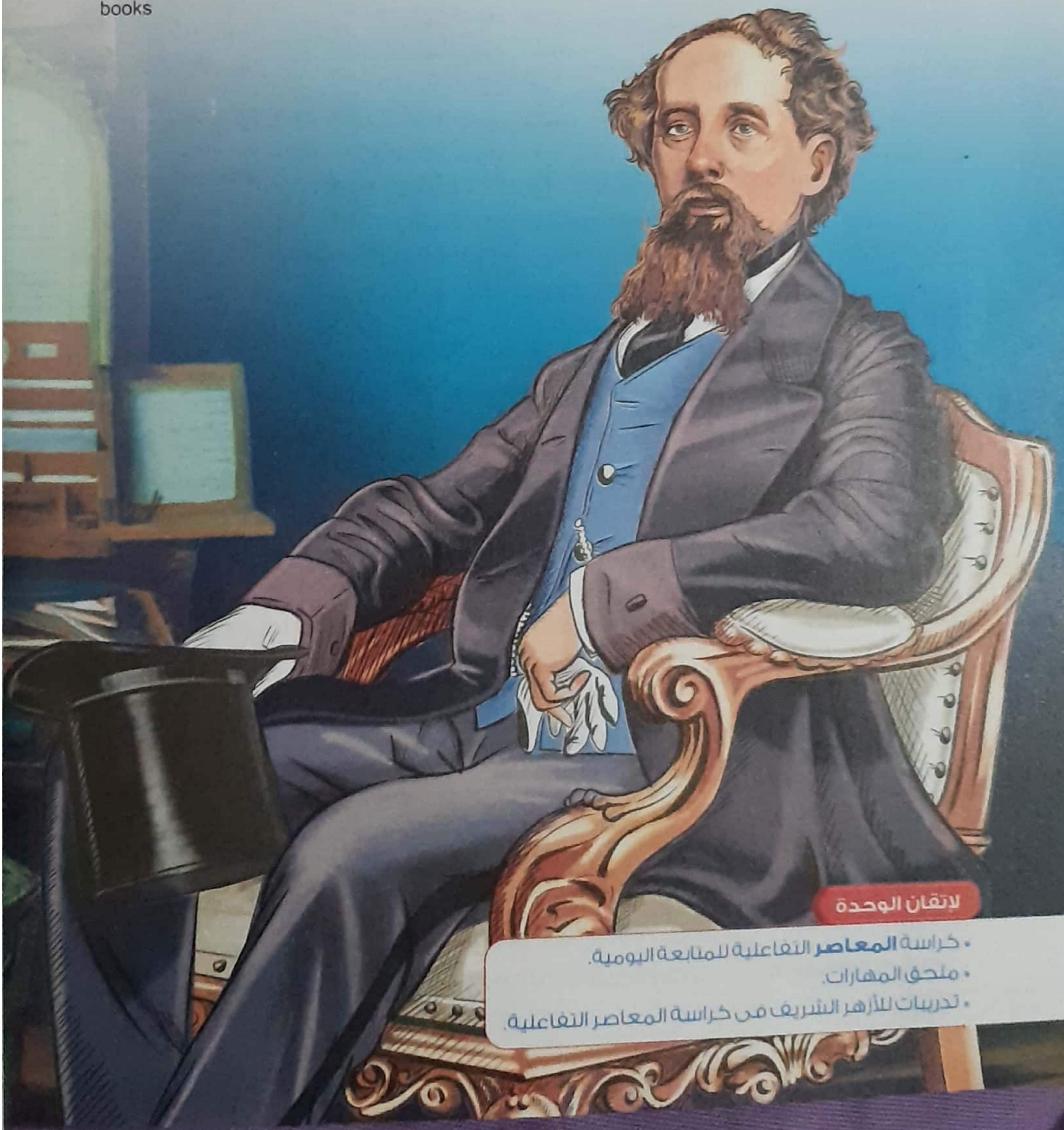
Discussing a topic

★ Language :

Past simple and present perfect

★ Life skills :

Empathy



لاتقان الوحدة

- خراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
- ملحق المهارات.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في خراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

action(n)	حَدَث - فعل	miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس
amazing(adj)	مذهل - رائع جداً	owe(d) (v)	يدين - يكون مدين
association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plan(ned) (n) (v)	خطة - يخطط
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	plump(adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً
community(n)	مجتمع - جماعة	prison(n)	السجن
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضر	rat(n)	فأر
crescent (n)	هلال	society (n)	المجتمع
culture(n)	الثقافة	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
debt(n)	دين	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجني مال	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	terrible(adj)	فظيع - سيء جداً
experiences (n)	خبرات / تجارب حياتية	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
food bank	بنك الطعام	youth (n)	الشباب
merchant(n)	تاجر	youth association	جمعية شبابية

2 Definitions تعريفات

community (n)	مجتمع	people who live in a place or an area and have common interests	مصالح مشتركة
culture (n)	ثقافة	the beliefs and traditions of a group of people	
debt (n)	دين	money you must give back	يرد to someone
earn (v)	يكسب / يتقاضى	money you receive for doing work	
food bank	بنك الطعام	a place where people collect food to give to others	
merchant (n)	تاجر	a person who buys and sells a lot of goods	بضائع
miserable (adj)	تعيس / شقي	very sad	
owe (v)	يدين - يكون مدين	have to pay back	يسدد money or things that belong to others
plump (adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	slightly fat in a nice way	
prison (n)	سجن	a place to keep criminals	فترة for a period of time as punishment
rat (n)	فأر - جرذ	an animal like a big mouse.	
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	a job that people do for no money	
youth association	جمعية شبابية	a group of young people who do things together	

3 Important Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج (خارج البلاد)	improve (d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يتحسن
admit (ted) (v)	يُقرِّب / يعترف	interests (n)	اهتمامات
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	lady (n)	سيدة
against (prep.)	ضد	life - lives (n)	الحياة - حيوات
area (n)	منطقة	master (n)	السيد
brainstorm (ed) (v)	يستشير الفكر	mistake (n)	خطأ
break - broke -	يتعطل - يكسر - ينكسر	note (n)	ملاحظة
broken (v)		opinion (n)	رأي - وجهة نظر
brief (adj)	مختصر - موجز	opportunity (n)	فرصة
character (n)	شخصية	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
common (adj)	عام - مشترك - شائع	planning (n)	تخطيط
crime (n)	جريمة	police (n)	الشرطة
criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	realise (d) (v)	يُدرِك - يستوعب
details (n)	تفاصيل	repair (ed) (v)	يُصلِّح
die (d) (v)	يموت	respect (ed) (n - v)	احترام - يحترم
difference (n)	اختلاف - فرق	high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمِّن	return (ed) (v)	يعود - يُعيد
disabled (adj)	مُعاق	review(ed) (v - n)	يُراجع - مراجعة
dreamer (n)	حالم	section (n)	قسم - جزء
educate (d) (v)	يُعلِّم	situation (n)	موقف
empty (ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	solve (d) (v)	يحل
ending (n)	نهاية	steps (n)	خطوات
exactly (adv)	تماماً - بالتحديد	still (adv)	لا يزال
expert (n - adj)	خبير	successful (adj)	ناجح
explain(ed) (v)	يشرح / يوضح / يُفسِّر	suggestion (n)	اقتراح
extract (ed) (n - v)	مُقتطف / اقتباس - يقتبس / يقتطف	summary (n)	ملخص
factory (n)	مصنع	tip (n)	نصيحة
factual (adj)	واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق	tired-looking (adj)	يبدو عليه التعب
floor (n)	أرضية - دور	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
goods (n)	بضائع (دائماً جمع)	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق بـ
group (ed) (n - v)	مجموعة - يحشد / يُجمِّع	hate(d) (v)	يكره - يمتق
grow - grew -	يكبر - يترعرع	twins(n)	توأم
grown (v)		worker(n)	عامل

4 Extra Vocabulary

arrange (d) (v)	يُرتَّب - ينظم	novel (n)	رواية - قصة طويلة
baby sister (n)	أخت رضية	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز - يَمُر - يَمُرَّر
become - became -	يُصبح	penny(n)	بنس (٠.٠١) من الجنية
become (v)		pound(n)	جُنية
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من - يفحص	reader (n)	قارئ
die (d) (v)	يتوفى	reply (ied) (n - v)	رَد - يرد
helpful (adj)	مفيد - مُعين	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصيب	several (adj)	العديد من
keep - kept (v)	يحافظ علي - يحتفظ به - يُربي	show - showed -	يُبين / يوضح - عرض
later (adv)	فيما بعد	shown (n - v)	بِقضي وقت - ينفق مال
lucky (adj)	محظوظ	spend - spent (v)	حديث - يتحدث
main (adj)	رئيسي / أساسي	talk (ed) (n - v)	نص
meaning (n)	معني	text (n)	يحاول
miss (ed) (v)	يفقد - يفوته	try (ied) (v)	كاتب
		writer (n)	

Part II

More about Vocabulary

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	ill	يَمرُض	a child	لديه طفل - تضع مولود
break	the law	يخالف القانون	no parents	يتيم
change	your opinion	تُغيِّر رأيك	debts	عليه ديون
collect	food	يجمع الطعام	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
do	the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي	bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة
	exciting things	يقوم بأشياء مثيرة	time	لديه الوقت
	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي	no opportunity	ليست لديه فرصة
	something to help	يفعل شيء لمساعدة	a role	له دور يقوم به
	a job	يقوم بعمل / يؤدي وظيفة	a happy ending	لها نهاية سعيدة
earn	money	يكسب مال	a suggestion	لديه اقتراح
follow	the steps	يتبع الخطوات	common interests	لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة
get	a better job	يحصل على وظيفة أفضل	money	يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة
	the main idea	يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية	brief notes	يُلوِّن ملاحظات مختصرة
go	wrong	يتعطل / يُصاب بالعطب	a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح
owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ	a difference	يُعدِّل فرقاً / يصنع الفارق

pass	exams	ينجح في الامتحانات	solve	a problem	يحل مشكلة
play	a role	يلعب دوراً	take	to prison	يسجن - يحبس
	a trick on	يخدع	write	a summary	يكتب تلخيصاً

Mini Test (1)

Collocations

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Whoever our company rules must lose their jobs.
a. breaks b. washes c. follows d. smashes
- While driving, something went with my car, so I had to stop and check it.
a. wrong b. right c. mistake d. damage
- My sister and I common interests.
a. play b. solve c. make d. have
- I voluntary work whenever I am free.
a. owe b. do c. break d. follow
- The money he is enough for his small family.
a. plays b. solves c. makes d. have
- I a lot of money to a friend of mine.
a. owe b. do c. break d. follow
- My wife's a big difference in my life.
a. played b. solved c. made d. had
- Everything will be OK if you the steps.
a. owe b. do c. break d. follow
- You can say that somebody played a role or a
a. trick b. rule c. law d. suggestion
- This problem must be as soon as possible.
a. played b. solved c. made d. had
- During meetings, I usually brief notes.
a. change b. do c. break d. make
- I was over the moon after the last exam I had
a. passed b. solved c. made d. earned
- It is not a bad thing if you your opinion if it is wrong.
a. change b. do c. break d. make

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
admit	يُقرّر بـ / يعترف	confess
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	widespread / usual / ordinary / customary
miserable	تعييس - بائس	unhappy / depressed
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	unpaid

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
admit	يُقرّر بـ / يعترف	deny / conceal	يُنكر
against	ضد	with / for	مع
borrow	يستعير - يستلف	lend	يُقرض - يُسلف
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	uncommon / unusual / rare	غير مألوف / نادر
earn(ed)	يكسب - يجني مال	lose	يفقد - يخسر
empty	فارغ	full	مملوء
miserable	تعييس - بائس	happy - contented	سعيد - راضٍ
plump	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	thin / slender / skinny	نحيف
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	compulsory / obligatory / paid	إجباري / مدفوع الأجر

Mini Test (2)

Synonyms & Antonyms

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You can't say she is fat. She is no more .
a. clumsy b. obese c. plump d. crescent
- "He admitted the mistake he'd made." The word 'admit' in this sentence can be replaced by
a. denied b. concealed c. confessed d. a & b
- Voluntary is to as miserable is to happy.
a. paid b. unpaid c. expensive d. selfish
- Earn and lose are
a. antonyms b. synonyms c. voluntary d. opposites
- "She looked miserable." 'Miserable' here is antonymous with
a. depressed b. happy c. contented d. b & c

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره ٤ سنوات	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
an idea for a short story	فكرة لقصة قصيرة	long time ago	منذ وقت طويل
at the end of	في نهاية	made him give it back	جعله يُعيدها
at this age	في هذا السن	make life worse for	يجعل الحياة أسوأ لـ
book character	شخصية في كتاب	make the society better	يجعل المجتمع أفضل
change people's opinions about	تُغيّر وجهات نظر الناس في	many times	مرّات عديدة
continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	my job was to	كانت وظيفتي هي أن
difference in meaning	فرق في المعنى	none of them	لا أحد منهم
disabled children	الأطفال المُعاقين	not ... anymore	لن ... مرة أخرى (فيما بعد)
earn enough money	يكسب ما يكفي من المال	people's benefit	منفعة الناس
find him a good job	يجد له وظيفة جيدة	Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
for example,	على سبيل المثال	similar to you	يشبهك
for no money	مجاناً	something goes wrong	شيء ما يتعطل
for the first time	لأول مرة	spent three years writing	قضى ثلاث سنوات يكتب
free time	وقت فراغ	stay abroad	يبقى خارج البلاد
go travelling	يذهب في رحلة	details of the story	تفاصيل القصة
good to hear from you	إنه لشيء جيد أن أتواصل معك	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - القانون السيء
have nowhere to live	ليس لديه مكان يعيش فيه	there should be	ينبغي أن يكون هناك
health problem	مشكلة صحية	try visiting	يحاول زيارة
how about	ما رأيك في	what kind of person	أي نوع من الأشخاص
in my opinion	من وجهة نظري	when things are OK	عندما تكون الأمور على ما يُرام
in order to	لكي	Why don't you ?	لم لا ؟
it was not unusual	كان من المألوف	you could	يمكنك
it's a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن	young people	الشباب
it's important to	من المهم أن		

5

Verb + Preposition

grow up
happen to
help ... with
learn from
live in
live with
look after

يكبر - يترعرع
يحدث لـ
يساعد ... في
يتعلم من
يعيش في
يعيش مع
يرعى / يعتني بـ

work for
pay ... back
owe ... to
run away
send away
talk about
think of
take ... away

يعمل لدي
رَدُّ الدين - يُسَدَّد
يدين بـ ... لـ ...
يهرب
يُطْرَد
يتحدث عن
يفكر في
يأخذ ... بعيداً

Mini Test (3)

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- He looks his old parents who really need help.
a. as b. after c. alike d. unlike
- She looks very weak and pale. She must have a problem.
a. wealth b. wealthy c. health d. healthy
- Can you take your toys please, Sama ? The room is in a mess. فوضي
a. after b. up c. off d. away
- I have a daughter aged nine and a son four.
a. of b. from c. on d. at
- After the deliberate foul الخطأ المتعمد he had made, the referee sent him
a. away b. in c. on d. back
- My job here is customers.
a. help b. to help c. to helping d. being helped
- I owe some money a friend of mine.
a. with b. from c. to d. at
- If something wrong with the machine, call me.
a. has b. does c. makes d. goes
- I will help you this difficult maths lesson.
a. by b. to c. for d. with
- I study hard pass the next exam.
a. so b. because c. in order to d. for

Part III

Vocabulary Study

1 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

earn money / get money / make money

- **earn money** يكسب مال مقابل عمل
- This doctor **earns** twenty thousand pounds a day.
- **get money** يحصل علي مبلغ معين من المال في مدة معينة
- I **get** 4000 pounds a month.
- **make money** يكسب (كثير من) المال بطريقة غير تقليدية
- Footballers **make** a lot of money.

own / owe / borrow / lend

- **own** يمتلك
- He **owns** a farm in the countryside.
- **owe** يدين به
- I **owe** Ahmed a thousand pounds.
- **borrow** يقرض / يستلف / يستعير
- I **borrowed** a thousand pounds from Ahmed.
- **lend** يُقرض / يُسلف
- Ahmed **lent** me a thousand pounds a month ago.

plump / fat / overweight / obese

- **plump** كيف نقول أن شخص ما سمين / زائد الوزن :
مكتنز - ممتلئ بشكل جذاب (بالنسبة للنساء والأطفال)
- She is a **plump** cheerful little girl.
- **fat** سمين
- A **fat** person finds it difficult to do a sport.
- **overweight** لديه وزن زائد (أكثر من الوزن المثالي)
- She wants to follow a diet because she is **overweight**.
- **obese** سمين جداً (بشكل خطير علي الصحة)
- He was an **obese** teenager.

at the age of / in the age of

- **at the age of** في سن / في عمر
- I could swim **at the age** of nine.
- **in the age of** في عصر
- **In the age of** Mohammed Ali, Egypt was a very large empire.

UNIT 3

prison - jail - cell

سجن (كبير)

• prison

- Thieves are sent to **prison**.

سجن (مكان للحجز المؤقت)

• jail

- He was taken to **jail**.

زنازة (حجرة داخل السجن)

• cell

- The dangerous criminal was kept alone in a **cell**.

work - job

عمل / مكان العمل (كلمة لا تُعد)

• work

- He did much **work** in the office yesterday.

- I go to **work** in my car.

عمل أدبي أو فني أو هندسي (كلمة تُعد)

• a work – works

- El-Karnak is **a work** by Naguib Mahfouz.

وظيفة محددة – مهمة (كلمة تُعد)

• a job – jobs

- My first **job** was as a teacher. (Not: My first work)

- I have finished all today's **jobs**.

Mini Test (4)

Clear the Confusion

مُجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I this flat. It's mine.
a. owe b. own c. borrow d. lend
- She her success to her parents.
a. owes b. owns c. borrows d. lends
- Will you me the money I need?
a. owe b. own c. borrow d. lend
- much money will leave you heavily in debt.
a. Owing b. Owning c. Borrowing d. Lending
- The High dam was built the age of President Nasser.
a. of b. for c. at d. in
- In prison, that criminal was kept in a small on his own.
a. jail b. cell c. prison d. a & c
- I have several to do in the office today.
a. work b. works c. job d. jobs

جزء لتنمية مهاراتك اللغوية التي تحتاج الى معرفة اكثر
من المفردات اللغوية الآتية ومشتقاتها واستخداماتها.

تنويه

2 More about key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

life

- **life - lives (n)** حياة - حيوات
 - My goal in **life** is to be a successful doctor.
 - Prices **الأسعار** have an effect **أثر** on people's **lives**.
- **live (d) (v)** يعيش / يحيا - يَسْكُن
 - I think people who **lived** in the past were happier.
 - Mr Mohammed **lives** in Aswan.
- **alive (adj)** حَيَّ / علي قيد الحياة (لا تأتي قبل الموصوف)
 - This fish is **alive**. (Not: This is an alive fish)
- **live = living (adj)** مَيِّت \neq dead حَيَّ / علي قيد الحياة (قبل الموصوف فقط)
 - People don't eat **live** animals. (Not: ... animals that are live)
- **live (adj)** مُسَجَّل \neq prerecorded مُبَاشِر / علي الهواء مباشرة
 - We all prefer watching **live** matches on TV.
- **lively (adj)** ملئ بالحيوية والنشاط
 - Sama is a **lively** child.
- **livelihood (adj)** مصدر دَخْل - مصدر رِزْق
 - Farming is the source **مصدر** of **livelihood** in villages.

association

- **association (n)** إِتْحَاد / مُنْظَمَة / نِقَابَة
 - This youth **association** helps poor people.
- **associate (n) = colleague** زميل عمل / شريك
 - You need to work with your **associates** to finish the report. التقرير.
- **in association with** - لاحظ التعبير التالي : بمصاحبة / بالتزامن مع
 - The green colour of trees usually comes in association with spring.
- **associate (d) (v)** يُلازم / يُصَاحِب / يأتي مع
 - Bad cough **associates** smoking.
- **associate(d) ... with (v)** يربط بين ... و ...
 - People usually **associate** high price **السعر** **with** quality. الجودة.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
يكون مُصاحب أو مُلازم لـ

be + associated with + شخص / شئ
- Overweight الوزن الزائد is associated with health problems.

يُلازم / يُرافق

associate with + شخص
- Don't **associate** with bad friends.

culture

ثقافة

• **culture (n)**
- The **culture** of Arab people is different from European culture.

حضارة

• **culture (n)**
- We are all proud فخورين of ancient Egyptian **culture**.

الزراعة

• **culture = cultivation (n)**
- Rice **culture** needs a lot of water.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- western culture الثقافة الغربية - local culture الثقافة المحلية
- national culture الثقافة القومية - common / dominant culture الثقافة السائدة
- culture shock صدمة ثقافية

ثقافي

• **cultural (adj)**
- There are **cultural** differences اختلافات between countries.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- cultural heritage الموروث الثقافي - multicultural society مجتمع متعدد الثقافات

مُثَقَّف

• **cultured = cultivated (adj)**
- Mr Nasser is a **cultured** person.

debt

• **debt (n)**
- He found a second job to pay back his **debts**.

دَيْن / مَغْرَم

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

be in debt to

مَدِين لـ

- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he **is in debt**.
- He was **in debt to** the bank.

be + heavily / deeply + in debt

عليه ديون كثيرة

- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he **is heavily in debt**.

get / fall / run into debt

يُصْبِح مَدِيناً

- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he **got / fell / ran into debt**.

debt of gratitude / thanks

مدين بالشكر أو الإمتنان

- I owe **debt** of gratitude to my parents.

- لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a debt عليه دين

- pay off debts يسدد الديون

- clear the debts يسدد كل الديون

- service a debt يسدد فوائد الديون

- write off / cancel a debt يتنازل عن الديون

- a heavy debt دين كبير

• **indebted (to) (adj)**

مدين / غارم

- He is **indebted** to a car company.

earn

• **earn (ed) (v)**

يكسب مال مقابل عمل

- Not many farmers **earn** a lot of money.

• **earn (ed) (v)**

يربح / يحقق أرباح

- This book **earned** two million dollars.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

earn (respect / a reputation ...)

ينال (الاحترام / سمعة طيبة ...)

- He has **earned the respect** of all his friends.

earn a living

يكسب رزقه من / مصدر رزقه هو

- He **earns a living** by selling fruit and vegetables.

- لاحظ أيضاً:

- earn good money يكسب الكثير من المال

- earn a fortune يكسب ثروة

• **earner (n)**

كاسب / ذو أجر / مصدر دخل

- My father is the only **earner** in our family.

- This shop is our chief **earner** رئيسي

• **earnings (n)**

دخل / ربح (دائماً جمع)

- His **earnings** are not enough for his family.

experience

• **experience (of / with) (n)**

تجربة حياتية / موقف (كلمة تُعد)

- I learned a lot from my childhood **experiences**.

• **experience (of / in / with) (n)**

الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعد)

- Mr Ashraf has a lot of **experience** in teaching.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have experience لديه خبرة

- get / gain experience يكتسب خبرة

- lack experience تنقصه الخبرة

- past / previous experience خبرة سابقة

• experience (d) (v)

بـ بتجربة - بتأثر بموقف / مشكلة - يُجرب

- People should **experience** things to learn from them.

• experienced (in) (adj) عدم الخبرة / غير مُجرب inexperienced ≠ مُحَنَّك / ذو خبرة

- Mr Ashraf is an **experienced** teacher.

merchant

• merchant (n)

تاجر (شخص / شركة)

- He makes a lot of money as a **merchant**.

• merchandise (n)

بضائع - سلع

- His stores **merchandise** are full of high-quality **merchandise**.

miserable

• miserable = very unhappy (adj)

بأس / تَعِيس / شَقِيّ

- She has lost her job and family. She looks **miserable**.

• miserable = very little / very bad (adj)

ضئيل / سيء جداً (قبل الاسم فقط)

- His **miserable** income **دَخل** isn't enough for his family.

- I was angry because of my team's **miserable** performance. أداء سيئ

• misery (n)

نعاسة / شقاء / بؤس / معاناة

- You don't know the **misery** of war **الحرب** and poverty. الفقر

• miser (n)

بخليل

- I'm sure he won't donate any money. He is a **miser**.

owe

• owe (d) + مبلغ مالي + شخص

يدين لـ ... بـ ...

- Omar **owes** Ali ten pounds.

• owe (d) + شخص + to + مبلغ مالي

يدين بـ ... لـ ...

- Omar **owes** ten pounds to Ali.

• owe (d) + شيء + for + شخص

يدين لـ ... مقابل ...

- You **owe** me for the drinks.

owe + شخص + a debt

- We **owe** our parents a debt.

owe everything (it all) to + شخص

- I **owe** everything to my family.

owe + شخص + a lot / a great deal

- She **owes** her mother a great deal.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

يدين بالفضل لـ

يدين بكل شيء لـ

يدين لـ ... بالكثير من الفضل

prison

• prison (n)

السجن

- **Prison** is the right place for criminals. (Not: The prison ...)

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (prison) عند الحديث عنه كمكان لعقاب المجرمين كما في المثال السابق، لكن يمكن استخدام (the) في أي سياق آخر:

- Visitors to **the prison** wait here.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- go to prison يتم حبسه
- put ... in prison يضع ... في السجن
- be released from prison يُطلق سراحه من السجن
- let out of prison يُخرج من السجن
- get out of prison يخرج من السجن
- a prison sentence (term) حكم بالسجن
- send ... to prison يضع ... في السجن
- escape from prison يهرب من السجن

• prisoner (n)

سجين

- In this prison, there is a library for **prisoners** who like reading.

• imprisonment (n)

عقوبة الحبس - مدة الحبس

- No one has seen him since his **imprisonment**.

• imprison(ed) (v)

يحبس / يسجن - يقيد حرية

- He was **imprisoned** for selling drugs. المخدرات

youth

youth (n)

مرحلة الشباب (لا تُعدّ)

- I was very fit in my **youth**.

youth (n)

الشباب بوجه عام (اسم الجمع)

- The **youth** of Egypt are ready to help their country.

youth – youths (n)

شاب - شباب (تُعدّ)

- A group of **youths** were arrested for troublemaking last week. إثارة الشغب

3

مقاطع بادئة Prefixes

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
dis-	تُكوّن العكس	disabled مُعاق
mis-	تُكوّن العكس	mistake خطأ - يخطئ misunderstand يُسيء فهم
re-	يُعيد	review يُراجع rewrite يُعيد كتابة
step-	أحد الأقارب (نتيجة الزواج من أحد الوالدين)	stepfather زوج الأم stepmother زوجة الأب stepfamily أسرة زوج الأم أو زوجة الأب

4 مقاطع ناهية suffixes

4 suffixes الناهية		أمثلة Examples	
Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة		
-able	تُكوّن صفة	miserable	زعيم - بئس
-al	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	criminal	مجرم - إجرامي
-er	تُكوّن اسم فاعل	dreamer	حالم
-ful	تُكوّن صفة	successful	ناجح
-ing	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	ending (n) amazing(adj)	نهاية مذهل
-ly	تُكوّن ظرف	exactly	تماماً - بالتحديد
-ual	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	factual(adj) individual(n - adj)	واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق فرد - فردي

5 اضعف إلى معلوماتك Enrich your knowledge

Egyptian Red Crescent الهلال الأحمر المصري

- The Egyptian Red Crescent was founded in 1912 by Sheikh Ali Yussuf.
تم تأسيس الهلال الأحمر المصري عام ١٩١٢ عن طريق الشيخ 'علي يوسف'.
- It is a non-governmental organization.
إنها مؤسسة غير حكومية.
- It performs its activities within the principles of the International Red Cross
يقوم الهلال الأحمر بأنشطته بالتوافق مع مبادئ الصليب الأحمر الدولي.

Egyptian Food Bank (EFB) بنك الطعام المصري

- The EFB was founded in 2006 by a group of businessmen.
تم تأسيس بنك الطعام المصري عن طريق مجموعة من رجال الأعمال.
- It is a non-profit organization specialized in fighting hunger.
إنها مؤسسة غير ربحية مخصصة لمكافحة الجوع.

6 Listening & Reading Texts

1 Reading Text

1. David Copperfield

(SB page 27)

"This is Mr Quinion, David," Mr Murdstone said. "You're going to work for⁽¹⁾ him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants,⁽²⁾ in London. You'll earn⁽³⁾ enough money to pay⁽⁴⁾ for your food, and I've arranged⁽⁵⁾ a place for you to live."

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work.⁽⁶⁾ I went to a dirty⁽⁷⁾ old house near⁽⁸⁾ the river where rats⁽⁹⁾ lived under the floors.⁽¹⁰⁾ There my job was to wash empty⁽¹¹⁾ bottles with three other boys, and I hated⁽¹²⁾ it.

One morning, a plump⁽¹³⁾ man came to see me with Mr Quinion. "Ah, Master⁽¹⁴⁾ Copperfield!" the man said. "This is Mr Micawber," Mr Quinion told me. "You will be living at his house."

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin,⁽¹⁵⁾ tired-looking⁽¹⁶⁾ lady⁽¹⁷⁾ – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins,⁽¹⁸⁾ and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered⁽¹⁹⁾ that the Micawbers were poor⁽²⁰⁾ and that Mr Micawber owed⁽²¹⁾ money to several⁽²²⁾ people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison⁽²³⁾ because of his debts.⁽²⁴⁾ I went to see him there the next Sunday.

"If a man earns twenty pounds⁽²⁵⁾ a year and spends⁽²⁶⁾ nineteen pounds, he'll be happy," he said. "But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny,⁽²⁷⁾ he'll be miserable."

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعمل لدي

(2) تجار

(3) تتقاضى

(4) تدفع

(5) يرتب / يوفر

(6) عمل شاق

(7) قذر

(8) بالقرب من

(9) فئران

(10) أرضيات

(11) فارغ

(12) يكره

(13) مكتنز

(14) سيد

(15) نحيف

(16) يبدو عليها التعب

(17) سيدة

(18) توأم

(19) يكتشف

(20) فقير

(21) يدين بـ

(22) العديد من

(23) السجن

(24) ديون

(25) جنيهاً

(26) يُنفق

(27) بنس ٠,٠١ من الجنية

2 Listening Texts

A. Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant⁽¹⁾ books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller⁽²⁾. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain⁽³⁾ people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions⁽⁴⁾ about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to make the world a better place⁽⁵⁾.

(SB page 29)



Check Vocabulary

- (1) رائع / مثالي
- (2) سارد القصة
- (3) يسلي
- (4) يغير آرائهم
- (5) يجعل من العالم مكان أفضل
- (6) طفولة
- (7) يساعد
- (8) القانون
- (9) يكافئ
- (10) يستحق

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood⁽⁶⁾. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support⁽⁷⁾ his family instead. The Poor Law⁽⁸⁾ of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

When he wrote David Copperfield between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded⁽⁹⁾. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and deserved⁽¹⁰⁾ to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.

B. Let's talk about how to write a great short story⁽¹⁾. It's important to plan⁽²⁾ your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main characters⁽³⁾.

(SB page 30)



Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) يخطط
- (3) الشخصيات الرئيسية

Don't spend too much time describing places and people - your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong⁽⁴⁾. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise for⁽⁵⁾ the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

Check Vocabulary

(4) يفسد / يتعطل

(5) مفاجأة لـ

3 Workbook Texts

1. Learning new skills

The book character⁽¹⁾ David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual⁽²⁾ for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. Factories⁽³⁾ liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them as much as⁽⁴⁾ they paid adults.⁽⁵⁾ The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example,⁽⁶⁾ they were small⁽⁷⁾ so they could go under machines⁽⁸⁾ when they broke down.⁽⁹⁾ The children were often miserable⁽¹⁰⁾. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity⁽¹¹⁾ to improve⁽¹²⁾ their lives. However, some children learned⁽¹³⁾ a skill⁽¹⁴⁾ when they worked. They were the lucky⁽¹⁵⁾ ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs⁽¹⁶⁾ when they were older.

(WB page 100)



Check Vocabulary

(1) شخصية

(2) غير مألوف

(3) مصانع

(4) كثيراً مثل

(5) الكبار

(6) علي سبيل المثال

(7) صغير الحجم

(8) آلات

(9) يتعطل

(10) تعيس / بائس

(11) فرصة

(12) يُحسن

(13) يتعلم

(14) مهارة

(15) محظوظ

(16) يحصلون على وظائف أفضل

2. A summary of David Copperfield

(WB page 102)

David Copperfield grew up⁽¹⁾ with his mother and his stepfather,⁽²⁾ Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother died⁽³⁾ and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave⁽⁴⁾ school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had nowhere⁽⁵⁾ to live.

Without⁽⁶⁾ a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter,⁽⁷⁾ Agnes, but David didn't trust⁽⁸⁾ him.

Some time later,⁽⁹⁾ Uriah Heep played a trick⁽¹⁰⁾ on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her.

When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted⁽¹¹⁾ that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him give it back⁽¹²⁾ to her. Then David went travelling around Europe.⁽¹³⁾

When David returned⁽¹⁴⁾ to England, he married⁽¹⁵⁾ Agnes and he became a successful⁽¹⁶⁾ writer.⁽¹⁷⁾

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يكبر
- (2) زوج الأم
- (3) يتوفى
- (4) يترك
- (5) لا مكان
- (6) بدون
- (7) ابنة
- (8) يثق بـ
- (9) فيما بعد
- (10) يخدع
- (11) يُقرّب / يعترف
- (12) يردّ
- (13) أوروبا
- (14) يعود
- (15) يتزوج
- (16) ناجح
- (17) كاتب

3. Three Egyptian teenagers

(WB page 103)

Tarek : In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank⁽¹⁾ (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough⁽²⁾ money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بنك الطعام
- (2) كافي

Samira : I have experienced⁽¹⁾ the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer⁽²⁾ Youth⁽³⁾ Association.⁽⁴⁾ In my opinion, it shows⁽⁵⁾ young people that they can make a difference,⁽⁶⁾ and it teaches them about other cultures⁽⁷⁾ and communities.⁽⁸⁾ They are doing a great job⁽⁹⁾ by helping to educate⁽¹⁰⁾ a lot of young people.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يُجَرِّب
- (2) حالم
- (3) شباب
- (4) جمعية
- (5) توضح / تُبين
- (6) يُخَبِّرُ فَرْقاً
- (7) ثقافات
- (8) مجتمعات
- (9) يقوم بعمل رائع
- (10) يُعَلِّم

Maher : The Egyptian Red Crescent⁽¹⁾ helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems⁽²⁾ from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work⁽³⁾ for them.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الهلال الأحمر
- (2) مشاكل صحية
- (3) عمل تطوعي

4 Video script section

People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them.

They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose them, so, they painted pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember it because they'll feel an emotional⁽¹⁾ connection⁽²⁾ to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or the people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch a thousand lives.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عاطفي
- (2) ارتباط

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. Why did people often tell stories in the past ?
2. How did they tell the stories in the past ?
3. Why do stories often have a message ?

General Exercises

On Vocabulary

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

1. He died heavily in
 a. promise b. debt c. ditch d. pit
 (السؤال - ادقو ٢٠٢٠)
2. I don't enough money working as a clerk, so I also do some part-time work at a café.
 a. earn b. perform c. possess d. share
 (الحيرة - الوراق ٢٠٢٠)
3. He his life to the staff at the hospital as they did their best to keep him alive.
 a. saved b. gave c. owed d. endangered
 (المنيا - ديرمواش ٢٠٢٠)
4. He has lost everything and now he is
 a. important b. lucky c. miserable d. misery
 (الحيرة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
5. Debts drove a friend of mine into a life of
 a. misery b. refinery c. pleasure d. treasure
 (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
6. My sister has a child with rosy cheeks. She is beautiful.
 a. tired b. plump c. ugly d. dirty
 (الفيوم ٢٠٢٠)
7. Her father's came as great shock to all those who know him.
 a. die b. died c. death d. dead
 (الحيرة - الوراق ٢٠٢٠)
8. "Doing too much work made my friend miserable." The antonym of the word miserable is
 a. dull b. depressed c. cared d. pleased
 (لسوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٠)
9. is to miserable as confess is to admit.
 a. Pleased b. Cheerful c. Unhappy d. Delighted
 (أكرم الشيخ - ديسوق ٢٠٢٠)

II Key & important vocabulary

10. There are differences between people in Upper Egypt and those in the delta.
 a. cultures b. cultural c. cultured d. culturally
11. "He's become rather plump since I last saw him." This means he became
 a. thinner b. fatter c. taller d. fitter
12. are fully grown- persons .
 a. Children b. Old people c. Teenagers d. Adults

13. I read a/an from David Copper field in Unit 3.
 a. exact b. extract c. trick d. work
14. The children of today are the of tomorrow, who will shoulder the burden of advancing this country.
 a. young b. old c. youths d. infants
15. There was a/an coverage of the conference on TV.
 a. alive b. live c. living d. lively
16. After his father had died, his mother married and he was brought up by his
 a. stepmother b. mother c. father d. stepfather
17. It is kind of you to do work.
 a. abroad b. miserable c. paid d. voluntary
18. A / An is usually larger than a mouse.
 a. rat b. insect c. mosquito d. fly
19. A: Can you tell me about the of the essay?
 B: Introduction, body and conclusion.
 a. situation b. twins c. structure d. ending
20. The thief stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.
 a. admitted b. arranged c. included d. stopped
21. There is a job in this factory. You can apply for it.
 a. mistake b. view c. opportunity d. experience
22. He succeeded in back all his debts.
 a. repairing b. respecting c. turning d. paying
23. Although I helped her with the housework, I felt sorry for my mother.
 a. look-tired b. tired-look c. tired-looking d. looked-tiring
24. In Egypt, students have to finish school before joining university.
 a. high b. low c. prep d. primary
25. is the age of activity and livelihood.
 a. Old age b. Youth c. Babyhood d. Womanhood
26. The sold in this shop are all made in Egypt.
 a. work b. works c. goods d. good
27. Sama and Abdulrahman are but they are completely different.
 a. unlike b. difference c. twin d. twins
28. I don't like films that have a sad
 a. ending b. ends c. an end d. ended

29. Volunteers help the needy المحتاجين their problems.
a. cause b. do c. make d. solve
30. My teacher gave me some useful on how to improve my English.
a. sorts b. kinds c. tips d. types
31. It was not funny playing a on the poor old man. It was impolite.
a. role b. rule c. goal d. trick
32. I was born and up in a small village.
a. grew b. got c. went d. grown
33. Modern technology has our lives.
a. suggested b. improved c. trusted d. worked
34. Follow these and you will learn how to do the experiment.
a. masters b. mistakes c. repairs d. steps
35. Child labour عمالة الأطفال is a / an against childhood.
a. crime b. opinion c. planning d. master
36. Ayman and I have some interests in We both like reading and fishing.
a. common b. difference c. success d. expert

III Derivatives, synonyms, antonyms & word-building

37. Flu usually cold weather.
a. associate b. associates c. associated d. association
38. Flu is usually with cold weather.
a. associate b. associates c. associated d. association
39. Flu is usually in with cold weather.
a. associate b. associates c. associated d. association
40. The prefix makes the noun 'father' mean the husband of someone's mother.
a. step- b. dis- c. half- d. semi-
41. in the countryside is simpler أبسط than in cities.
a. Life b. Lives c. Live d. Lively
42. People who in the countryside lead يعيشوا simpler lives.
a. life b. lives c. live d. lively
43. The of people in the countryside are simpler than they are in cities.
a. life b. lives c. live d. lively
44. Which of the following suffixes form the noun for the person from the word 'dream'?
a. ing b. er c. able d. ed

45. People in Upper Egypt مصر صعيد have a different from that of Lower Egypt. الوجه البحري
 a. culture b. cultural c. cultured d. culturally
46. There are differences between People in Upper Egypt and those in Lower Egypt.
 a. cultures b. cultural c. cultured d. culturally
47. She was a highly woman.
 a. culture b. cultural c. cultured d. culturally
48. The suffix turns the noun "fact" into an adjective.
 a. able b. ful c. ual d. al
49. He was sent to prison because he was heavily in
 a. debted b. debt c. indebted d. debate
50. He was sent to prison because he was heavily
 a. debted b. debt c. indebted d. debate
51. The word "criminal" is both a noun and a / an
 a. verb b. adverb c. preposition d. adjective
52. My father is the only in our family.
 a. earns b. earner c. earning d. earnings
53. My father's are what we live on.
 a. earns b. earner c. earning d. earnings
54. My father money for our family.
 a. earns b. earner c. earning d. earnings

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The police his sudden fortune الثروة with the bank robbery. السطو
 a. paid b. mistook c. planned d. associated
2. Fishing is the only source of for people living here.
 a. community b. experience c. misery d. livelihood
3. animals are kept on farms.
 a. Alive b. Live c. Life d. Lives
4. Egypt was famous for cotton
 a. culture b. association c. opportunity d. section
5. There was an between Egypt and high-quality cotton.
 a. culture b. association c. opportunity d. section
6. I a feeling of nausea دوار when I am on a boat.
 a. pay b. brainstorm c. feel d. experience

7. Being very old and not able to walk, he feels in his house.
a. joked b. imprisoned c. lived d. reviewed
8. This cream will renew the of your skin.
a. youth b. culture c. crescent d. beliefs
9. He applied for as a tour guide in a tourist company.
a. work b. a work c. job d. a job
10. Don't buy goods that a trademark.
a. haven't b. hasn't c. don't have d. doesn't have

Part IV

Structure



شاهد وتعلم

تنويه تم شرح الماضي البسيط فى الوحدة الأولى

The present perfect simple

1 زمن المضارع التام البسيط The present perfect simple tense

1 فى الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

subject الفاعل + have / has + p.p.

نستخدم (has) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) ونستخدم (have) مع الفاعل الجمع (We / They / You) والضمير (I)

- ex. - I **have tidied** my bedroom. - Ahmed **has played** tennis for an hour.

2 فى الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

subject الفاعل + hasn't / haven't + p.p.

- ex. - They **haven't watched** the match yet.
- Rodayna **hasn't done** her homework yet.

2 السؤال بـ «هل» :

have / has + subject الفاعل + p.p + ?

- ex. - **Have** you **tidied** your room?
Yes, I have (tidied my room).
- **Has** Rodayna **done** her homework?
No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام :

question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + p.p + ?

- Where **have** you **played** the match?
- How long **have** you **stayed** here?

٤ في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

object + have / has + been + p.p

- ex. - I **have tidied** my bedroom. (active)
 My bedroom **has been tidied** (by me). (passive)
 - Ahmed **has played** tennis for an hour. (active)
 Tennis **has been played** for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

Mini Test (1) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- It is Sama who my pen.
 a. take b. taking c. has taken d. have taken
- The children the window and run away.
 a. broke b. were breaking c. has broken d. have broken
- your teeth, Omar ?
 a. You have brushed b. Have you brushed
 c. Are you brushed d. Were you brushed
- They doing the census الإحصاء السكاني. They're still doing it.
 a. have finished b. haven't finished
 c. had finished d. hadn't finished
- He carefully.
 a. examines b. was examining
 c. has examined d. has been examined
- Where before you come here ?
 a. do you live b. you were living
 c. have you lived d. have you been lived

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام البسيط في الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت في الماضي و لم تنتهي بعد):

- ex. - I
- have studied**
- English since 2010.
- I'm in secondary one.**

٢ التعبير عن مواقف مرت في الماضي دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ولكن يكون المقصود ضمناً حتى هذه اللحظة/الآن:

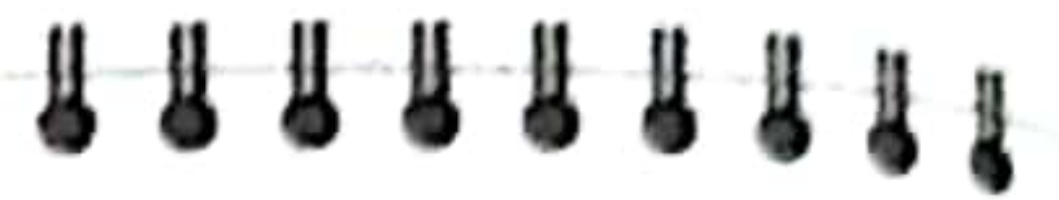
- ex. - I
- have visited**
- the Pyramids three times.
-
- Scientists
- have discovered**
- medicines for a lot of diseases.

٣ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي و لها أثر على الحاضر:

- ex. - I've
- lost**
- my mobile, so I
- can't phone**
- my parents.

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة



١ لاحظ الفرق بين:

1. have / has been to + مكان ذهب إلى مكان و عاد

- She **has been** to the market. Now **she is in the kitchen** putting the vegetables in the fridge.

2. have / has gone (to) + مكان ذهب إلى مكان ولم يرجع بعد

- Bassem **has gone** to the club. He **will come back** after the match.

3. have been in + مكان + for / since متواجد في (لا يزال هناك)

- I **have been in** London for three years. (This means I am in London now.)

٢ لا يتم ذكر توقيت وقوع الحدث في المضارع التام ، وعند ذكر التوقيت نستخدم الماضي البسيط:

- Ahmed **has drunk** two coffees.

- Ahmed **drank** two coffees **yesterday**.

٣ عند التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية ممتدة حتى الآن مثل:

this morning / this week / this month / today / in the last year ... etc.

- I **have sent** three emails **today**.

٤ يُستخدم المضارع التام مع (ever / never / since) للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب السابقة:

- I **have never gone** camping. (لم يسبق أن عشت هذه التجربة.)

- Sama is the most intelligent girl I **have ever seen**.

(الأول مرة أرى طالبة بهذا الذكاء.)

- I **have worked** here **since** 2002.

(لقد عملت هنا منذ ٢٠٠٢.)

Mini Test (2)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I English since I was in Primary one. I still study it.

a. studied b. had studied c. have studied d. was studying

2. She the High Dam three times. She'll visit it again next week.

a. has visited b. had visited c. was visiting d. has been visited

3. Mr Hussein his leg. He can't walk without a stick.

a. was breaking b. had broken c. broke d. has broken

4. Rodayna to the club. I'll join her there.

a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been

5. Your mother to the market. Take the shopping bag to the kitchen.
 a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been
6. Mrs Noha this school two years ago.
 a. has left b. has been left c. had left d. left
7. Today, I three emails so far. I'm waiting for two more.
 a. have received b. was received c. had received d. was receiving

2 Time adverbs ظروف الزمان

تُستخدم ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط كالتالي:

ظروف الزمان تأتي بعد الفعل المساعد وقبل التصريف الثالث

من قبل **ever** - أبداً **never** - بالفعل **already** - توأ **just**

- ex. - My uncle **has just arrived** at the airport.
 - I **have never** seen a real fox.
 - This is the tallest tree I **have ever** seen.
 - **Have you ever travelled** abroad?
 - I **have already** passed the driving test.
 = I **have passed** the driving test **already**.

لاحظ ما يلي :

has / have + never + p.p.

= **hasn't / haven't + ever + p.p.**

- ex. - Nada **has never been** to Paris.
 - Nada **hasn't ever been** to Paris.

ظروف زمنية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة وأحياناً قبل التصريف الثالث :

حديثاً / مؤخراً **lately = recently** - حتى الآن **up till now** - حتى الآن **so far**
in the last - على مر السنين **over the years** - لمدة **for** - منذ **since**
 - على مر السنين **throughout the years** - في الشهور الأخيرة **months**
 هذا الأسبوع **this week**

- ex. - I **have written** two essays **so far**.
 - **So far, I have written** two essays.

UNIT 3

نستخدم (yet) في نهاية الجملة المنفية و الإستفهامية وتدل على أنه من المتوقع حدوث الفعل :

- ex. - Have you watered the trees yet?
- Marwa hasn't seen the new manager yet.

يأتي بعد (since) تعبير زمني يدل على وقت بداية الحدث مثل:

five o'clock / the morning / Monday / 26th September /
March / summer / 2013 / yesterday / last month / then منذ ذلك الحين
— / موت death / ميلاد birth / رحيل departure / وصول arrival

- ex. - He's been here since April.
- She has lived in Aswan since her birth.

في حال وجود جملة بعد (since) يكون زمنها ماضى بسيط أو مضارع تام:

- ex. - I have lived in this flat since I got married.
= Since I got married, I have lived in this flat.

يأتي بعد (for) تعبير زمني يدل على المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث:

a moment / a while فترة / two seconds / three minutes / half
an hour / four hours / five days / six months / two seasons /
ten years / a decade عقد / two centuries قرنين / ages مدة طويلة
/ a long time / a short time / the last / as long as I can
على قدر ما أتذكر remember

- ex. - I've had this mobile for more than 10 years.
- He's been here for 6 months.

Mini Test (3) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Marwa to Aswan before.
a. never has been
b. has been never
c. has never been
d. was never going
- Mr Hossam to Hurghada. He plans to make his first visit next January.
a. hasn't never been
b. hasn't ever been
c. has ever been
d. has been never
- My parents home yet.
a. don't return
b. weren't returning
c. have returned
d. haven't returned

4. Wonderful! Have you completed the report ? Then you can give it to the manager.
 a. already b. yet c. ago d. yesterday
5. I haven't travelled outside Egypt my birth.
 a. for b. since c. before d. last
6. I have felt great pain in my stomach since I a piece of biscuits.
 a. eat b. has eaten c. ate d. had eaten
7. I haven't seen my sister ages.
 a. for b. since c. before d. after

3 Notes for more understanding

١ لاحظ استخدم (ago) بدلا من (just) والعكس :

فاعل + have / has + just + P.P. =

ماضي بسيط + just now a moment ago a short time ago

- ex. - He has just left the office. = He left the office a moment ago.
 - Nada has just gone out. = Nada went out just now.

٢ لاحظ استخدم (never) في بداية الجملة :

فاعل + have / has + never + P.P. = never + have / has + فاعل + P.P.

- ex. - I have never played squash. = Never have I played squash.

٣ لاحظ استخدم (ever / never) :

= This is the first time + subj + have / has + (ever) + P.P.

= This is the first time + for + subj / ضمير مفعول + فاعل + to + inf.

- ex. - This is the first time I have ever seen such a tall girl.
 = This is the first time for me to see such a tall girl.

جملة تفضيل + subject + have / has + (ever) + P.P.

صفة + such (a / an) + adj. + subject + have / has + never + P.P.

+ اسم n.

- ex. - She is the tallest girl I have ever seen.
 - I have never seen such a tall girl.

⓪ لاحظ استخدم (yet) بدلا من (still) والعكس :

subject + am / is / are + still + (inf. + ing)

subject + haven't / hasn't + finished / stopped + (inf. + ing) yet.

- ex. - He is still doing homework. = He hasn't finished doing homework yet.
- It is still raining. = It hasn't stopped raining yet.

⓪ لاحظ الاختلاف بين (for) و (since) عند الاستخدام مع عدم تغيير المعنى :

أ. عند التحويل من (for) إلى (since) إ طرح المدة من الوقت الحاضر :

- ex. - He has lived in Aswan for 18 years.
= He has lived in Aswan since 2002.

ب. عندما لا يمكن حساب المدة نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

جملة ماضى بسيط + since + مدة زمنية + It is

- ex. - She has stayed with her aunt for a long time.
= It is a long time since she stayed with her aunt.

ج. عند التحويل من (since) إلى (for) احسب المدة منذ بداية الحدث وحتى الوقت الحاضر :

- ex. - He has waited here since seven o'clock. It is nine now.
= He has waited here for two hours.

د. لاحظ التحويل من (since) إلى (for) فى الصيغة التالية :

جملة ماضى بسيط مثبت + since + مدة زمنية + It is

= subject + haven't / hasn't + p.p + for + مدة زمنية

- ex. - It is five years since I (last) saw Ali.
= I haven't seen Ali for five years.

هـ. لاحظ استخدام (ago) بدلا من (since / for) والعكس :

subject + have / has + p.p + since / for

subject + started / began + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) + مدة زمنية + ago

- ex. - The boys have played football for two hours.
= The boys started playing (to play) football two hours ago.
- He has worked in this hospital since 2010.
= He began working (to work) in this hospital ten years ago.

و. لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

subject + haven't / hasn't + p.p. + since + **past simple**
جملة ماضى بسيط

= subject + last + **S.C.** + in / on / at + **تعبير (مضى ماضى**
تصرف ثان

= The last time + subject + **S.C.** + was + in / on / at + **تعبير (مضى ماضى**
تصرف ثان

ex. - She **hasn't gone** shopping **since Monday**.

= She **last went** shopping **on Monday**.

= **The last time** she **went** shopping **was on Monday**.

4 Present Perfect Simple Vs. Past Simple

الفرق فى الاستخدام بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

Present Perfect المضارع التام

Past Simple الماضى البسيط

١. حدث تم في وقت غير معروف في الماضي: - Someone has broken the window.	١. حدث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي: - Someone broke the window yesterday.
٢. حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد: - I have received three emails today .	٢. حدث تم في وقت انتهى: - I received three emails last Monday .
٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر: - I have learnt to drive. Now, I can drive my father's car.	٣. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي: - I learnt to drive. Mr Khalid was my driving teacher.
٤. حدث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Salah has scored 90 goals in the Premier League. (صلاح لا يزال حياً ويمارس كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)	٤. حدث غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Naguib Mahfouz wrote a lot of successful novels. (نجيب محفوظ توفي ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)
٥. حدث أو حالة لازالت موجودة: - I have lived in Aswan since 2002 . (وما أزال أعيش هنا)	٥. حدث أو حالة لم تعد موجودة: - I lived in Aswan in 2002 . (لم أعد أعيش هناك)

Mini Test (4) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father is angry because I the door open.

a. leaves

b. left

c. have left

d. was left

2. My father is angry. I the door open last night.

a. leaves

b. left

c. have left

d. was left

3. He three coffees today.
a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
4. He three coffees yesterday.
a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
5. I to swim. Now, I swim as well as a swimming champion.
a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
6. I to swim. That was during the summer holiday.
a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
7. I a running champion as a child. Now I can hardly walk.
a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been
8. I a running champion. I will represent Egypt in the following Olympics.
a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been

General Exercises

On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. A: You aren't in your office!
B: Sorry, sir. I to restaurant for lunch.
a. will go b. was going c. have been d. have gone
2. My uncle lives in Canada, so I haven't seen him the age of ten.
a. for b. since c. already d. ever
3. My mother has never to go to hospital.
a. needed b. needs c. need d. needing
4. Nasser has lived in this house since he a child.
a. had been b. was c. will d. is
5. I only bought my new camera last week, but I 300 photos with it so far.
a. already take b. already took
c. have already taken d. already taking
6. He can't play football because he his leg.
a. broke b. has broken c. breaking d. had broken
7. Mona is in Cairo now. She to Alex.
a. has gone b. go c. has been d. goes
8. I for five hours every day last week.
a. has worked b. had worked c. worked d. have worked

9. you enjoyed your time at the museum ?
 a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Are
10. She has lived in London three years.
 a. since b. ago c. for d. during
11. He to Cairo. I'll wait for him until he comes back.
 a. goes b. has gone c. has been d. was going
12. Noha has cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
 a. already b. yet c. never d. ever
13. We have lived in that house twenty years.
 a. in b. ago c. for d. since
14. I haven't met him he moved to a new house.
 a. yet b. since c. ago d. when
15. We in Cairo since 1993.
 a. had living b. have lived c. lived d. are living
16. He come back home.
 a. never b. has just c. already has d. just has
17. A: How long worked in Cairo ? B: Since 2008.
 a. has he b. he has c. had he d. he had
18. He there for ten years. He intends to retire next year.
 a. 'd worked b. worked c. 's working d. 's worked
19. A : yourself today? B : Yes, I've had a great time.
 a. Have you enjoyed b. Are you enjoying
 c. Do you enjoy d. Had you enjoyed
20. I my exam. I am celebrating my success with my family.
 a. 've passed b. 'd passed c. 'll pass d. am passing
21. I Brazil twice up till now.
 a. was visited b. visited c. 've visited d. am visiting
22. a long time since I last played football.
 a. For b. It's c. It has d. It'll be
23. Nothing interesting since I last saw him.
 a. has happened b. happen c. have happened d. had happened
24. The writer his book yet.
 a. didn't finish b. has finished c. hasn't finished d. isn't finished
25. Wahid and Mohammed friends all their lives. They are often together.
 a. will be b. has been c. have been d. were

26. We each other since we were at school.
 a. have been knowing b. have known
 c. known d. had known
27. They in the garden for five hours now.
 a. have worked b. have been worked
 c. work d. are working
28. It is since we met.
 a. three weeks b. 1980 c. yesterday d. schooldays
29. What has happened to him this morning ?
 a. for b. ago c. since d. when

II Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

30. Mustafa has the club. He is on his way there.
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
31. Mustafa has the club. He looks as if he has had a great time there.
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
32. Mustafa has the club for three hours. I wonder when he will return home.
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
33. I Brazil in 2014.
 a. had been to b. have been in c. have been to d. went to
34. I last met him he moved to a new house.
 a. yet b. for c. since d. when
35. My secretary three emails today. She will send the rest in a few minutes.
 a. was sent b. has sent c. has been sent d. had sent
36. My grandfather ill over the last year. I hope he will get better soon.
 a. has been b. had been c. was d. was being
37. Have you finished your homework ? ! You are very quick!
 a. yet b. ever c. already d. just
38. I haven't been to Aswan since 2010. This means that
 a. I have been in Aswan since 2010 b. I have never been to Aswan
 c. I was in Aswan in 2010 d. I wasn't in Aswan in 2010
39. Ali and his family have never travelled since
 a. he gets married b. he marries c. his marriage d. married

40. He's been on holiday the last two weeks.
 a. while b. for c. when d. since
41. Now Huda lives in extreme poverty because all the money she
 lost.
 a. had been b. were c. has been d. is being
42. Have you finished reading that novel? That's amazing!
 a. ever b. just c. already d. yet
43. Since you your homework, you won't be allowed to go out. a.
 didn't do b. hadn't done c. haven't done d. had done
44. It has been the main concern of parents to maintain a good
 future for their children.
 a. never b. ago c. just d. always
45. I didn't feel that a thief entered the flat since I the match on
 TV.
 a. watched b. had watched c. was watching d. have watched

III Check your understanding

46. I'm in secondary one. I English for ten years now.
 a. am studying b. have studied c. studied d. had studied
47. This is my house. I here for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived
 c. had lived d. had been lived
48. That was my house. I there for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived c. had lived d. had been lived
49. He has just taken an aspirin. This means that
 a. he has taken an aspirin a moment ago.
 b. he has never taken an aspirin.
 c. he has taken an aspirin for ages.
 d. he took an aspirin a moment ago.
50. Yara has never eaten shrimps. This means
 a. she doesn't eat shrimps. b. she had never eaten shrimps.
 c. she hasn't ever eaten shrimps. d. she wasn't ever eaten shrimps.
51. I have lived here in this city for ten years. What does this sentence
 mean ?
 a. I no longer live in this city. b. I didn't live in this city.
 c. I have always lived in this city. d. I still live in this city.

UNIT 3

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

1 My father is 59 years old. He (a) worked as an accountant for the same company since he (b) twenty-two, so he has worked there (c) about 37 years. He is looking forward (d) his retirement next year.

a. b. c. d.

2 Mr Magdi is one of my best old friends. I (a) met him (b) I attended his daughter's wedding. (c) has grown old (d)

a. b. c. d.

3 I miss my village very much. It is years since I (a) went there. I also miss living (b) our house very much. Peace and quietness (c) disappeared from my life (d) I left the city.

a. b. c. d.

4 My friend Omar and I enjoy camping. We (a) always gone camping together. (b) last time we went camping (c) last summer. Have you (d) been camping ?

a. b. c. d.

Advanced Exercise on Structure

فجاء عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I injured my knee and I haven't played football

a. already b. never c. for d. since

2. We have lived here fall.

a. yet b. already c. since d. for

3. They for ten years when I met them. It was in Paris in 2016.

a. married b. had been married
c. have married d. have been married

4. This is the first time I have ever travelled alone. I mean to say that

a. I'm travelling alone for the first time.
b. I have ever travelled alone.
c. I haven't never travelled alone.
d. I travelled alone only once.

5. Omar is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that
- I have seen many clever students like Omar.
 - I have seen many students as clever as Omar.
 - it is the first time for me to see a student who has this degree of cleverness.
 - Omar is not as clever as the students I have ever seen.
6. Nouran hasn't finished doing her homework yet. That means
- Nouran didn't start doing her homework.
 - Nouran is going to start doing her homework.
 - Nouran is still doing her homework.
 - Nouran finished doing her homework.
7. It is still raining. I mean to say that
- it has rained.
 - it was raining.
 - it has stopped raining.
 - it hasn't stopped raining yet.
8. It's a month since I last went for a walk. This means
- I have gone for a walk for a month.
 - I haven't gone for a walk a month ago.
 - I haven't gone for a walk for a month.
 - I have gone for a walk since a month.
9. I have lived in Edfu since 2002. I mean to say that
- I started to live in Edfu about 18 years ago.
 - I stopped living in Edfu about 18 years ago.
 - I have lived in Edfu for ten years.
 - I have lived in Edfu before 2002.
10. I last ate fish on Friday. This sentence means that
- I didn't eat fish since Friday.
 - I haven't eaten fish since Friday.
 - I had eaten fish on Friday.
 - I didn't eat fish on Friday.

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

My cousin studies medicine in the United Kingdom. He has been
 (a) London for three years so (b) He has taken
 (c) living there. It's been a week since I last heard (d) him.
 a. b. c. d.

Extreme adjectives

الصفات القوية

1 هي صفات ذات معنى قوي مثل :

- ex. - amazing رائع / مذهل - terrible رهيب / فظيع
 - gigantic ضخم - furious ساخط
 - ancient عتيق / قديم جداً - Excellent ممتاز

2 لا تستخدم (very / fairly) قبل الصفات القوية :

- ex. - very amazing (X) - fairly miserable (X)

3 لاحظ أن :

صفة عادية + very = صفة قوية

- ex. - ancient = very old - amazing = very good
 - miserable = very unhappy

4 تستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

تماماً completely - كلياً utterly / entirely - بشكل مطلق absolutely

- ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient.

• كل / لكل a / an •

1 تستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (كل) قبل الكلمات الزمنية :

- ex. - We go to school five days a week. - This car goes at 130 km an hour.

2 تستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (لكل) قبل أسماء المقاييس والوزان :

- ex. - The apples are 25 pounds a kilo.

• صفة the + adj. •

عند استخدام (the) قبل الصفة التي ليس بعدها موصوف فإنها تتحول لإسم جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع :

صفة + adj. = the + اسم جمع + صفة + adj.

- Poor people are not able to buy everything they need.

= The poor are not able to buy everything they need. (Not: The poor is)

• اسم انسان the + •

عند استخدام (the) قبل اسم انسان مضافاً له (s) فإن ذلك يدل على الأسرة كلها وتأخذ فعل جمع :

- The Hassans were busy last week. (Not: The Hassans is)

the police

كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - The police have arrested some criminals.

one - ones

تُستخدم كلمة (one - ones) كضمائر فاعل أو مفعول :

- ex. - One should work hard to succeed. (One = A person / A student ...)
- I don't need this tablet. I want the black one. (one = tablet)
 - Some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones. (ones = children)
 - These are not my books. Mine are the ones on the table. (ones = books)

have + agent فاعل + inf. / (inf. + ing)

لنلاحظ استخدام صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) عند قيام الفاعل بتكليف غيره بالقيام بالفعل :

..... have + obj. مفعول + inf.

..... get + obj. مفعول + to + inf.

..... have / get + obj. مفعول + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Factories liked to have children work for them.
- Factories liked to get children to work for them.
 - Factories liked to have / get children working for them.

make + obj. + inf. / adj

لنلاحظ استخدام الفعل (make) في الصيغ التالية بمعنى (يجعل) :

صفة + adj. + make + obj. مفعول + فاعل + subj.

= obj. مفعول + be + made + adj. صفة

- ex. - Sama's birth made them happy. = They were made happy by Sama's birth.

subj. فاعل + make + obj. مفعول + inf.

= obj. مفعول + be + made + to + inf.

- ex. - I make Ahmed water the flowers. = Ahmed is made to water the flowers.

make + adj. صفة + job وظيفة

- ex. - A sportsman makes a good police officer.

Nouns ending in (f / fe)

تتحول النهاية (f/ fe) في المفرد إلى (ves) في الجمع - لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

half	نصف	halves
knife	سكين	knives
leaf	ورقة نبات	leaves
life	حياة	lives
thief	لص	thieves
wife	زوجة	wives
wolf	ذئب	wolves
dwarf	قزم	dwarves / dwarfs
scarf	إيشارب (طرحة)	scarves / scarfs
calf	صغير البقر (عجل)	calves

وهناك استثناءات لهذه القاعدة مثل :

- ex.** - belief اعتقاد - beliefs
 - safe خزانة - safes
 - roof سقف - roofs
 - gulf خليج - gulfs
 - chief رئيس - chiefs
 - brief اختصار - briefs

Making suggestions

Let's + inf. هيا بنا

لعمل اقتراحات نستخدم :

- ex.** - Let's go to the cinema.

We / You could + inf. يمكنك أن

- ex.** - We / You could go to the cinema.

I suggest + (inf. + ing) أقترح

- ex.** - I suggest going to the cinema.

I suggest + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) أقترح أن

- ex.** - I suggest (that) we / you go to the cinema.

What / How about+ (inf. + ing)؟ ما رأيك في

- ex.** - What / How about going to the cinema?

Why don't we / you + inf.؟ لم لا

- ex.** - Why don't we / you go to the cinema?

Exercises**On Grammatical Hints**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. are a small family.
a. Ragab b. Ragab's c. Ragabs d. The Ragabs
2. The engine is employable.
a. fairly b. absolutely c. absolute d. fair
3. I suggest the Plants' Island in Aswan.
a. visit b. visiting c. to visit d. visited
4. Your success has us happy.
a. made b. caused c. let d. allowed
5. The police looking for some escaping criminals.
a. is b. has c. are d. have
6. This man is He is really unhappy.
a. miserably b. not miserable c. very miserable d. miserable
7. Why don't you a dentist?
a. to see b. seeing c. saw d. see
8. Rodayna has two aunts. is a teacher and the other is a doctor.
a. Another b. One c. Ones d. Other
9. I suggest Sama to the park with us.
a. go b. went c. has gone d. was going
10. This baby girl is easily made
a. laugh b. to laugh c. laughing d. laughs
11. The disabled more care and interest.
a. needs b. has needed c. need d. were needed
12. How about the match in the stadium?
a. to watch b. watch c. watching d. to watching
13. We have a gardener after the trees in our garden.
a. looks b. to look c. looked d. look
14. I go to the park once week.
a. in b. a c. at d. on
15. A: What do you suggest for the weekend?
B: We do some voluntary work.
a. didn't b. don't c. had to d. could

UNIT 3

16. The old man made me his bag.
 a. carrying b. to carry c. carry d. carried
17. The poor never enough money.
 a. have b. has c. are d. is
18. An accountant محاسب a good manager.
 a. makes b. does c. scores d. gives
19. They had a mechanic their car engine.
 a. to check b. to checking c. checks d. check
20. My mobile rings at least three times hour.
 a. a b. an c. at d. all

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :

We went to the countryside last weekend. The peaceful atmosphere there (a) us relax. We visited Mr Ali's family (b) our trip. (c) Alis are generous people. They (d) us have lunch with them.

a.

b.

c.

d.

Part VI

Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

عندما يُطلب منك الكتابة عن قصة ، يمكنك التركيز على النقاط التالية :

- ① Which story have you chosen?
 ما القصة التي قمت باختيارها ؟
- ② Who is the main character in the story? What is he/she like?
 - من هي الشخصية الرئيسية في القصة ؟ كيف يبدو / تبدو ؟
- ③ Where does he / she live? What is his /her life like?
 - أين كانت تقيم تلك الشخصية ؟ وكيف كانت حياته / حياتها ؟
- ④ Who are the other characters? How did they know the main character?
 - من هي الشخصيات الأخرى ؟ كيف عرفوا الشخصية الأساسية ؟

5 How does the story start? What happened first? What happened next? And then?

- كيف كانت بداية القصة ؟ ماذا حدث أولاً ؟ ماذا حدث بعد ذلك ؟

6 What is the moral of the story?

ما هو الدرس الاخلاقي فى القصة ؟

* Write an essay of about 150 words about a story you have read :

The Old Man and the Sea

Reading is one of my favourite hobbies. In fact, I find reading both interesting and useful. I like reading novels. In this essay I'm going to write about a great novel called "The Old Man and the Sea".

The novel was written by Ernest Hemingway. It is about an old fisherman called Santiago. This fisherman was very poor. He wanted to catch a big fish to sell it for a lot of money.

Santiago had to sail far away into the sea. He was alone in his boat. The rod **الصنارة** caught a very big marlin. The marlin was bigger than the boat itself. It was impossible for Santiago to pull the fish into the boat.

Santiago waited until the fish was tired and pulled it behind the boat. Unfortunately, some sharks attacked the marlin and ate it. When Santiago reached the beach, the marlin was just a skeleton. Santiago was very tired. He went home and slept.

I like this story because it has a moral. One **المرء** should be patient. We should have determination **إصرار**. Despite being old and weak, Santiago tried and didn't give up **يستسلم**. We also learn that people need cooperation **التعاون**. To succeed in life, you need to work with others.

2 الترجمة Translation

Skill builder برجاء الرجوع للجزء الخاص بالترجمة في الكتاب التأسيسي

تنويه

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. After Shakespeare, Charles Dickens is probably the most famous writer in the English language. The former wrote great poems and the latter was the author of fabulous novels.
2. Reading works of literature like novels, plays and poems is very beneficial. It widens our horizons and gives us useful experience.

3. Success is not something that occurs out of the blue. To be successful, you must work hard to a plan.

② Translate into English :

- ١- عليك أن تعمل بكل جد لكي تنجح في الوصول لهدفك في الحياة، فالنجاح الحقيقي يأتي بعد سنوات من المثابرة والعمل الطموح.
- ٢- من الأفضل أن تقول الصدق في كل المواقف وإن أغضب الآخرين، فالكذب من السمات السيئة غير المقبولة دينياً أو اجتماعياً.
- ٣- إن أطفال الشوارع قنبلة موقوتة قد تنفجر في أي وقت، وعلى كل فرد أن يفعل ما يستطيع من أجل حل هذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

author	مؤلف	perseverance	المثابرة
beneficial	مفيد	position	وضع
experience	خبرة	religiously	دينياً
explode	تنفجر	socially	اجتماعياً
fabulous	رائع	success	النجاح
homeless	مُشرّد	the former	الأول
horizon	الأفق	the latter	الأخر
individual	فرد	timed bomb	قنبلة موقوتة
literature	الأدب	unacceptable	غير مقبول
may	قد	widen	يوسّع
out of the blue	فجأة		

احرص على التدريب المستمر

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدريبات للتقويم المستمر على كل وحدة

★ اختبار تراكمي

★ تدريبات للأزهر

★ تدريبات على المهارات

★ اختبارات على المنهج

المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية
بالقصة المقررة جزء القصة نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A / An is a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak.
a. crew b. owl c. eagle d. parrot
2. A is a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg.
a. gun b. sail c. crutch d. wheel
3. A is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.
a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard
4. A / An is an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely.
a. port b. harbour c. airport d. river
5. A is a group of people that causes trouble.
a. gang b. team c. community d. nursery
6. A / An is when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge of them and take control for themselves.
a. blood b. scar c. attack d. mutiny
7. A is a large container made of wood.
a. pipe b. kettle c. pot d. barrel
8. A / An is an act of violence that intended to hurt a person or damage a place.
a. lock b. lack c. attack d. mutiny
9. A is known about by only a few people and kept from others.
a. journey b. secret c. harbour d. barrel
10. means able to wait calmly for a long time.
a. Patient b. Impatient c. Secret d. Popular



A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The judge القاضي assured أكد that the director had the law and sent him to prison.
a. supported b. kept c. broken d. issued
2. The two words "plumb" and "thin" are
a. synonyms b. antonyms c. derivatives d. homographs
3. What is the correct plural of the noun 'belief'?
a. believes b. beliefes c. beliefs d. believe
4. He was bad tempered because his team gave a performance.
a. plump b. superior c. miserable d. strong
5. He's been looking for an extra job to get out of
a. debit b. doubt c. dirt d. debt
6. Ever since his wife left him, you can see the..... on his face.
a. miserly b. miserable c. misery d. miserliness
7. His victory in the tournament him \$50. 000.
a. won b. earned c. goaled d. beat
8. school boys are exposed to being bullied than others.
a. Pump b. Dump c. Plump d. Bump
9. Father has gone to the children from school.
a. consist b. contact c. collect d. connect
10. I know I you a big sum, but I can't pay it back now.
a. awl b. own c. owe d. awe
11. Salah two coffees so far.
a. drinks b. drank c. was drinking d. has drunk
12. Mona isn't here, she to the shops.
a. had gone b. go c. has been d. has gone

13. Finally, my mother how to use the internet. Now she can send emails.

- a. learns b. has learnt c. had learnt d. was learning

14. Bassant gets up early while being on holiday.

- a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never

15. I have passed this test

- a. already b. yet c. just d. so far

16. He lives in Paris, he has there since 2001.

- a. gone b. been c. come d. done

17. **Fill in the gaps with suitable word(s) :**

My daughter is very busy these days. She (a) taking her final exams. She (b) finished all her subjects (c), so she has (d) to go on working hard.

- a. b. c. d.

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Have you ever been to a forest? Have you ever watched a documentary about wildlife? Forests of different kinds are rich in wildlife. There, you can see thousands of species of plants and animals. These plants and animals form one of the most complicated circles of life. Every single species plays a part in natural balance.

There are similarities between animals living in wide-open spaces. The lion is an animal that lives in open area. The lion is the largest member in the family of cats. It lives in Africa. When it is angry or **irritated** by flies, the lion whips its tale around. The favourite food of the lion is raw meat. The lion gets its food from the animals it kills every day. It hunts at night but during the day, it lies in the shade of a tree. The lion kills only for food. The male always eats first. When it finishes, the rest of the family, the lioness and cubs, have their turn

The zebra also lives in wide-open spaces. Its enemy is the lions because lions like zebra meat. Both zebras and lions like to live in open

areas where they can run and play. Water is very important for the zebra. Almost every day it goes to waterhole where, its enemy, the lion, is sitting there waiting for it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

18. The underlined word "irritated" means
 a. annoyed b. interested c. discouraged d. frightened
19. A documentary is
 a. a historical movie b. a TV detective series
 c. a programme about facts d. a programme about fiction
20. Lions don't hunt
 a. if they are hungry b. unless they are hungry
 c. when they are hungry d. in case they are hungry
21. Both lions and zebras go to the water hole to
 a. hunt b. drink c. eat d. rest

B. Answer the following questions :

22. Why do you think the lion goes out at night? Why doesn't it do that during the day?
23. In what way are lions and zebras different? Mention at least TWO differences.
24. What would happen if meat eaters like lions disappeared? What would happen if grass eaters like giraffes disappeared?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

The city is full of movement, noise and excitement. That's where you can live among thousands of people but you feel lonely.

26. Translate into Arabic :

إن أحد أهم أسباب هجرة القري إلى المدن هو الوضع الاقتصادي، فالعمل في الزراعة لا يوفر نفس الدخل الذي يحصل عليه الفرد في المجالات الأخرى.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

A story that you know from a book or a film and write a summary about what happens in the story.

.....

.....

.....

اختبار تراكمي على كل ثلاث وحدات في الكراسة التفاعلية.

تلويح

Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

admire (d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	lie - lay - lain(v)	يرقد / يتمدد
adult (n - adj)	راشد / بالغ	lie - lied(v)	يَكْذِب
beat - beat - beaten (v)	يهزم	lying(adj)	ممدد - راقد
beginning(adj)	بداية	marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية
bite - bit - bitten (v)	يُعض - يقضم	marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
blood pressure (n)	ضغط الدم	monitor (ed) (v) (n)	يُراقب - جهاز عرض
boyhood (n)	صبا	move (d) (v)	ينتقل
champion (n)	بطل	national team (n)	المنتخب الوطني
character (n)	شخصية	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
competition (n)	مسابقة	pocket (n)	جيب
completely (adv)	بالكامل	puzzle (n)	لُغْز
desire (d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	recording (n)	التسجيل
dream - dreamed / dreamt	حلم - يحلم	run - ran - run (v)	يُدير - يجري
end (n)	نهاية / خاتمة	score (d) (v)	يُحرز
final (n)	نهائي	squash (n)	رياضة الاسكواش
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي	strange (adj)	غريب
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	success (n)	النجاح
generous (adj)	كريم - سخي	tiring (adj)	مُتعب
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	top (n)	أفضل - قمة
include (d) (v)	يتضمن / يشمل	twice (adv)	مرتين
inspire (d) (v)	يُلهم	volunteer (n)	متطوع
isolated (adj)	منعزل - وحيد	vote (d) (v - n)	تصويت / اقتراع -
join (ed) (v)	ينضم	wild (adj)	يُصَوِّت / يقترع
junior (n) (adj)	الناشئين		برّي
lay - laid - laid(v)	يضع - تبيض		

REVIEW 1

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Arsenal (n)	نادي أرسنال الإنجليزي	readers (n)	القراء
Basel (n)	نادي بازل السويسري	still (adv)	لا يزال
describe (d) (v)	يُصف	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
discuss (ed) (v)	يُناقش	team (n)	فريق
interesting (adj)	شيق	times (n)	مرات
low (adj)	منخفض	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
main (adj)	رئيسي	wife (n)	زوجة

Part II

Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	puzzles	يحل ألغاز	make	notes	بدون ملاحظات
go	wrong	يتعطل - يختل	reach	the final	يصل للمباراة النهائية
become	friends	يصبحون أصدقاء	run	the country	بدير البلد
have	a strong desire	لديه رغبة قوية	tell	a story	يحكي قصة
	a vote	يُجري اقتراع/ تصويت	win	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
include	information	يتضمن معلومات			

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the same time as	في نفس الوقت	play for	يلعب لـ
be good friends with	يكون علي صداقة قوية بـ	since the beginning	منذ البداية
be married to	متزوج من	squash World Open Championship	بطولة العالم المفتوحة للاسكواش
be well paid for	يحصل علي مقابل جيد علي	student volunteers	متطوعين من الطلاب
find out	يكشف	that's why	لهذا السبب
follow ... to	يتبع ... إلي	the first person	ضمير المتكلم
in fact	في الحقيقة	too low	منخفض جداً
in groups	في مجموعات	top player	أفضل لاعب
in pairs	في ثنائيات	work as volunteers	يعملون كمطوعين
main characters	الشخصيات الرئيسية	world champion	بطل العالم
move to	ينتقل إلي	World Junior Champion	بطل العالم للناشئين
plan a short story	يضع تصور للقصة القصيرة		

Listening & Reading Texts

1 Reading Text

1. Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces.⁽¹⁾ She was world champion⁽²⁾ of the squash⁽³⁾ World Open in 2017, when she beat⁽⁴⁾ another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice⁽⁵⁾ reached⁽⁶⁾ the final⁽⁷⁾ in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top⁽⁸⁾ women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team⁽⁹⁾ when she was only ten. She became World Junior⁽¹⁰⁾ Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition⁽¹¹⁾ as an adult⁽¹²⁾ in 2009. She is now married⁽¹³⁾ to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles,⁽¹⁴⁾ but it is her success⁽¹⁵⁾ at squash that has inspired⁽¹⁶⁾ many young Egyptians to play the game.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) شخصية
- (2) بطل
- (3) رياضة الاسكواش
- (4) يهزم
- (5) مرتين
- (6) يصل إلى
- (7) نهائي
- (8) أفضل
- (9) فريق
- (10) الناشئين
- (11) مسابقة
- (12) راشد / بالغ
- (13) متزوجة
- (14) يحل ألغاز
- (15) النجاح
- (16) يلهم

2. Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer⁽¹⁾. He is a strong⁽²⁾ player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team⁽³⁾ more than 60 times.⁽⁴⁾ He has scored⁽⁵⁾ more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved⁽⁶⁾ from his boyhood⁽⁷⁾ club⁽⁸⁾ Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010.

He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same⁽⁹⁾ time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland⁽¹⁰⁾ and joined⁽¹¹⁾ Basel,⁽¹²⁾ one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.⁽¹³⁾

He is still⁽¹⁴⁾ good friends with Salah. "I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning⁽¹⁵⁾ and he has not changed,⁽¹⁶⁾" he says.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) لاعب كرة قدم
- (2) قوي
- (3) المنتخب الوطني
- (4) مَرَّات
- (5) يُحرز
- (6) ينتقل
- (7) صبا
- (8) نادي
- (9) نفس
- (10) سويسرا
- (11) ينضم إلى
- (12) نادي بازل
- (13) نادي أرسنال
- (14) لا يزال
- (15) بداية
- (16) يتغير

3. How to write a short story

Why you write a long book when you can write a **short story**?⁽¹⁾ A short story can have 200 words or **less**.⁽²⁾ The writer can't **describe**⁽³⁾ many people or places and so there aren't so many **adjectives**⁽⁴⁾ in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a **middle**⁽⁵⁾ and an **end**⁽⁶⁾ to the story. And the story needs to be **interesting**,⁽⁷⁾ so we **include**⁽⁸⁾ important information and an interesting **main**⁽⁹⁾ character, but **perhaps**⁽¹⁰⁾ only one. **In fact**,⁽¹¹⁾ it can be interesting to write in **the first person**⁽¹²⁾ (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the **main character**.⁽¹³⁾

Readers⁽¹⁴⁾ can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a **surprise**,⁽¹⁵⁾ a problem or something that **goes wrong**.⁽¹⁶⁾ Readers don't always **find out**⁽¹⁷⁾ what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to **imagine**⁽¹⁸⁾ the end of the story.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) أقل
- (3) يصف
- (4) صفات
- (5) وسط
- (6) نهاية / خاتمة
- (7) مثير
- (8) يضمن
- (9) رئيسي
- (10) ربما
- (11) في الحقيقة
- (12) ضمير المتكلم
- (13) شخصية
- (14) القراء
- (15) مفاجأة
- (16) يتعطل - يختل
- (17) يكتشف
- (18) يتخيل

2 Listening Texts

Presenter : Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam : Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists now that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are causing. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of the

day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara : My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs ! The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So, when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach ! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir : I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem ! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now, I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants !

General Exercises on Units

1,2&3

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات Collected from SB & WB

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Smart cards everywhere nowadays.
a. use b. are used c. are using d. uses
2. Most football players a lot of money.
a. win b. beat c. earn d. fill
3. Tourism is when we protect touristic places.
a. crowded b. sustainable c. unique d. noisy
4. I my friend since September.
a. didn't see b. hadn't seen c. haven't seen d. wasn't seen
5. Village people build their houses with local
a. tourists b. environments c. animals d. materials
6. I passed the exam! I'm over the
a. moon b. ground c. sky d. earth
7. While I was revising my lesson, my mother dinner.
a. was preparing b. preparing c. is preparing d. prepares
8. When you visit the doctor, he or she often checks your blood
a. pressure b. levels c. speed d. score
9. My uncle is very He always buys me a big present when he visits me.
a. sustainable b. generous c. spicy d. unkind
10. The local people benefit when lions
a. is protected b. isn't protected c. are protected d. protects
11. I always try to food and clothes to my local charity.
a. sell b. want c. owe d. donate
12. Mona was leaning out of the boat when she her phone.
a. drops b. is dropping c. dropped d. was dropping
13. We all Mohamed Salah because he is polite and generous.
a. hate b. respect c. discourage d. avoid

14. Ahmed's parents have lived in the same house 25 years.
 a. when b. since c. for d. ago
15. The man stole a lot of money so he was sent to
 a. trek b. prison c. an organisation d. home
16. There are very few of these kinds of turtles now, they are
 a. safe b. isolated c. endangered d. dangerous

2 Complete the text with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets :

Last year, we (1) (travel) to the beautiful city of Venice in Italy. It was very crowded but we (2) (enjoy) our holiday. On the first day, we (3) (take) a boat trip on the Grand Canal. As we (4) (sail) along, my camera (5) (fall) into water! Of course I (6) (be) very angry, but then I found a shop and (7) (buy) a different camera on our way back to the hotel.

3 A. Translate into Arabic :

1. It's the first time I have ever done voluntary work.

.....

2. The pharaohs made a great civilization thousands of years ago.

.....

B. Translate into English :

١. تطور مصر السياحة البيئية لكي تحمي البيئات المختلفة بساحل البحر الأحمر.

.....

٢. أعطاني أبي هذا الكتاب في الأسبوع الماضي ولكنى لم أنتهى من قراءته حتى الآن.

.....

4 Read the text and answer the question :

Short Story

It was late and Sara wasn't expecting visitors. She sat alone in her room, with only her laptop and books for company. Her phone was off

and she wasn't checking her email. There were too many people in her life with too many problems. And Sara was trying to write her first short story.

She imagined wild adventures in distant lands full of exciting people, but Sara knew that she had to keep it simple. As she looked at the empty screen, an idea began to build in her imagination. It was a simple idea and people would understand. She began to type. The words came easily, filling the screen. Then the lights went out and Sara sat in the dark. Now there was only one question : did she remember to save her work ?

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. Sara kept herself away from everything because she wanted to
 - a. have time to be with herself
 - b. think of a new idea for her story
 - c. think of a solution to a problem she has
2. What did she often do when it was raining ?
 - a. write stories
 - b. read stories
 - c. email friends
3. The closest meaning to distant is
 - a. busy
 - b. remote and far away
 - c. not having a lot of people
4. What problem did the main character have ?
 - a. She lost her story.
 - b. She forgot her story.
 - c. There was no electricity.

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What would you do if you were in Sara's place ?
6. Is it important to have a good imagination ? Why / Why not ?
7. What do you think Sara will do next ?

5 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write a review of a book that you like. Include the title of the book, the main characters, a summary of the plot and who you would recommend the book to.
2. Describe a story that you want to read. What kind of story is it ? Who is in the story and where does it happen ?

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 4

Making new friends

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 110 : 114

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

★ Reading :

A magazine article about moving to a new town

★ Writing :

An email to a magazine's problem page

★ Listening :

A radio phone-in about bullying at school

★ Speaking :

Having a debate

★ Language :

Articles, Countable/ uncountable nouns

★ Life skills :

Respect for diversity; Communication



لاتقان الوحدة

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
- ملحق المهارات.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

address (ed) (n - v)	عنوان - يخاطب	nurse (d) (v)	تُمرض - ترعى المرضى
advice (n)	نصيحة	nurse (n)	ممرضة
bully (ied) (v)	يُتنمّر - يُبلّطج	nursing (n)	التمريض
bully (n)	بلطجي - مُتنمّر	phone-in (n)	برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً
bullying (n)	البلطجة - التنمّر	police (d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط
cheat (ed) (v)	يفش	police (n)	الشرطة
cheat (n)	غشاش	policing (n)	فرض الأمن والانضباط
cheating (n)	الغش	populate (d) (v)	يُعمّر مكان
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
communication (n)	تواصل - اتصال	produce (d) (v)	يُنتج
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال	production (n)	إنتاج
connect (ed) (v)	يوصل - يربط	pronounce (d) (v)	ينطق
connected (adj)	مرتبط - متصل	pronunciation (n)	النطق
inform (ed) (v)	يُعلم - يُخبر	take ... for granted	يُسلم به
information (n)	معلومة / معلومات		
noticeboard (n)	لوحة الإعلانات		

2 Definitions تعريفات

advice	نصيحة	an opinion someone gives to help you
bully (ied) (v)	يُتنمّر - يبتز	to threaten يهدد to hurt someone or frighten يخيف them, especially someone smaller or weaker
bully (n)	بلطجي - مُتنمّر	someone who uses their strength قوة or power to frighten يخيف or hurt يؤذي someone who is weaker
bullying (n)	البلطجة - التنمّر	the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker
cheat (ed) (v)	يفش	to act in a dishonest غير أمينة way in order to gain يحصل علي an advantage, especially خاصة in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.

cheat (n) غشاش	someone who acts يتصرف in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheating (n) الغش	acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
connection رابط - صلة	something that brings people together
noticeboard لوحة الإعلانات	a thing on a wall that people put information on
nurse (d) (v) تُمرِّض - ترعى المرضى	to look after يرضي someone who is ill or injured مصاب
nurse (n) ممرضة	someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital
nursing (n) التمريض	the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old
phone-in (n) برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً	a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary عادي people expressing عن opinions or asking questions over the telephone
police (d) (v) يفرض الأمن والانضباط	to keep control يسيطر على over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property الملكية are protected محمي , using a police force قوة
police (n) الشرطة	the people who work for an official organisation هيئة رسمية whose job is to catch criminals المجرمين and make sure that people obey يُطيع the law القانون
suffix اللاحقة / المقطع النهائي	a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word
take ... for granted يُسَلَّم بـ	to think something is true or will stay the same

3 Important Vocabulary

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	serious (adj)	خطير - جاد
allowed (adj)	مسموح به	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلي
anymore (adv)	مرة أخرى	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	list (ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يضع في قائمة
call (ed) (v)	يستدعي - يطلب / يتصل بـ	nasty (adj)	فبيح - ذميم
circle (d) (n - v)	دائرة - يرسم دائرة - يحيط بـ	negative (adj)	سلبى
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	online (adj - adv)	على الإنترنت
concerned (adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	optional (adj)	اختياري
contain (ed) (v)	يحتوي علي	personal (adj)	شخصي
contractions (n)	اختصارات	point (ed) (v)	يشير
conversation (n)	محادثة	positive (adj)	إيجابي
cool (adj)	علي الموضة - جميل / جذاب	practice (n)	ممارسة - تدريب
debate (d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يناقش	prefer (red) (v)	يُفضل
diversity (n)	التنوع	recipient (n)	مُتلقي - مُتَسَلِّم
drop (ped) (v - n)	يُسْقَط - قَطْرَة	salutation (n)	تحيةة
expressions (n)	تعابير	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر	spend - spent (v)	يقضي
face (d) (n - v)	وَجْه - يواجه	stressed (adj)	مضغوط (نفسياً)
feel - felt (v)	تبدو / تُعْطِي إحساس	team sports (n)	رياضات جماعية
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل / يتشاجر مع	teammates (n)	زملاء الفريق
fortunately (adv)	لِحُسْنِ الحظ	teenager (n)	مُراهق
friendship (n)	صداقة	true (adj)	حقبني - صحيح
header (n)	راس الصفحة	useful (adj)	مفيد
hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخْفِي - يُخْبِي	wear - wore -	يرتدي
highlight (ed) (n - v)	الجزء الأهم - يُبرز	worn (v)	
host (ed) (n - v)	مضيف - يستضيف	welcome (d) (v)	يُرحِّب بـ

4 Extra Vocabulary

article (n)	مقال	physical (adj)	بدني / جسدي - مادي
classroom (n)	حجرة الدراسة	project (n)	مشروع
copy (ied) (n - v)	نُسخة - ينسخ	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
decide (d) (v)	يقرر - يختار	reason (n)	سبب
dialogue (n)	حوار	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
effect (n)	أثر	save (d) (v)	يُنقذ

greeting (n)
however (conj. - adv)
marks (n)
neighbour (n)

تحية
مع ذلك
درجات
جار
spelling (n)
subject (n)
try (ied) (v)

تَهْجِي الكلمات
موضوع
يُجَرَّب - يحاول

Part II

More about Vocabulary

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	different to / from	يكون مختلف عن	give	advice on	ينصح بخصوص
	not welcome here	غير مُرَحَّب به هنا		an opinion	يعطي رأي
	right to	يكون مُحَق في		information	يعطي معلومات
call	the police	يطلب الشرطة	go	online	يدخل على الإنترنت
do	a sport	يمارس رياضة	have	a class debate	يُنظَّم مناظرة بين الطُّلاب
	extra practice	يقوم بتدريبات إضافية		a class vote	يجري اقتراع بين الطُّلاب
	team sports	يمارس رياضة جماعية		an effect on	له أثر علي
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة		exams	لديه امتحانات
feel	at home	يشعر بالراحة	join	clubs	ينضم لأندية
	better	يشعر بتحسُّن	make	friends	يُكوِّن صداقات
	connected to	لديه ارتباط بـ	pass	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	like	يرغب في / يريد - يشعر كأنه	start	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
	safe	يشعر بالأمان		a new school	ينتقل لمدرسة جديدة
	so hard	تبدو صعبة جداً	take	for granted	يأخذ ... كأمر مُسَلَّم به
	stressed	يشعر بأنه مضغوط		a photo	يلتقط صورة
fight	the bullies	يقاتل المتنمرين		turns	يتبادل الأدوار
get	good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة		practice	يتمرن

Mini Test (1)

Collocations

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- One can say that one or takes a practice.
a. sells b. makes c. practises d. does
- He can't a connection between them.
a. do b. make c. have d. take
- My sister and I usually turns to do the washing up. غسيل الأواني
a. are b. feel c. give d. take
- I don't online until I have finished all my jobs.
a. do b. go c. have d. make
- I was asked to my opinion on the new design.
a. be b. feel c. give d. take
- It wasn't easy for me to a new school where I knew no one.
a. do b. go c. have d. start
- I can't sleep. I so stressed
a. fight b. feel c. give d. take
- team sports helps you mix تختلط with others and be sociable. اجتماعي
a. Doing b. Going c. Calling d. Making
- He left his job because the manager told him that he not welcome there.
a. was b. felt c. gave d. took
- The class debates we every Monday are interesting.
a. do b. go c. have d. are

2

Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
cheat(ed) (v)	يغش deceive / trick
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام conclusion / end / ending
concerned(adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام interested / affected / connected
connection(n)	ارتباط - اتصال link / relationship / relation
cool(adj)	علي الموضة / جذاب fashionable
nurse(d) (v)	تُمرض - ترعى المرضى care for / take care of / look after
police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط control / keep in order / keep under control / regulate

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
agree(d) (v)	disagree(d) (v)
angry(adj)	contented / satisfied - pleased
borrow(ed) (v)	lend - lent (v)
busy(adj)	free(adj)
effect(n)	cause / reason(n)
exciting(adj)	boring(adj)
forget - forgot - forgotten (v)	remember(ed) (v)
kind(adj)	unkind(adj)
optional(adj)	compulsory(adj)
personal(adj)	public(adj)
positive(adj)	negative(adj)
right(adj)	wrong(adj)
save(d) (v)	endanger(ed) (v)
save(d) (v)	waste(d) (v)
with (prep. - adv)	without (prep - adv)

Mini Test (2)

Synonyms & Antonyms

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "You shouldn't waste your time." In this sentence, the words 'not waste' can be best replace by

- a. rescue b. spend c. save d. waist

2. "This area is policed by the army" الجيش. The verb "policed" here means

- a. disagreed b. controlled c. regulated d. b & c

3. Both reason and are antonyms of the word effect.

- a. affection b. affect c. influence d. cause

4. "All parents are concerned with their children's health." In this sentence, the words 'concerned with' can be replaced by

- a. interested in b. affected by c. interesting to d. effect on

5. Optional and compulsory are
 a. opposites b. antonyms c. synonyms d. a & b
6. "She nurses her old mother." "Nurses' here is a synonym of
 a. looks for b. takes turns c. looks after d. takes off

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a magazine's problem page	صفحة شكاوى القراء فى مجلة	on my own	بمفردي
a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور تليفونيا	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
address ... by title	يخاطب ... باللقب	part of a team	عضو في فريق
address ... by name	يخاطب ... بالاسم	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
angry with	غاضب من	pieces of advice	نصائح
any more	مرة أخرى	radio show	برنامج إذاعي
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عال
ask someone to your house	يطلب من شخص أن يأتي لمتزلك	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
at break-time	فى الفسحة	instead of	بدلاً من
be stressed about	مضغوط بسبب	make it easier	يجعل من الأسهل
bullying at school	التنمر فى المدرسة	revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات
cheating in exams	الغش فى الامتحانات	save money	يوفر مال
find advice for	يجد نصيحة لـ	say unkind things about	يتحدث بسوء عن
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	show the reason for	يوضح السبب
high grades	درجات مرتفعة	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعاً نضحك	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
nursing people	تمريض الناس	the reason for	سبب لـ
		where to go	أين يذهب
		who else	من أيضاً

5 Verb + Preposition

address ... by	يخاطب ... بـ	get to	يصل إلى
ask for	يطلب	go out	يخرج
check ... for	يفحص ... للوصول إلى	point at / to / towards	يشير إلى
come out	يخرج - تصدر	reply to	يرد على
connect with	يرتبط بـ	say ... about	يقول ... عن
focus on	يركز على	talk to	يتحدث إلى

Mini Test (3)

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1. You need to check your essay mistakes.
a. with b. by c. for d. at
2. Here's advice on how to speak English well.
a. an b. some c. any d. many
3. It took me an hour to get the airport.
a. of b. off c. on d. to
4. Wait a moment and I will tell you where good clothes.
a. to buy b. buy c. do you buy d. b & c
5. The officer asked me to point the photo of the thief.
a. to b. at c. of d. a & b
6. I spend a nice time my cousins in the countryside.
a. on b. in c. with d. as
7. Don't believe everything people post social media.
a. of b. on c. out d. down
8. Civilized مُتَحَضِّر people show respect diversity.
a. for b. from c. at d. without
9. I sometimes call this radio phone-
a. on b. in c. at d. off
10. As as I'm concerned, money is not his only problem.
a. soon b. well c. far d. a & c

Part III

Vocabulary Study

1 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

practice (n)

ممارسة - تدريب

• practice (n)

- You need more **practice** to achieve more progress. تحقق المزيد من التقدم.

يمارس - يتدرب

• practise (v)

- لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية الأمريكية تُستخدَم (practice) كإسم وفعل:

- I **practised / practiced** speaking English by talking to my online English friends.

يؤدي تمرين

• do / take practice

- He **did** the guitar **practice**.

advise (on / about / to) (v)

• advise (on / about / to) (v)

- I **advised** her to work hard.

بنصح

• advice (on / about) (n)

- I gave him **advice** about his future.

نصيحة

- لاحظ أن كلمة (advice) لا تُعد وتُعامل معاملة المفرد.

- I gave him **an / one advice**. (x)

- I gave him **some many / a few / several advices**. (x)

- I gave him **two / three advices**. (x)

- I gave him **some advice**. (✓)

- I gave him **a piece of advice**. (✓)

- I gave him **pieces of advice**. (✓)

• tip - tips (n)

- I gave him **a tip** about his future.

نصيحة - نصائح

noticeboard (n)

• noticeboard (n)

لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية البريطانية)

- You can find the company's email on the **noticeboard**.

• bulletin board (n)

لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)

- You can find the company's email on the **bulletin board**.

nursing (n)

• nursing (n)

التريض / رعاية المرضى

- It is known that **nursing** is very important for patients.

• nursery (n)

حضانة

- My wife had to find a **nursery** for our little daughter.

• nursery (n)

حضانة

- After Ahmed was born, he was put in a **nursery** because he had a difficulty in breathing. كان لديه مشكلة في التنفس.

• nursery (n)

مشتل (مكان لزراعة النباتات والأشجار لبيعها)

- I went to a **nursery** to buy some plants for my garden.

Mini Test (4)

Clear the Confusion

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We went to a to buy flowers.

- a. nursery b. nursing c. planets d. plants

2. He gave me advice on how to make a time plan.

- a. an b. some c. a piece of d. b & c

3. You need some more to be better at goalkeeping.

- a. practice b. practise c. practises d. practised

4. patients in hospitals is an important job.

- a. Nursery b. Nurses c. Nursing d. Nursed

جزء لتنمية مهاراتك اللغوية التي تحتاج الى معرفة اكثر
من المفردات اللغوية الآتية ومشتقاتها واستخداماتها.

تنويه

2 More about key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

bully

• bully (n)

بلطجي

- We called the police to arrest the bullies.

• bully (v)

يُبلطج - يتنمر

- Older children usually bully younger or weaker ones.

• bully (... into) (v)

يبتز - يساوم

- The manager bullied me into leaving my job.

• bullying (n)

البلطجة

- Bullying is a big problem in slums. المناطق العشوائية.

cheat

• cheat (at / in) (v)

يغش

- He used a mobile to cheat in the test.

• cheat (v)

يخدع - يحتال على - يخون

- He was arrested because he cheated an old woman out of her money.

• cheat (n)

غشاش - نصاب

- Don't trust this cheat.

• cheating (n)

غش - نصب

- Cheating is a crime.

connect

- **connect (to / with) (v)** يربط - يُوصِل
 - **Connect** the charger الشاحن to the mobile, please.
 - **connect (with) (v)** يرتبط - يكون على علاقة بـ
 - The parliament member can **connect with** his voters الناخبين.
 - **connected (to / with / by) (adj)** متصل بـ / مرتبط - على علاقة بـ
 - The computer is **connected** to the internet.
 - **connection (to / with / between) = link (n)** اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة
 - The **connection** between the computer and the printer has failed.
- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :
- have a connection to / with على علاقة بـ - متصل بـ
 - see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...
 - make a connection يُوجد علاقة - يربط بين
 - stop a connection ينهي العلاقة - يفصل

address

- **address (n)** عنوان
 - He changed his **address**.
- **address (n)** خطبة رسمية - كلمة رسمية
 - The Prime Minister's **address** رئيس الوزراء was clear and direct. واضح ومباشر
- **address (v)** يُعنون - يضع عنوان
 - He **addressed** the letter and sent it by post.
- **address (to) (v)** يخاطب - يوجه الحديث أو الطلب رسميًا إلى
 - Don't **address** these tourists in French. They're English.
 - You must **address** the application طلب الالتحاق **to** the manager.
- **address (by) (v)** يخاطب ... بـ (الاسم / اللقب)
 - It is impolite to **address** an older person **by** their name.
- **address ... as (v)** يخاطب ... كـ / يُلقَّب ... بـ
 - Why do you **address** him **as** Mr not Dr?
- **address (v)** يُلقي خطبة أو كلمة
 - The President **addressed** the parliament. البرلمان
- **address (v)** يناقش - يُلقي الضوء على
 - This essay does not **address** the real causes of the problem.
- **address yourself to (v)** يتفكر في كيفية التعامل مع موقف أو مشكلة
 - We need to **address ourselves to** the water pollution problem.
- **addressee (n)** المُخاطب - المُتلقّي
 - Make sure that the **addressees** received the letters.

debate

• debate (over / about / between) (n)

مُناظرة / مُناقشة

- The new law is still under **debate** in the parliament.
- There's a **debate** over the solutions حلول of the traffic problem on TV.

• debate (with) (v)

يتباحث / يناقش - يفكر بحرص

- The new law is still **debated** in the parliament.
- He **debates** with his friends on how to spend the weekend.

nurse

• nurse (n)

مُمرضة - مُمرّض

- She is still a student **nurse** in the local health care centre.

• nurse (v)

يرعى مريض - يُمرّض

- He was **nursed** by a good woman called Hana.

• nurse (v)

تعمل بالتمريض

- She is **nursing** in a big hospital in Cairo.

• nurse (v)

تُرضع - تقوم بإرضاع

- Mothers **nurse** their babies until they are two.

• nurse (v)

يُرضع

- Babies **nurse** until they are two.

• nursing (n)

التمريض

- She studies **nursing** at Assuit University.

police

• police (n)

الشرطة

- The **police** have arrested some criminals.

- لاحظ أن الاسم (police) دائماً جمع ويأخذ فعل جمع:

- The police are responsible مسئول for law enforcement. فرض القانون.

ولاحظ المتلازمات التالية:

- call the police يتصل بالشرطة / يستدعي الشرطة

- tell / inform the police يُبلغ الشرطة

- report ... to the police ... يُبلغ الشرطة عن ...

• police (v)

يفرض الأمن والانضباط - يتحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير

- The officer asked for more soldiers to **police** the city centre.

• policing (n)

فرض الأمن والانضباط - التحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير

- **Policing** is the responsibility of the government.

3 Prefixes بادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Examples	أمثلة
dis-			لا - غير	disagree(d)	يرفض
extra-			إضافي - زائد	extraordinary	استثنائي / خارق
pre-			قبل	prefix	بادئة
semi-			نصف	semi-final	نصف نهائي

4 suffixes ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- hood	تُكوّن اسم	boyhood الصبا
- tion	• تُكوّن اسم	pronunciation النطق
		information معلومة / معلومات
		production إنتاج
-ess	تُكوّن اسم مؤنث	hostess مَضيفَة
		waitress نادلة
-ion	تُكوّن اسم	connection ارتباط / اتصال
		communication تواصل - اتصال
		population (عدد) السكان
-ship	تُكوّن اسم	friendship الصداقة

5 Listening & Reading Texts

1 Reading Texts

A. New in town

It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the paper⁽¹⁾ and pens you need. You're wearing⁽²⁾ cool⁽³⁾ new clothes. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels⁽⁴⁾ so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed⁽⁵⁾, but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.

(SB page 43)



Check Vocabulary

- ورق
- يرتدى
- جميل / جذاب
- نبوا / نعطى إحساس
- مضغوط (نفسياً)

Don't take it for granted⁽⁶⁾ that other students will start a conversation.⁽⁷⁾ Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try⁽⁸⁾ asking them about their favourite⁽⁹⁾ subjects⁽¹⁰⁾ or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal⁽¹¹⁾ questions.

You can only make friends⁽¹²⁾ if you spend⁽¹³⁾ time with them! The best way to do this is to join⁽¹⁴⁾ clubs or do team sports⁽¹⁵⁾ you like. Go online⁽¹⁶⁾ or look at the noticeboard⁽¹⁷⁾ at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates⁽¹⁸⁾ will feel connected⁽¹⁹⁾ to you and that connection⁽²⁰⁾ could become a friendship.⁽²¹⁾

While you're busy⁽²²⁾ talking to other students, don't forget⁽²³⁾ to study. Remember⁽²⁴⁾ to do your homework so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

- (6) يكون على يقين / يظن
(7) محادثة
(8) يجرب - يحاول
(9) مفضل
(10) موضوعات
(11) شخصي
(12) يكون صداقات
(13) يقضي
(14) ينضم إلى
(15) رياضات جماعية
(16) يدخل على الإنترنت
(17) لوحة الإعلانات
(18) زملاء الفريق
(19) مرتبط
(20) الارتباط
(21) صداقة
(22) مشغول
(23) ينسى
(24) يتذكر

B. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (SB page 44)

Subject : Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!

Dear Aunt⁽¹⁾ Carol,

I think it is difficult to make friends. I don't have any friends at my school. I am always on my own⁽²⁾ at break-time⁽³⁾. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me, but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عمّة / خالة
(2) وحيد
(3) وقت الفسحة

C. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (SB page 44)

Subject : Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard at school, but I'm really stressed⁽¹⁾ about some exams⁽²⁾ I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very challenging. The last exam is in a subject⁽³⁾ I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better.

I need some advice about how to relax⁽⁴⁾, please.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مضغوط
(2) امتحانات
(3) موضوع / مادة
(4) يسترخي

2 Listening text



A. Radio phone - in about bullying (SB page 46)

Radio show host : Good evening everyone.

Welcome to the show.

Tonight, we're talking about bullying⁽¹⁾. Unfortunately⁽²⁾, a lot of teenagers⁽³⁾ are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects⁽⁴⁾ on them.

We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied.

Ali... are you **on the line**⁽⁵⁾?

Ali

: Hi Seleem. How are you?

Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali

: I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football.

Last week they hid my rucksack⁽⁶⁾. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host : Oh no! That's terrible. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali

: No, I didn't. I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host : Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies⁽⁷⁾ and make it clear⁽⁸⁾ that they shouldn't behave⁽⁹⁾ like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.

Ali

: Yes... you're right... There's one teacher that I get along well⁽¹⁰⁾ with. I'll talk to him.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) بلطجة / تنمر
- (2) لسوء الحظ
- (3) المراهقين
- (4) آثار سلبية
- (5) متصل / على الخط
- (6) حقيبة الظهر
- (7) البلطجية / المتنمرين
- (8) يوضح
- (9) يتصرف / يسلك
- (10) يتسامح مع / يتعاطف مع

B. Ola and Lina giving their opinions

(SB page 47)

Ola : So, do you think moving to⁽¹⁾ a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers?

Lina : As far as I'm concerned⁽²⁾, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends⁽³⁾.

Ola : I'm not so sure about⁽⁴⁾ that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations with⁽⁵⁾ them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

Lina : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time⁽⁶⁾. You'll be really lonely⁽⁷⁾ for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's a good experience⁽⁸⁾ to have because it makes you stronger⁽⁹⁾.

Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الانتقال إلى
- (2) على حد علمي / في رأيي
- (3) يكون صداقات جديدة
- (4) متأكد من
- (5) يبدأ حديث مع
- (6) يستغرق وقت
- (7) منعزل
- (8) تجربة جيدة
- (9) تجعلك قوياً

3 Workbook texts

A. If you want to pass⁽¹⁾ your exams, (WB page 111)
my advice is to always do your homework. Remember the information that your teacher gives you about the exam because it will help you. For a week or two before any exams, don't go out with your friends. Save⁽²⁾ your money and do some extra⁽³⁾ practice instead. It'll be really useful!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) تجتاز
- (2) يوفر - يدخر
- (3) زائد - إضافي

B. It is not easy to be a teenager⁽¹⁾ and students (WB page 111)
often need some help when they are at school. So, what problems do they have? Some students feel like⁽²⁾ they don't have time to revise⁽³⁾ for exams. They can also feel stressed about the work they get for homework.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُراهق
- (2) يشعر كأنه
- (3) يُراجع

So, who can they ask for some advice? They can always ask a teacher or their family. If they have a good friend, he or she can help too.

(WB page 112)

C. Maged : Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however⁽¹⁾, he borrowed⁽²⁾ my phone without⁽³⁾ asking. Then he dropped⁽⁴⁾ the phone. Fortunately⁽⁵⁾, the phone did not break⁽⁶⁾, but I was very angry⁽⁷⁾ with him. Now he's not talking to me.

Omar : Fawzi always gets good marks⁽⁸⁾ at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh.⁽⁹⁾

Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom⁽¹⁰⁾. Now he doesn't want to make us laugh any more⁽¹¹⁾.

Hoda : There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind⁽¹²⁾ things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media.⁽¹³⁾ Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today she was pointing⁽¹⁴⁾ at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مع ذلك
- (2) يستعير / يستلف
- (3) بدون
- (4) يُسْقِط
- (5) لحسن الحظ
- (6) ينكسر
- (7) غاضب
- (8) درجات
- (9) يضحك
- (10) حجرة الدراسة
- (11) مرة أخرى
- (12) سيء / قاسي
- (13) لائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- (14) يشير

D. Salem : Do you think it is a good or bad thing to move to a new school in another⁽¹⁾ town ?

(WB page 113)

Sayed : As far as I'm concerned⁽²⁾ it can be a good thing. You can meet new people and learn different things.



Salem : I'm not so sure about that. I think I'd find it very difficult at a new school. Everything would be new and different⁽³⁾.

Sayed : I agree, but new things can be exciting, and you'll soon have new friends too.

Salem : In my opinion⁽⁴⁾ your old friends are your best friends.

Sayed : Yes, but I think, you can never have too many friends. One day, your new friends will be your best old friends !

Salem : That's true⁽⁵⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) أخرى
- (2) بقدر اهتمامي
- (3) مختلف
- (4) من رأيي
- (5) هذا صحيح

General Exercises

On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Warm up

تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

1. If you can leave a question in an exam, this question is

(المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)

- a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory

2. You can find information about the school library on the school

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٠)

- a. communication b. connection c. noticeboard d. forecast

3. It is important to respect the of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours.

(كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٠)

- a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation

4. The countryside is mainly by farmers and their families .

(كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٠)

- a. populated b. population c. polluted d. pollution

5. It is for children to play in the street. This is always rejected.

(قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٠)

- a. inadvisable b. advisable c. necessary d. essential

6. isn't allowed at this school as using muscles or power to hurt others is prohibited.

(أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)

- a. Polling b. Bullying c. Pulling d. Bull

7. It's taken for granted means

(الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٠)

- a. unfortunately b. undoubtedly c. unwillingly d. unsafely

8. Doctors think that there is a between smoking and cancer.

(بنني سويف - بيا ٢٠٢٠)

- a. ecosystem b. communication
c. conservation d. connection

9. The forces were brought in to the city centre. (بنني سويف - سمسطا ٢٠٢٠)

- a. managed b. politics c. police d. policy

10. Students who in this exam will be excluded and face severe punishment.

(أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٠)

- a. achieve b. sheet c. cheat d. succeed

II Key & important vocabulary

11. Although I live in a big city where there are lots of people, I often find myself feeling
 a. only b. unique c. single d. lonely
12. She's been feeling very since she started her new job.
 a. stress b. stressing c. stressful d. stressed
13. It's not wise to bullies because they have nothing to lose.
 a. call b. populate c. fight d. avoid
14. Did you form any close while you were at school?
 a. friendly b. a friend c. friendships d. friends'
15. What comes after is good news.
 a. regularly b. fortunately c. gradually d. suddenly
16. Some parents have bad memories of their own years.
 a. teenage b. teenager c. marvellous d. splendid
17. Many students hate school because of being regularly.
 a. bully b. bullying c. bullied d. stolen
18. He was at the police station yesterday to receive his stolen car.
 a. cooled b. called c. told d. gone
19. I don't doubt my father's advice. I always take it
 a. out b. back c. easy d. for granted
20. Our company offered to the conference المؤتمر in a five-star hotel.
 a. stress b. highlight c. host d. express
21. This problem needs urgent solutions. حلول عاجلة
 a. serious b. useful c. cool d. concerned
22. Sama her father's car keys in her bag.
 a. wore b. hid c. saluted d. fought
23. You won't succeed if you don't have support from other
 a. contractions b. diversity c. salutations d. teammates
24. He becomes nervous when he a difficult situation.
 a. stresses b. faces c. welcomes d. drops
25. a club and doing a team sport help you make new friends.
 a. Joining b. Pointing c. Closing d. Calling
26. Tell this unkind person that he is not in our organisation.
 a. personal b. concerned c. physical d. welcome

27. I can't give you my opinion about the football team as I am not
 a. favourite b. useful c. fortunate d. concerned
28. His clothes make a lot of people admire him.
 a. fashioned b. dirty c. cold d. cool
29. People who are sociable اجتماعي find it easy to start with others.
 a. contractions b. problems c. conversations d. expression
30. My school bag is full. There's no room مكان for books.
 a. this b. no c. less d. extra
31. have made communication easier.
 a. Facebook b. Twitter c. WhatsApp d. Social media

III Derivatives, synonyms, antonyms & word-building

32. My granddad always gives me pieces of
 a. advises b. advice c. advices d. an advice
33. My granddad always me.
 a. advises b. advice c. advices d. an advice
34. Advice is to as cheat is to trick.
 a. advise b. tip c. nasty d. practice
35. If you want to be good at doing something, you need to it regularly.
 a. pronounce b. pronunciation c. practice d. practise
36. If you want to be good at doing something, you need regular
 a. pronounce b. pronunciation c. practice d. practise
37. Agree is to refuse as is to negative.
 a. cool b. concerned c. positive d. personal
38. Those people the poor workers into working for them.
 a. bully b. bullies c. bullying d. bully's
39. Through, those people frighten the poor workers to work for them.
 a. bully b. bullies c. bullying d. bully's
40. Those frighten the poor workers to work for them.
 a. bully b. bullies c. bullying d. bully's
41. a short story is another name for ending it.
 a. Closing b. Shutting c. Opening d. Planning
42. Don't look at the dictionary during the exam. That's
 a. cheats b. cheat c. cheating d. cheated

43. He is looking at the dictionary during the exam. He is a
 a. cheats b. cheat c. cheating d. cheated
44. He in the exam from a dictionary.
 a. cheats b. cheat c. cheating d. cheater
45. He no longer plays squash. This means he doesn't play squash
 a. no longer b. anymore c. too d. either
46. There is a strong between long work hours and stress. الضغط
 a. connects b. connected c. connection d. disconnect
47. Stress is strongly to long work hours.
 a. connects b. connected c. connection d. disconnect
48. This expert between long work hours and stress.
 a. connects b. connect c. connection d. disconnect
49. Public is anonymous to
 a. common b. publicity c. personality d. personal
50. She the application to the general manager.
 a. address b. addressed c. addressee d. addressable

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Getting the Nobel Prize was the of Naguib Mahfouz's life.
 a. addressee b. project c. highlight d. punctuation
2. He is still what to do. It isn't easy for him to decide.
 a. debating b. preferring c. expressing d. believing
3. The flowers and plants on my balcony have been bought from a nearby
 a. contraction b. concern c. nursing d. nursery
4. It is the right of a baby to
 a. contain b. nurse c. fight d. host
5. The use of guns and other weapons must be
 a. connected b. closed c. policed d. listed
6. It is known to us all that are usually cowards جبناء. They only look strong against the weak.
 a. bullying b. bullies c. teammates d. friendships
7. One can say that one or takes a practice.
 a. sells b. makes c. practises d. does

8. A secretary is supposed to have the ability to with all staff members.

- a. practise b. pronounce c. connect d. salute

9. We have to ourselves to the problem of water shortage. نقص

- a. address b. allow c. list d. practise

10. I used the cursor المؤشر to the title of the essay. المقال

- a. experience b. decide c. inform d. highlight

Part IV

Structure

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة



شاهد وتعلم

1 Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

a girl

girls

an egg

eggs

a bus

buses

a library

libraries

هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular مفرد	Plural جمع
child	children أطفال
crisis	crises أزمات
datum	data معلومات
foot	feet أقدام
goose	geese أوز
man	men رجال
medium	media وسائل الإعلام
mouse	mice فئران
oasis	oases واحات
ox	oxen ثيران
phenomenon	phenomena ظواهر
tooth	teeth أسنان
woman	women نساء

قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
one	- One student got the full mark.
every / each	- Every player in the team should train hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
this / that	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

these هؤلاء / **those** أولئك / **some** بعض / **any** أي / **many** كثير / **a few** قليل / **two / three** / **several** عديد / **lots of** كثير من / **a lot of** كثير من

- ex.** - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

2 Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

1. Liquids السوائل

water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.

2. gases الغازات

oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.

3. Meals الوجبات

breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. school subjects

history - mathematics - physics الفيزياء - biology الأحياء ... etc.

5. Languages اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

6. **Different activities** الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

7. **sports** الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

8. **Materials** أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime - stone - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

9. **Natural phenomena** الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain

10. **Abstract nouns** الأسماء المجردة

honesty امانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية - confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم - evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر etc.

11. **other nouns**

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish - equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work - clothing الملابس - electricity الكهرباء - news - machinery ماكينات - luggage امتعة - baggage حقائب - traffic مرور - information - oil - advice - water - money - music - bread - cloth.... etc.

تستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that.....

- ex. - I'd like to have **a little juice**. (Not : a few juice)
- **How much money** do you need? (Not : How many)

لا يمكن استخدام (a - an - one - those - these) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

- ex. - This **equipment** is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought **bread** at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

- ex. - I spent **an enjoyable time** in the countryside.
- He had **a good education** at Oxford.

3 Quantifiers التعبيرات الكمية والعددية

1. **a lot of / lots of** كثير من + **plural** جمع / **uncountable** لا يعد

- تستخدم (a lot of) في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد :

- ex. - I have a lot / lots of books.
- She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

2. **many** كثير من / عديد + **plural** جمع

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد في صيغة الجمع وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام :

- ex. - Have you got many books ?
- Yes, I have got a lot of books.
- No, I haven't got many books.

3. **much** كثير من + **uncountable** لا يعد

- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام :

- ex. - Did you drink much coffee ?
- Yes, I drank a lot of coffee.
- No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4. **a few / few** قليل + **plural** جمع

a few = some / a small number

few = not many / almost none

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل :

- ex. - There are a few people sitting at the back of the hall.
- He has few interests outside his work.

5. **a little / little** قليل + **uncountable** لا يعد

a little = some / a small amount

little = not much / almost nothing

- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة :

- ex. - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6. **some** بعض

- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد في الحالات التالية :

1. Affirmative الإثبات

- ex. - There are some apples in the kitchen.
- The doctor gave me some medicine for her.

2. Offering تقديم عروض

ex. - Would you like **some** sandwiches and some juice?

3. Request الطلب

ex. - Can you give me **some** paper and some pens?

7. **any** أي

- تستخدم (**any**) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد في الحالات التالية :

1. Negative النفي

ex. - He didn't have **any** sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام

ex. - Is there **any** tomatoes or any cheese in the fridge?

3. Hardly any

ex. - There is **hardly any** milk left.

4. Any at all

ex. - I don't have **any** money **at all**.

- لاحظ ما يلي :

no + فعل مثبت = **any** + فعل منفي

ex. - He hasn't got **any** friends. = He has got no friends.

ex. - I am not a teacher. = I am no teacher.

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

① عندما تربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فإن الفعل بعدهما يكون جمعاً في كل الأحوال :

- Meat and chicken **are** sources of protein.

- You and I **have** to leave early.

② الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول مفرد أو لا يُعد هي (inf. + s / es / ies) : is / was / has

- This man **is** kind.

- The car **was** repaired.

- Milk **makes** us healthy.

③ الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول جمع هي (are / were / have / infinitive) :

- These men **are** kind.

- The cars **were** repaired.

Notes for advanced level

ملاحظات للمتفوقين

١ يمكن أن تُستخدم (many - much) في الجملة المُثبتة في الحالات التالية :

أ. تستخدم (many - much) في الجمل المُثبتة إذا جاء قبلهما ما يلي :

so / very / as / too + much

- I have **so much work** to do.
- She has put **too much salt** in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many

- I saw **too many people** in the street.
- He has **so many friends** on facebook.

ب. إذا كانت **many / much** فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة :

- **Many students** find maths difficult.
- = **Many** find maths difficult.

٢ بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى المقصود :

sheep غنم / aircraft / سمكة -- سمك fish / غزال -- غزلان deer / خروف -- غنم sheep
مركبة فضاء -- مركبات فضاء spacecraft / طائرة -- طائرات

- **A deer is** running away from a tiger.
- **Some deer are** standing in the shade of a tree.

٣ عند استخدام **the** قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع و تأخذ دائما فعل جمع :

the poor الفقراء / the rich الأغنياء / the disabled المعاقين /
... المصابين بالصمم the deaf

- **The poor are** in need of our help.
- = **Poor people are** in need of our help.

٤ هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل :

cattle	ماشية	pliers	زرديّة
clothes	ملابس	police	الشرطة
glasses	نظارة	scissors	مقص
jeans	بنطلون جينز	shorts	بنطلون قصير
people	الناس	trousers	بنطلون

- Your **clothes are** dirty.
- **Many congratulations,** Rody.

٥ الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضهما البعض دائما تأخذ فعل جمع :

- My **glasses** were broken yesterday.
- Your **trousers** are very fashionable.

ويمكن استخدام (a pair of) قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة (pair) :

- A **pair** of sunglasses **was** on the table.
- **Five pairs** of socks **were** bought for me.

٦ بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل :

Uncountable (لا تُعد)	Countable (تُعد)
business	عمل
chicken	لحم الدجاج
coffee	قهوة
cold	البرد عموما
experience	خبرة
glass	الزجاج
hair	الشعر
iron	الحديد
light	الضوء
orange	اللون البرتقالي
paper	ورق الكتابة
time	الوقت
a business - businesses	شركة / مشروع
a chicken - chickens	دجاجة
a coffee - coffees	فنجان قهوة
a cold - colds	نزلة برد
an experience - experiences	تجربة حياتية
a glass - glasses	كوب زجاجي
a hair - hairs	شعرة
an iron - irons	مكواة
a light - lights	مصباح كهربائي
an orange - oranges	برتقال
a paper - papers	جريدة / وثيقة
a time - times	مرات

- I don't like **orange**. I like green.
- **Iron** conducts heat and electricity.
- **Two very good irons** are displayed in this shop.

٧ يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالاتي :

أ. استخدام (a bit - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه في المفرد وفي الجمع
: (bits - pieces)

- She gave me **a piece** (a bit) of advice.
- She gave me **pieces** (bits) of advice.

ب. استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة مثل :

A tube of toothpaste	انبوبة معجون اسنان	A slice of meat	شريحة لحم
A box of matches	علبة كبريت	A loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
A sheet of paper	فرخ ورق	A grain of sand	حبة رمل
A drop of water	قطرة ماء	A bottle of milk	زجاجة حليب
A glass of lemonade	كوب عصير ليمون	A bar of soap	قطعة صابون
A jar of jam	برطمان مربى	/ chocolate	/ شوكولاتة
A lump of sugar	مكعب سكر		

ج. وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة :

- four sheets of paper - five pairs of shoes
- six jars of jam - two loaves of bread
- two slices of meat - six bars of chocolate
- five cups of coffee

Exercises

On Structure

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. He bought a lot of for his new flat.
a. new furnitures b. new furniture c. a new furniture d. furnitures
2. He asked me for advice about how to study well.
a. a b. an c. a few d. some
3. Can you give me sandwiches?
a. little b. a c. some d. much
4. Mr Hassan earns money. He is in need of your help.
a. little b. many c. a few d. much
5. How meat do you need, Madame?
a. long b. many c. much d. for
6. How kilos of meat do you need, Madame?
a. long b. many c. much d. for
7. He doesn't like city life as there's always too much
a. voices b. noise c. cars d. shops

8. Will you buy a of toothpaste, honey?
 a. piece b. glass c. tube d. plate
9. people live in the country today than in the past.
 a. Little b. Less c. Few d. Fewer
10. I can hear too many in the living room. Do you have guests?
 a. noise b. sound c. voice d. voices
11. I've had many jobs to do and so time.
 a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
12. There three pairs of scissors in the drawer.
 a. is b. are c. was d. has
13. How do you have?
 a. much money b. few money c. many money d. many moneys
14. He bought blue shorts.
 a. a b. an c. some d. any
15. There plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.
 a. is b. are c. was d. were
16. He gave the police a lot of about the criminal.
 a. few information b. an information
 c. informations d. information
17. I don't have time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.
 a. few b. much c. no d. many
18. My trousers some holes in them.
 a. has b. have c. is d. are
19. Can you help me with my ?
 a. luggages b. baggages c. a baggage d. luggage
20. Could I have only orange to eat?
 a. some b. any c. many d. an
21. There a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing.
 a. is b. was c. have d. are
22. I gave Rodayna advice about doing better at English.
 a. an b. some c. any d. a few
23. there a lot of hotels in Aswan?
 a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had
24. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take photographs.
 a. a b. some c. any d. many

25. Her clothes to be ironed.
 a. has needed b. needs c. need d. is needing
26. There only a little accommodation available in this hotel.
 a. are b. were c. do d. is
27. We met interesting people at the party.
 a. some b. any c. much d. a little
28. Ashraf has a lot of good
 a. an idea b. idea c. ideas d. some ideas

II Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

29. I haven't got money left. I need to borrow some.
 a. a few b. many c. little d. much
30. I must buy some bread. I hardly have left in the kitchen.
 a. much b. any c. many d. some
31. Two hundred pounds enough for today's spending.
 a. are b. have c. is d. were
32. Try to reduce the of cups of tea you drink a day.
 a. amount b. quantity c. number d. some
33. There is juice for everyone to drink a little.
 a. too much b. too many c. little d. enough
34. There aren't in this town. Only two.
 a. some hotels b. any hotels c. many hotels d. much hotels
35. The money of the books on the table.
 a. are b. were c. has d. is
36. There aren't seats for everybody. Some people will have to sit on the floor or stand!
 a. all b. much c. any d. enough
37. How are coming to the party?
 a. many peoples b. many people c. much people d. any people
38. The police interviewing some people.
 a. is b. was c. are d. have
39. He failed to carry out his duties as a manager as he didn't have
 a. many experience b. many experiences
 c. some experiences d. much experience
40. congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.
 a. A b. Any c. Much d. Many

41. There wasn't traffic on the road. Only a few private cars.
 a. many b. much c. little d. a few
42. My are in my bag.
 a. a glass b. pair of glasses c. glass d. glasses
43. How coffee do you want in your coffee?
 a. much b. many c. little d. few
44. Those sheep fat.
 a. is b. are c. was d. had
45. There a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.
 a. is b. are c. has d. were
46. My reading glasses missing.
 a. had b. was c. is d. are
47. This poor woman has
 a. child b. a few child c. little children d. much children
48. We hardly heard news of him since he left the company.
 a. any b. some c. many d. much
49. Mathematics not very easy to understand.
 a. are b. were c. is d. has
50. Knowledge of foreign languages necessary.
 a. is b. are c. have d. were

III Check your understanding

51. "Little children travel on the train for free." This means
 a. not many children travel on the train for free.
 b. a few children travel on the train for free.
 c. little number of children travel on the train for free.
 d. young children travel on the train for free.
52. "I have got no money left." I mean that
 a. I have little money left. b. I have very little money left.
 c. I don't have any money left. d. I have some money left.
53. "Ali is not a doctor." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
 a. Ali is no doctor. b. Ali has no job.
 c. Ali doesn't like doctors. d. Ali is a professor.
54. Some people like watching basketball, but prefer football.
 a. any b. many c. people d. everyone

1 Articles a /an and the with singular nouns



شاهد وتعلم

a / an

تُستخدم (a/an) في الحالات التالية :

١ قبل اسم مفرد معدود يتم ذكره لأول مرة:

- ex. - I saw **a cat** in front of the door.
- There is **an apple** on the table.

٢ قبل اسم وظيفة معدود مفرد عند التحدث عن وظيفة شخص ما :

- ex. - Mustafa is **a doctor**.
- My uncle is **an astronaut**.

٣ قبل الاسم المعدود المفرد الدال على عدد :

**a pair زوج / a couple زوج / a dozen ستة / a hundred /
a thousand / a million...etc.**

٤ مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والثلث :

- ex. - 80 kilometres **an hour** ٨٠ كم في الساعة
- two days **a week** ١٠ جنيهات للكيلو 10 pounds **a kilo** - يومين في الأسبوع

٥ قبل الصفة إذا سبقت اسم مفرد معدود يُعد :

- ex. - We have got **a new car**.

٦ لاحظ أن (a - an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع و الأسماء غير المعدودة :

- ex. - Cats eat fish and drink milk. (Not: A cats....)
- The bottle is full of oil. (Not: an oil....)

كيفية الاختيار بين (a/an) :

١ تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بصوت ساكن :

a table / a house / a boy / a girl / a doctor / a plant / a window etc.

٢ تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد يبدأ بالحروف (u - eu - ew) عندما تُنطق بحرف (y) :

**a university / a uniform / a union / a useful book /
a European team / a eweetc.**

٣ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد يعد يبدأ بصوت متحرك :

ex. - an egg / an orange / an apple / an eagle / an elephant.....etc.

٤ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد يعد يبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق يليه صوت متحرك :

ex. - an hour / an honest person.

٥ يمكن استخدام (a/an) اسم معدود مفرد لإعطاء تعريف للكلمات :

ex. - A doctor is someone who works in hospital to help and treat patients.

٦ قبل الاختصارات التي تُنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف :

ex. - My friend sent an SMS to me.
- There is an "m" letter in the word "man".

٧ قبل كلمة (one) كصفة نستخدم (a) لأن (one) تبدأ بصوت ساكن :

ex. - I found a one-dollar banknote on the floor.
- This is a one-way street.

The

تُستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية :

١ قبل اسم سبق ذكره في سياق الحديث :

ex. - His father works in an office. The office is in the city centre.
- She bought a book by Dickens yesterday. The book is called Oliver Twist.

٢ قبل اسم لا يوجد منه سوى واحد فقط :

the sun / the moon / the sky / the country /
the countryside / the ground / the world....etc.

ex. - The moon goes around the Earth. (هناك قمر واحد وأرض واحدة)

٣ قبل اسم معروف للقارئ أو السامع :

ex. - "Make the bed and open the window," said mum.
(معروف بالنسبة لك أي فراش سترتب وأي نافذة ستفتح)

٤ قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية :

the tallest / the oldest / the most beautiful / the least expensive /
the first / the second / the millionth / the only / the last....etc.

ex. - That's the best film I've ever seen.
- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
- The first letter of the alphabet is A.

UNIT 4

- لكن في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their /'s) قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية فلا نستخدم (the) :

٥ قبل أسماء المحيطات والبحار و معظم أسماء الأنهار و القنوات (لكن ليس قبل أسماء البحيرات):

البحر المتوسط / the Mediterranean / المحيط الهادئ / the Pacific
قناة السويس / the Suez Canal / نهر النيل / the Nile / نهر الأمازون / the Amazon
etc. بحيرة فيكتوريا / Lake Victoria / بحيرة ناصر / Lake Nasser

٦ - لا نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الدول :

Egypt / Britain / France / Spain / Germany / Iraq etc.

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة على إحدى الكلمات التالية فهي تأخذ (the) :

(etc. ... ولاية State - مملكة Kingdom - اتحاد Union / Federation - جمهورية Republic)

الجمهورية مصر العربية	the Arab Republic of Egypt (the ARE)
الإمارات العربية المتحدة	the United Arab Emirates (the UAE)
المملكة العربية السعودية	the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (the KSA)
الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	the United States of America (the USA)
المملكة المتحدة	the United Kingdom (the UK)
الأمم المتحدة	the United Nations (the UN)

- و أيضا إذا كان اسم الدولة جمع فهو يأخذ (the) :

الفليبين the Philippines - هولندا the Netherlands

- لاحظ أنه لم يعد تسبق البلاد التالية بأداة المعرفة (the) بعد أن حصلت على استقلالها:

Lebanon / Ukraine / Yemen / Sudan

٧ - نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء السلاسل الجبلية :

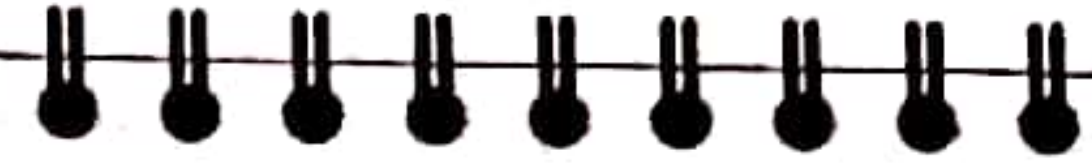
جبال روكي / the Rocky Mountains / جبال الهيمالايا / the Himalayas
etc. جبال الألب / the Alps

أما أسماء القمم الجبلية المنفردة فعادة لا تأخذ (the) :

etc. جبل كليمنجارو / Kilimanjaro / قمة إفرست / Mount Everest

Extra Notes

ملاحظات إضافية



تُستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية أيضاً :

١ تستخدم (the) قبل اسم مفرد يعد للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام خاصة مع فصائل الحيوانات والطيور:

- **The giraffe** is my favourite animal.

- يستخدم الاسم الجمع بدون (the) للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:

- **Giraffes** are my favourite animals.

٢ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الاختراعات المفردة للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:

- **The computer** is the most important invention.

- لكن عند الحديث عن الأجهزة في أى سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :

- I have bought **a tablet** and **a laptop**. **The tablet** is white, but **the laptop** is black.

٣ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الآلات الموسيقية المفردة مع أفعال مثل:

(**play / practise / learn / study / appreciate / listen to**)

- Can you play **the guitar** ?

- **The piano** is my favourite instrument.

- أما عند الحديث عنها في أى سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة:

- My brother has **a guitar** and a piano. **The guitar** is old and doesn't work well.

٤ تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (**theatre / cinema / radio / post office / internet / shops**)

ولا نقصد مكان أو شيء محدد:

- Do you go to **the theatre** ?

- We listen to the news on **the radio**.

٥ تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التى لا يتبعها أسم لتدل على اسم جمع دائماً و تأخذ فعل جمع:

the rich / the poor / the blind / the disabled etc. / الأغنياء / الفقراء / المكفوفين / المعاقين

- **The disabled** are in need to our help.

- He is collecting money for **the blind**.

٦ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء بعض الاقاليم :

the Middle East / the Far East / the north of Egyptetc.

٧ تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الاماكن الجغرافية مثل :

صحراء جوبي / the Gobi / الصحراء الكبرى / the Sahara

١ تستخدم (the) غالباً قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه عبارة وصل أو الاسم المَعْرُوف بحرف الجر (of) :

- The man who lost his son was very sad.
- He opened the door of the room.

- لكن لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات:

- Do you have a dictionary that I can borrow ?
(هنا يقصد بها أى قاموس (أحد القواميس))
- Ashraf told me about a man who can eat glass.
(هنا يقصد بها أحد الرجال)

٢ تستخدم (the) قبل العدد الذى يدل على فترة عشر سنوات :

the fifties / الخمسينيات / the nineties / التسعينيات

٣ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ :

the government / الحكومة / the climate / المناخ / the weather / الطقس /
the environment / البيئة / the press / الصحافة / the police / الشرطة /
the army ...etc. / الجيش

٤ تستخدم (the) مع العبارات الدالة على المقارنة (صيغة كلما كلما) :

- The more you practise, the better you get.
كلما تدرّبت كلما تحسّنت.

لا تستخدم (the) فى الحالات التالية :

١ لا تستخدم (the) قبل الاسم الجمع اذا كنا نقصد المعنى العام :

- Rabbits are nice animals.
(not : the rabbits)

(هنا يقصد الأرانب بشكل عام)

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن التالية اذا كانت تستخدم للغرض الاساسى منها :

prison / school / university / college / church / hospital / market /
court / mosque...etc.

- He went to university. He studies medicine there.

- اما اذا استخدم المكان لغرض اخر فيأخذ (the) :

- Marwa went to the hospital to visit her uncle.

(She didn't go there as a patient)

٣ غالباً لا تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (bed/work/home) :

- He went to bed.
- She left work.
- I arrived home.

لا تستخدم (a - an - the) في الحالات التالية :

١ قبل أسماء المواد (الخامات) :

wood / wool / metal / milk / iron / plastic / meat etc.

٢ قبل أسماء القارات :

Asia / Africa / Europe / North America etc.

٣ قبل أسماء المدن :

Cairo / New York / London / Madrid etc.

٤ قبل أسماء الوجبات :

- We have **lunch** at three o'clock. (Not: the lunch)

- لكن عند وصف الوجبة نستخدم (the) :

- The **breakfast** I ate yesterday was horrible.

٥ قبل أسماء اللغات

Arabic / English / Chinese / Turkish etc.

- لاحظ أنه إذا جاءت بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the) :

the English language / the French language

٦ قبل أسماء المواد الدراسية :

mathematics / biology / political science

٧ قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم شخص :

- **King Ramses** built a lot of temples.

- **President Sadat** was a great politician.

٨ قبل كلمة (space) عندما تعني الفضاء :

- NASA sends spaceships into **space**.

- عندما نستخدم (the) قبل كلمة (space) فهي تعني مكان فارغ :

- **The space** in the class isn't enough for ten more students.

Exercises

On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. sun has been shining all day.

a. A

b. An

c. The

d. No article

2. In today's lesson, we have known about a brave man. brave

man's name is Hossam El-Rasheedy.

a. A

b. An

c. The

d. No article

3. This old lady cannot walk easily, so she has to use stick.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
4. Today, Salah is one of best footballers in the world.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
5. I've bought new computer.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
6. We're staying in room on the first floor of our large villa.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. The injured man was taken to a hospital. Doctors at hospital told him that he would be OK.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
8. My uncle was staying in a new hotel which overlooks Red Sea.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
9. This building is going to be tallest one in the area.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
10. His cousin is journalist. He works for a newspaper in Cairo.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
11. She wants to have holiday next to the sea.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
12. I had dream last night. In the dream, I was a bride عروسة in a white dress!
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
13. Adel is a space scientist. At the moment, he is studying moon.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. The best way for a person to get better is to do exercises two or three times day.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. My friend is sportsman. He plays squash.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
16. He has meat and soup for lunch.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
17. Could you close front door, please?
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
18. There were no chairs, so we had to sit on the floor.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
19. There are two cars parked outside, expensive one and a cheap one.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

20. In my opinion, most important invention has been the mobile.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
21. The plane has made world a smaller place.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
22. Where is pen that I bought yesterday.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
23. Omar, man you and I met yesterday, is an honest man.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
24. Rokaya is very nice girl.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
25. mobile phone was invented in 1973.
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
26. The moon is round object that moves around a planet.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
27. We have a house with garden.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
28. When I leave school, I want to be tourist guide.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
29. It wasn't your fault. It was bad luck.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
30. She has Italian name.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
31. Rodayna gave me encouraging reply.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
32. When I was at school, I loved history.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
33. On our trip to America, we crossed Atlantic Ocean.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

II Special cases

34. If the Earth had a blue moon and a white moon, I'd prefer
 white one.
 a. a b. an c. the d. some
35. Egypt has unique location in the world.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

UNIT 4

36. There is going to be 300-seat dining room on the second floor of the hotel.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
37. water is essential for all people.
 a. A b. No article c. The d. An
38. There were two fashionable shirts in the shop. I chose one that was up to the latest fashion.
 a. an b. some c. a d. the
39. Yesterday, my father bought useful story. It had useful pieces of advice to follow.
 a. an b. a c. the d. no article
40. For lunch, I made an order for half..... chicken and some salad.
 a. some b. a c. the d. no article
41. I think exams we have next week will be difficult.
 a. the b. a c. an d. no article
42. My uncle arrived on Sunday which is after my birthday.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
43. He gave me a pen and a ruler, but pen didn't work.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
44. When dealing with difficult situations, one should be patient.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
45. Come on, Rodayna. It is time to go to bed.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
46. We always go on holiday in July.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
47. They all went to lunch organized by their aunt.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
48. I remember day we went to the seaside.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
49. A new spaceship will be sent into space next month.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

50. space in my room is not enough for my bed.
 a. a b. an c. The d. no article
51. The Sun went down horizon.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
52. Britain is European country.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
53. You will find the information you need at the top of page 41.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
54. Fear is universal weakness.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
55. I dislike towns, but I love the countryside.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
56. pomegranates الرمان are good for health.
 a. A b. An c. The d. no article
57. Look at oranges on that tree.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
58. My son has started school this year.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
59. My father went to school to meet my teachers.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
60. youth play important roles in the progress تقدم of all nations الأمم.
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
61. teachers in my school work hard.
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
62. For this job, you need experience with the computer.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
63. I asked professor Mohammed about his early life.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

III Check your understanding

64. "Doctors help people who feel sick". This means
 a. the doctors help people who are sick.
 b. doctors help the sick.
 c. a doctor helped the sick.
 d. the sick need help.

65. "People should help those who are homeless." This means
- people should help homeless.
 - people should help a homeless.
 - people should help the homeless.
 - people should have a home.
66. "This film is exciting". I mean that
- this is an exciting film.
 - this is an excited film.
 - this film makes me exciting.
 - this film is excited.
67. "All lions are meat-eating animals." This is the same meaning as
- the lions are meat-eaters.
 - the lions are meat-eating animals.
 - the lions eat meat.
 - the lion is a meat-eating animal.
68. "He is hard working." What does this mean?
- He does work that is hard.
 - He is hard-working person.
 - He is a hard-working person.
 - He hardly does any work.
69. "I can speak English well." This means
- I can speak an English well.
 - I can speak English language well.
 - I can speak an English language well.
 - I can speak the English language well.
70. "China is the largest country in Asia." This sentence tells us that
- China is one of the largest countries in Asia.
 - China is a largest country in Asia.
 - China is Asia's largest countries.
 - China is one of Asia's largest countries.
71. "Hard work makes you more successful." What does this mean?
- If you work hardly, you will be more successful.
 - Unless you work hardly, you won't be more successful.
 - Hard work makes you less successful.
 - The harder you work, the more successful you are.

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

1 I went shopping yesterday. I bought six (a) of bread, (b) kilo of meat and (c) eggs. I didn't buy (d) rice or sugar.

a. b. c. d.

2 Yesterday, I had lunch in a restaurant. "I'd like to have (a) chicken and rice with (b) green salad," I said to the waiter. "Would you like (c) soup to start with, sir?" asked the waiter. "Thanks, I don't want (d)" I said.

a. b. c. d.

3 How do you spend the weekend? (a) people like to spend the weekend outdoors. For me, (b) countryside is the best weekend destination. Having a four - (c) walk among the fields fills me with (d) spiritual energy I need..

a. b. c. d.

4 Holidays are necessary. Too (a) work without taking (b) regular breaks to relieve (c) stress of that work makes life unbearable. لا تُطاق Remember that success in personal life isn't (d) important than success in work life.

a. b. c. d.

Advanced Exercise on Structures

مُجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The dead man's include no will.

a. paper b. a paper c. papers d. newspaper

2. Everyone should depend on

a. itself b. himself c. herself d. themselves

3. Be patient, please. We will talk about the matter in just bit.
 a. no article b. the c. an d. a
4. The poor from high prices.
 a. suffers b. suffer c. has suffered d. was suffering
5. A: How television do you watch a week? B: About ten hours.
 a. much b. many items of c. many d. few items of
6. He was sent to prison for a year for stealing only two
 a. slices of clothing b. pieces of clothing
 c. clothes d. clothings
7. I think you can't sit in this row as there isn't room for you.
 a. no article b. the c. an d. a
8. Mandela was in prison for before he became president.
 a. time b. a time c. a duration d. years' of time
9. The new digital camera is a very complex
 a. item of technology b. technology
 c. technology pieces d. bar of technology
10. I can't go out with you today. I've got too and it all has to be finished by nine o'clock.
 a. many tasks b. much work
 c. many jobs d. many pieces of work

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

I like going on holidays. I met so (a) old friends during the summer holiday. Each of (b) had (c) to talk about. Most of us have achieved their goals, but (d) haven't.

a. b. c. d.

Part V Grammatical Hints from Reading & Listening

Giving instructions

١ لإعطاء الأمر المُثَبَّت (افعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Inf. المصدر +

- ex. - Stop.
- Remember to do your homework.
- Put your lunchbox in the bag.

لإعطاء قوة للمعنى أو لإعطاء نصيحة قوية لشخص مُقَرَّب نستخدم (Always) قبل الصيغة السابقة :

- ex. - Always follow your parents' advice.

٢ لإعطاء الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Don't / Never + inf. المصدر +

- ex. - Don't Stop.
- Don't forget to do your homework.
- Never break the law.

٣ يمكن وضع المُنادي (المُخاطَب) في بداية أو نهاية الجملة كالتالي :

- ex. - Don't waste your time, Ahmed.
- Ahmed, don't waste your time.

Indefinite pronouns

١ يتم استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع :

(someone / somebody - anyone / anybody - everyone /
everybody - no one / nobody).

- ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who they are.
- Everybody has prepared themselves to the meeting.
ينطبق نفس الشيء على الأسماء غير محددة الجنس التي تحتمل التذكير والتأنيث مثل :

a child - a person - a teacher - a traveller ... etc.

- ex. - A traveller has parked his car in front of my house. They must have entered the opposite restaurant.

٢ يمكن استخدام (ضمير مفرد مذكر مضافا إليه ضمير مفرد مؤنث) ليحل محل ضمير الجمع :

- ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who he or she is.

٣ يمكن استخدام (ضمير مفرد مذكر فقط أو ضمير مفرد مؤنث فقط) في حالة معرفة جنس الشخص الذي نتحدث عنه :

- ex. - This child will do better if he joins a school for boys only.

another

آخر / أخري

another + اسم مفرد

- ex. - We found **another** shop in a small street.
- I want **another** bag of macaroni, please.

another + (few / number: two, three,....)

- ex. - Give me **another** two days to finish the report.
- She has **another** few jobs to do.

other

آخر / آخرين

other + اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد

- ex. - Ahmed likes helping **other** people.
- Any **other** knowledge will be available online.
- وتستخدم (**other**) أيضا بعد الكلمات الآتية :

the / some / every / each / many / any / no / two, three,.....etc.

- ex. - Five chairs will be in the office. The **other** chairs will be moved to the teachers' room.
- Like any **other** child, Rodayna wants to play.

others (ضمير (تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول)

الآخرين

- ex. - Some children like fish. **Others** prefer chicken.

compound adjectives with numbers

١ يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة:

- ex. - Omar is a forty-year-old man.

٢ يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

- ex. - We're going on a two-day trip.

٣ مع الأسماء الدالة على مسافة يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز جمع ينتهي بـ ('s / s') كصفة :

- ex. - My work is two hours' drive from here.
- We have three hours' walk every weekend.

٤ في حالة وجود كلمة **time** بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و ('s) في حالة الجمع :

- ex. - In two weeks' time, I will travel to Aswan.

own

on + (my / his / her / its / your / our / their) + own = alone

= **without help** بمفرده / دون مساعدة

- ex. - I did the housework on my own.
= I did the housework alone / without help.

of + (my / his / her / its / your / our / their) + own ملكه / خاص به

- ex. - I have a car of my own.

Asking for and Giving Advice

Asking for Advice طلب النصيحة

Can you give me some advice about ...? ؟ أيمكنك أن تنصحنى بخصوص

Can I ask your advice about ...? ؟ أيمكنني أن أسألك النصيحة بخصوص

What should I do about ...? ؟ ما الذي يمكنني فعله فيما يتعلق بـ

Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

You should / shouldn't + inf. ... ألا ينبغي أن / ألا

You ought to / ought not to + inf. ... ألا ينبغي أن / ألا

If I were you, I would / wouldn't + inf. ... لو كنت مكانك ، (ما) كنت

You'd (had) better + inf. ... من الأفضل لك أن

I advise you (not) to ... أنصحك أن / ألا

The best thing to do is (not) to ... أفضل شيء تفعله هو أن / ألا

Exercises

On Grammatical Hints

مجاب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The two girls stopped talking to one
a. other b. another c. others d. the others
- The police could arrest two of the robbers and shot one of them.
a. the other b. others c. another d. else

UNIT 4

3. I'd like to know about Seif's desire to help
 a. others b. other c. another d. the other
4. You can take this pen. I have one.
 a. other b. others c. the other d. another
5. You can take this pen. I will use one.
 a. other b. others c. the other d. an other
6. You can take this pen. I have two ones.
 a. other b. others c. the other d. another
7. You can take this pen. I have two ones.
 a. other b. others c. the other d. another
8. Some people like meat. like chicken or fish.
 a. Other b. Others c. The other d. Another
9. Amir made this cupboard his own. I didn't help him.
 a. from b. off c. of d. on
10. Amir has a cupboard his own. No one else uses it.
 a. from b. off c. of d. on
11. You both should do this activity on own.
 a. you b. your c. yours d. yourselves
12. A: Who joined the trip? B: I did.
 a. two b. else c. too d. either
13. You right to ask for help.
 a. are b. is c. has d. have
14. You the right to ask for help.
 a. are b. is c. has d. have
15. sure your tablet is updated.
 a. To make b. Making c. Make d. Made
16. Never your secrets to anybody.
 a. telling b. tell c. told d. to tell

17. Rokaya is a nine- – old girl.

- a. year b. years c. years' d. year's

18. Someone rang the doorbell. When I opened the door, there.

- a. he wasn't b. she wasn't c. they weren't d. I was

19. Somebody taken my glasses.

- a. have b. has c. is d. are

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

My son Ahmed has started school. He goes there

(a) bus with some (b) kids of his of age. They are all six- (c) – old pupils. I told his mother to let him do his homework (d) his own.

- a. b. c. d.

Part VI

Language Skills

1 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

*** Write an email of about 150 words to your friend Reda about "Something that makes you stressed".**

To : reda2020@elemoasser

From: ali@gmail.com

Subject: Something that makes me stressed!

Dear Reda,

How are you? I hope you are well. I'm writing to tell you about something stressful I have to face. I've started my secondary school recently and things aren't so easy or smooth as they used to be. I am supposed to work hard not only at school but at home as well.

It's completely new routine. The school subjects are not that easy. I meet new teachers and new classmates that I must get along with. I find it difficult to keep up this new community yet not impossible. I made a few friends anyway. However, I've got some problems with quite a few

students who are difficult somehow and the new subjects I have to study and understand. The lessons are so many that I can't get back home until late in the afternoon. What a nuisance!

In addition, the school has no room for activities which makes matters worse and as a result, most students get bored and even frustrated.

At home, life is not that easy one as it was when I was at prep school.

Parents argues me to study all the time, there is no space for play or entertainment. They believe that entertainment or practicing activities should be during summer holiday only.

Isn't it a problem ? Send me your advice. I'm badly in need of your help. I'm waiting for your replay.

Yours,

Ali

2 الترجمة Translation

① Translate into Arabic :

1. When you have too many jobs to do without having some rest and entertainment, you feel stressed. That feeling kills the joy of life and the willingness to work.
2. Once you start to get used to your new life in a different place, your stress gradually disappears. At that time, you will start to find out the advantages of your new life.
3. There must be respect to the diversity of opinions and ideas. Different people have a variety of ideas and opinions that enrich life in a community.

② Translate into English :

١. إن التعليم الجيد هو حجر الأساس لبناء مجتمع عصري يتمتع بالرخاء، فالأمة تتقدم بالعلم والثقافة والتخطيط السليم والعمل الجاد من كل المواطنين.
٢. حياة أي انسان لابد أن يكون لها جانبان هما العمل الجاد والترفيه، فنحن لن نكون سعداء إلا بالترفيه ولن نكون ناجحين إلا بالعمل.
٣. يخشى الكثير من الناس من البدايات في كل شيء يفعلونه، فالبدايات دائما تكون صعبة وتحتاج إلي الكثير من المغامرة والثقة بالنفس.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	joy	بهجة
bedrock	حجر الأساس	modern	عصري
by nature	بطبيعته	once	بمجرد أن
citizen	مواطن	prosperity	الرخاء
creature	كائن	self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
enrich	يُثري	sociable	اجتماعي
entertainment	الترفيه	stress	الضغط
especially	خاصة	variety	عديد
fear	يخشى	willingness	الاستعداد - الرغبة
gradually	بالتدريج		

أحرص على التدريب المستمر

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدريبات للتقويم المستمر على كل وحدة

★ اختبار تراكمي

★ تدريبات للأزهر

★ تدريبات على المهارات

★ اختبارات على المنهج



المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية
بالقصة المقررة جزء القصة نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He fell off the horse and his arm.
a. shouted b. whistled c. blew d. hurt
2. The fox has the ability to high walls.
a. build b. climb c. destroy d. guard
3. You need to You look dead tired.
a. work b. hurry c. relax d. excite
4. Don't leave petrol to a cooker or there will be a fire.
a. away b. close c. far d. distant
5. Two of the sailors from the sinking boat managed to reach the
a. sure b. ocean c. sea d. shore
6. Her changed once she heard of her success.
a. expression b. experiment c. disease d. coast
7. The referee pointed to his , which means that they can't play unless he blows it.
a. whistle b. red card c. yellow card d. ear peas
8. It is necessary to talk in a voice when you are in a library.
a. screaming b. shouting c. aloud d. low
9. I the students on the bus and found that we miss two of them.
a. taught b. counted c. learnt d. shouted
10. You 'll do better. We all you.
a. doubt b. kill c. trust d. mark



A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The use of guns and other weapons **أسلحة** must be
a. listed b. closed c. connected d. policed
2. I hate using social media. They make me
a. pleased b. stressed c. praised d. dressed
3. Ali said he and his brother never They love each other.
a. right b. might c. sight d. fight
4. It is important to respect the of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours.
a. header b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation
5. Writing your date of birth is You don't have to write it.
a. a must b. populated c. compulsory d. optional
6. The names of the new employees **الموظفين** can be seen on the
a. phone-in b. noticeboard c. policing d. floor
7. Our host tried hard to make us at home.
a. take b. feel c. do d. have
8. In this programme, we have two scientists to the issue. **القضية**
a. agree b. believe c. think d. debate
9. are the people who work for an official organisation whose job is to catch criminals and make sure that people obey the law.
a. To police b. Police c. The police d. Policing
10. means to look after someone who is ill or injured.
a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse
11. Money the root of all evils.
a. are b. have been c. has d. is
12. England is European country.
a. a b. an c. no word d. the
13. there any news about the exam results?
a. Are b. Is c. Were d. Has

14. I'm busy now. I have homework to do.
 a. few b. lots of c. a lot d. many
15. This species of animals in danger of being extinct nowadays.
 a. is b. are c. has d. have
16. Each student is doing best to pass the exam.
 a. his b. her c. their d. theirs
17. **Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :**

Have you ever thought of flying planes? It is (a) interesting job. However, not (b) people know how to fly (c) plane. Only pilots do. They spend too (d) time learning it.

a. b. c. d.

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Over the past twenty years, computers and the internet have become more and more important to us. In fact, depending on computer technology continues to grow every day. We seem to use computers for almost everything these days, in shopping, driving our car or, communicating with relatives and colleagues.

This explosion in computer technology has resulted in a rush to install computers in every classroom and to "wire" every school to the Internet. In the USA, between 1984, and 1997 alone, the number of computers in secondary schools increased to more than 8 million sets. Both educators and students alike have been forced to keep up with this new wave of technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves are still trying to learn the most basic of computer skills, they are expected to teach students about computer know-how.

Few people would question the role that computers could play in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them in a classroom setting will get better grades than those who learn without having had any computer experience. These people say that just as computer technology has improved the way cars work, computers will make the classroom a better place to teach concepts and ideas that students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

18. Teachers are expected to teach students how to use computers although they
 a. know to use computer.
 b. are still learning how to use computers.
 c. know all the basics of computer skills.
 d. are forced to use.
19. "Few people would question the role that computers could play" means
 a. Many people are certain about the importance of computers.
 b. Not many people doubt the importance of computers.
 c. Some people ask questions about computers.
 d. Some people want more computers.
20. The expression "keep up with" in the passage can be replaced by
 a. keep in touch with b. support
 c. manage d. continue to learn
21. The phrasal verb "resulted in" means
 a. lead to b. objected
 c. supported d. denied

B. Answer the following questions :

22. Give an example of your own (not from the passage) that shows that computers have been widely used in secondary education.
23. Give some examples of everyday uses of computers in our life.
24. In your opinion, what are the possible disadvantages of using computers in education ?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

It is not easy to adapt to life in a new place, especially when you are not sociable. Starting a new life in a new place needs a lot of intelligence.

26. Translate into Arabic :

لا يمكن لأي إنسان أن يعيش سعيداً بعيداً عن الآخرين، فالإنسان كائن اجتماعي بطبيعته يؤثر في من حوله ويتأثر بهم.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

A problem students might have at school

.....

.....

.....

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة**Reading :**

A science article on how we may communicate in the future

Writing :

An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online

Listening :

A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet

Speaking :

Giving a presentation

Language :

Future forms will, be going to and present continuous

Life skills :

Self-management; Decision making



لاتقان الوحدة

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
• ملحق المهارات.
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

advert(n)	إعلان	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	internet(n)	الانترنت
app (n)	تطبيق (رقمي)	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	lock(ed) (n - v)	قفل - يقفل
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة
communication(n)	اتصال - تواصل	password(n)	كلمة المرور
connect(ed) (v)	يربط - يوصل	phishing(n)	النصب الإلكتروني
connected(adj)	متصل - مُرتبط	post(ed) (v)	يرسل
cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	scam(n)	احتيال - غش
cyberbully (n)	متنمر عبر الإنترنت	satnav(n)	التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي
download(ed) (v)	يُنزل	security(n)	الأمن
download (n)	ملف مُنزل	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
downloading (n)	التنزيل	software(n)	برامج - برمجيات
hack(ed) (v)	يخترق - يُقرصن	technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
google (n)	مُحرك البحث جوجل	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
google(d) (v)	يبحث علي جوجل	uploading (n)	الرفع

2 Definitions تعريفات

anti-virus (n)	برنامج مُكافحة الفيروسات	a programme that protects your computer from being damaged by a virus
app (n)	تطبيقات	a computer programme designed to perform / do a specific function وظيفة محددة
click (v)	ينقر	to press a button زر on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen شاشة that you want the computer to do
communications (n)	وسائل التواصل	systems to send and receive information
connected (adj)	متصل - مُرتبط	when more than one thing is joined or linked
cyberbullying (n)	البلطجة الإلكترونية	sending messages online to frighten يخيف or worry someone

downloading تنزيل / تحميل	when someone transfers information from the internet to their computer
hacking القرصنة	when a computer system is broken into illegally غير قانوني
internet (n) الانترنت	a worldwide computer network
link (n) رابط	a part of a website that you can click to go to another webpage or website
lock (v) يقفل	to make something safe by preventing someone entering, perhaps by using a password منع
malware البرمجيات الخبيثة	computer programmes or software that is harmful to a computer system
password كلمة سر	a secret word which you use to go into a website
phishing (n) النصب الالكتروني	trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them
posting photos ارسال الصور	putting photographs online
scam (n) احتيال - غش	a dishonest plan to steal money
security (n) الأمن	protection of a place or person
smartphone (n) الهاتف الذكي	a device that can connect to the internet
technology (n) التكنولوجيا	the use of science to create devices for everyday use
uploading personal details تحميل البيانات الشخصية	copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet

3 Important Vocabulary

account (n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على الانترنت)	lighting (n)	الإضاءة
arrange (d) (v)	يُرتَّب	major (adj)	كبير
blog (ged) (n) (v)	مدونة - يَدُون	management (n)	إدارة
book (ed) (v)	يحجز	mention (ed) (v)	يذكر
businesses (n)	شركات	network (ed) (n-v)	شبكة - يتصل عن طريق الشبكة
cause (d) (n) (v)	سبب - يُسبب	offer (ed) (n - v)	عَرَض - يعرض
collect (ed) (v)	يُخْضِر - يجمع	online (adj - adv)	مُتَّصِل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت
comment (ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يُعْلَق	organisation (n)	مؤسسة
control (led) (v)	يتحكم في	perform (ed) (v)	يؤدي - يقوم بـ
create (d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر	plan (ned) (n - v)	خطة - يخطط
creative (adj)	مبدع - خلاق		
credit card (n)	بطاقة ائتمان		

criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	introduce (d) (v)	يُقدِّم / يطرح
danger (n)	خطر	possibility (n)	إمكانية
decision (n)	قرار	power station (n)	محطات الطاقة
design (ed) (v - n)	يَصمِّم / يضع تصميم	prediction (n)	تنبؤ
	- تصميم	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
details (n)	تفاصيل	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
develop (ed) (v)	يتطور - يُطور	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
device (n)	جهاز	provide (d) (v)	يزود بـ - يُتيح
dishonest (adj)	غير أمين - مُخادع	recent (adj)	حديث
document (n)	وثيقة	recognise (d) (v)	يتعرف علي
driverless (adj)	بدون سائق	remove (d) (v)	يُزيل - يُبعد
electric (adj)	كهربي	self-management (n)	إدارة الذات
electronic (adj)	الكثروني	share (d) (v)	يتشارك
embarrassing (adj)	مُخرج	solve (d) (v)	يحلّ
empty (v - adj)	يُفرِّغ - فارغ	strange (adj)	غريب
evidence (n)	دليل	summarise (d) (v)	يُلخّص
expert (n - adj)	خبير	survey (n)	بحث استبياني
flexible (adj)	مرن	system (n)	نظام
fly - flew - flown (v)	يُطير - يُسرّع	unwanted (adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
furious (adj)	ساخط / غاضب جداً	warning (n)	تحذير
heating (n)	التدفئة	web (n)	شبكة
illegally (adv)	بشكل غير قانوني	website (n)	موقع على الانترنت
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي
intention (n)	نية		

4 Extra Vocabulary

brilliant (adj)	رائع - ذكي	machine (n)	آلة
camping (n)	الإقامة في معسكر	medicine (n)	الطب - دواء
copy (ied) (n - v)	ينسخ - نسخة	personal (adj)	شخصي
delete (d) (v)	يحذف	petrol (n)	البنزين
discussion (n)	مناقشة / نقاش	programme (d) (n - v)	برنامج - يُبرمج
everyday (adj)	يومي	ring - rang - rung (v)	يرن
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	robot (n)	إنسان آلي
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح / يُفسّر	space (n)	الفضاء
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	theatre (n)	المسرح
free (adj)	مجاني - حر	thief - thieves (n)	لص - لصوص
image (n)	صورة	trouble (n)	مأزق / مشكلة

Part

II

More about Vocabulary

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	my satnav	أتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	look	heavy	تبدو ثقيلة
do	wrong	يُخطئ		like	يبدو كأنه / يشبه
get	money	يحصل علي مال		right	يبدو على ما يُرام
give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية	stay	safe	يبقي بأمان
	a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي	study	online	يدرس عبر الانترنت
go	online	يدخل على الانترنت	take	photos	يلتقط الصور
make	a decision	يتخذ قرار	win	a prize	يفوز بجائزة
	life better	تجعل الحياة أفضل	write	a blog	يكتب منشور في مدونة

Mini Test (1)

Collocations

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Decision needs knowledge and experience.
a. doing b. having c. making d. saying
- Show me the photo you've just
a. stayed b. done c. gone d. taken
- Apologise when you something wrong.
a. do b. be c. make d. write
- Keep at home. safe.
a. Stay b. Check c. Go d. Take
- Her face is pale. She does not right.
a. do b. look c. make d. write
- I'm very busy, so I rarely online.
a. set b. check c. go d. take
- The blog I had was shared by 200 people.
a. done b. looked c. stayed d. written
- I don't know where I am. I'll my satnav.
a. stay b. check c. go d. take

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advert	إعلان	advertisement / ad
app	تطبيق	application
book	يحجز	reserve
malware	برمجيات خبيثة	malicious software
recent	حديث	new / modern / late
satnav	الملاحة بالقمر الصناعي	satellite navigation
scam	احتيال - غش	fraud - trick

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
advantages	مزايا	disadvantages
correct	صحيح	incorrect
download	تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الانترنت)	upload
honest	أمين	dishonest
lock	يقفل	unlock - open
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor - little - unimportant
online	متصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline
security	الأمن	danger / insecurity
send	يُرسل	receive
similar	متشابه	different

Mini Test (2) Synonyms & Antonyms

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Danger is antonymous with
a. safe b. safety c. secure d. security
- Security is to as lock is to open.
a. insecurity b. danger c. safety d. a & b
- "I haven't expected my recent book to be so successful." The word 'recent' can be replaced by
a. late b. first c. former d. b & c

4. Scam is to as book is to reserve.
 a. fried b. trick c. trust d. a & b
5. "I have just uploaded a video." In this sentence, the word 'uploaded' is the antonym of
 a. unloaded b. overloaded c. downloaded d. a & c
6. "Be careful of malicious software." The speaker is warning us against
 a. software b. hardware c. antivirus d. malware

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an advert for	إعلان عن	no more driving	لا مزيد من القيادة
an example of	مثال علي	nothing happened	لم يحدث شيء
as often as I can	بقدر ما أستطيع	on all our flights	علي جميع رحلاتنا الجوية
be able to	يكون قادر علي	on the computer / smartphone	علي الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be based on guesswork	قائم على التخمين	on the moon	علي القمر
be connected to	يكون متّصل أو مُرتبط بـ	on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى
be known as	معروف كـ	particular tasks	مهام مُعيّنة
careful about	حريص علي	possible problems	مشاكل محتملة
click on the link	ينقر علي الرابط	posting photos	ارسال الصور
daily life	الحياة اليومية	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
decision making	صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	stop it working	يجعله يتوقف عن العمل
disadvantages to	مساوئ لـ	talking to one another	يتحدثون الي بعضهم البعض
electronic document	وثيقة إلكترونية	the outside world	العالم الخارجي
flying taxi	التاكسي الطائر	the space provided	الفراغ المتاح
in a few years	خلال سنوات قليلة	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هي
in trouble	في مأزق	true for you	صحيحة بالنسبة لك
key points	النقاط الرئيسية	with no evidence	دون دليل
major security problems	مشكلة أمنية كبيرة	write in clear simple words	يكتب مستخدماً كلمات بسيطة وواضحة
no longer	لم يعد		

5 Verb + Preposition

break into	يقتحم	connect ... to	يربط ... بـ
choose ... from	يختار ... من بين	hack into	يخترق - يُقرصن
click on	ينقر علي	remove ... from	يُزيل ... من
communicate with	يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	steal ... from	يسرق ... من

Mini Test (3) Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : مُجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- The police forces broke the cave and arrested the criminals.
a. in b. out c. into d. onto
- I have the latest applications my smartphone.
a. at b. from c. to d. on
- The thief stole a lot of money a supermarket.
a. of b. from c. with d. for
- I pressed the red button to stop the machine
a. working b. to working c. work d. to work
- I connected his absence غياب from school his illness.
a. at b. on c. by d. to
- What is true you may be wrong from my point of view.
a. as b. of c. for d. at
- Someone has hacked my Facebook account and posted false news about me.
a. into b. from c. of d. about
- There're some disadvantages modern technology.
a. into b. to c. on d. a & c
- Sama asked me to remove the peel the orange.
a. with b. for c. from d. at
- conclude, hard work is necessary for success in life and work.
a. In b. By c. Of d. To

1 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

scam - spam

- **scam** نصب / احتيال الانترنت (للاستيلاء على أموال الغير)
- The police have warned people about internet and phone **scam**. حذر
- **spam** رسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تحتوي على إعلانات غير مرغوب فيها
- I don't know how to delete all the **spam**.

Advertisement / advert / ad

- **Advertisement / advert / ad** إعلان (كلمة عامة)
- Don't believe **adverts**. Ask people who have already bought the products. المنتجات
- **commercial** إعلان تجاري (في التلفزيون / الإذاعة)
- This actress **started** in **commercials**. ممثلة
- **trailer** إعلان عن فيلم
- This web page is full of **trailers**.
- **promotion** حملة دعائية (للترويج لمنتج معين)
- The company spent 2 million dollars on **promotions** for the new product.
- **announcement** إعلان / تنبيه (نشر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تحذيرات - قرارات)
- We are waiting for the **announcement** of the decisions.

virus - antivirus - malware - hacker

- **virus** فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
- He is infected with **AIDS virus**. مصاب به
- **virus** فيروس إلكتروني (يسبب ضرر للأجهزة الحاسوبية)
- A **virus** has destroyed the data on my tablet.
- **anti-virus** مكافح فيروسات (برنامج لإزالة البرامج الضارة)
- Don't trust a free **anti-virus**. تثق به
- **malware** البرمجيات الخبيثة (برنامج يقوم بتدمير واتلاف أجهزة الحاسب والهواتف الذكية)
- A **malware** is a malicious software. برنامج خبيث
- **hacker** قرصان انترنت (شخص يخترق خصوصية أجهزة الكمبيوتر والبرامج الخاصة بالآخرين)
- A **hacker** has deleted the data from the central computer.

app = application

- **app = application** تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)
- Google play is full of free **apps / applications**.
- **application** طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)
- To join this club, fill in this **application** form.

communicate - contact

- **communicate** يتصل / يتواصل (عن طريق اللقاء / التليفون / الرسائل ... إلخ)
- I usually **communicate** with my friends by phone.
- **contact** يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع (عن طريق التليفون / الرسائل ... إلخ لطلب أو إعطاء معلومة)
- When I saw the smoke, I **contacted** the fire brigade المطافئ.

security - safety

- **security** الأمن / التأمين (يتعلق بحماية الأشخاص والممتلكات)
- The match was postponed تأجل for **security** reasons.
- **safety** الأمان (عدم الخوف وعدم وجود خطر)
- The airline is taking steps to ensure **safety** on its aircraft.

software - hardware

- **software** برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)
- I bought this antivirus **software**.
- **hardware** مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره)
- I need some kitchen **hardware**.

Mini Test (4)

Clear the Confusion

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The processor of the computer is part of its
a. software b. hardware c. malware d. a & b
- I got tired of the that is sent to my email.
a. spam b. scam c. download d. upload
- I handed my form to the secretary.
a. app b. application c. apply d. a & b
- She me about the time of the meeting.
a. communicated b. attached c. connected d. contacted

جزء لتنمية مهاراتك اللغوية التي تحتاج الى معرفة اكثر
من المفردات اللغوية الآتية ومشتقاتها واستخداماتها.

تنويه

2

دراسة المفردات الرئيسية More about key vocabulary

click

نقرة - صوت طقطقة

• click (n)

- With a single **click** on the mouse, you can get the information you need.
- The door shuts with a **click**.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
- shut / close -with a click يُحدث صوت تكة عند القفل

• click (on) (v)

ينقر - يُحدث صوت طقطقة

- I **clicked** on the link but it did not open.

communicate

• communicate (with) (v)

يتواصل - يتصل

- People from all over the world **communicate** with each other using emails.

• communicate ... to

يُبلغ ... ل / ينقل ... إلي

- The manager **communicated** the decisions to the secretary by email.

• communicate (to) (v)

يُعدي / ينقل مرض

- His flu was **communicated** to all his friends.

• communication (n)

اتصال / تواصل - القدرة علي التواصل

- Ayman's good **communication** makes him successful.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| - be in communication with | يكون علي تواصل مع |
| - a means of communication | وسيلة اتصال أو تواصل |
| - a lack of communication | انعدام التواصل |
| - poor communication | علاقة أو تواصل ضعيف |
| - direct communication | اتصال مباشر |
| - establish communication with | يقيم علاقات مع |
| - communication skills | مهارات التواصل |

كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت والراديو والتليفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية، و بهذا المعني فهي جمع دائما:

- Modern **communications** help us learn and work from home.

download - upload

- **download (v)** (من الإنترنت) \neq **upload (v)** يرفع ملف (على الإنترنت)
 - Sama **downloaded** some educational videos from EKB. بنك المعرفة المصري
 - He has **uploaded** some files on Google Drive.
 - **download (n)** ملف مُنزّل من الانترنت \neq **upload (n)** ملف مرفوع على الانترنت
 - I keep the **downloads** in a folder called «Internet Files».
 - Some websites pay you money for your **uploads**.
 - **downloading (n)** التنزيل من الانترنت \neq **uploading (n)** الرفع على الانترنت
 - **Downloading** files from the internet takes time than **uploading** them.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
- download ... from يُنزّل من
 - download to / onto يُنزّل إلى
 - upload ... to يرفع علي

hack

- **hack (into) (v)** يخترق / يقرصن (يحاول سراً الوصول إلى أو تغيير المعلومات علي أجهزة الغير)
 - She was able to **hack** the password.
- **hack / hacking (n)** عملية اختراق أجهزة الكمبيوتر (تهكير)
 - You need to protect your laptop against **hack**.
- **hack (n)** سياسي مغمور / كاتب غير محترف
 - The meeting was full of **hacks**.
- **hacker (n)** قرصان (هاكر)
 - I don't know how the **hacker** could get into the system.

the internet

- **the internet (n)** شبكة الإنترنت
 - لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the):
 - You can find all the information you need on **the internet**.
 - ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| - on the internet | علي الإنترنت |
| - go on the internet | يدخل علي الإنترنت |
| - buy ... on the internet | يشترى ... من علي الإنترنت |
| - surf the internet | يتصفح الإنترنت |
| - an internet connection | اتصال بالإنترنت |
| - internet shopping | التسوق عبر الإنترنت |
| - internet banking | الاعمال المصرفية علي الإنترنت |

link

يربط - يوصل

- **link (v)**

- Friendship **links** Mr Nasser **and** me.

يربط ... بـ

- **link ... to / with (v)**

- Friendship **links** me to / with Mr Nasser.

- This road **links** Cairo to Alexandria

يربط ... معاً

- **link ... together (v)**

- Friendship **links** Mr Nasser and me **together**.

- **link / linkage (between ... and...) (n)**

رابط / علاقة بين ... و ...

- Friendship is the **link** between Mr Nasser **and** me.

- **link (n)**

رابط (الصفحة أو موقع علي الانترنت)

- I will send you the **link** of my blog.

lock

يقفل - ينقفل

- **lock (v)**

- I **locked** the front door. – The front door is **locked**.

- **be locked in / into**

مقيّد بـ

- The player **was locked into** a three-year contract عقد.

- **lock ... in ...**

يحبس ... في ...

- The policeman **locked** the criminals in a cell زنزانة.

- **lock ... out**

يحجز ... خارج

- I am **locked out** because I have lost my keys.

- **lock + شخص + up / away**

يسجن ...

- The policeman **locked** the criminals up.

- The policeman **locked up** the criminals.

- **lock + شيء + up / away**

يضع ... في مكان آمن

- My mother **locks up/ away** her jewellery in the safe الخزنة.

- = My mother **locks** her jewellery **up / away** in the safe.

- **lock (n)**

القفل

- In hotels, there is a **lock** on each door.

- **locked (adj)**

مقفول

- You can't enter the office. The door is **locked**.

password

• password (n)

- You need to enter your **password** to check your email.

كلمة السر - كلمة المرور

• password-protected (n)

- All the data on the central computer are **password-protected**.

محمي باستخدام كلمة المرور

phishing

• phishing (n)

- He was arrested for **phishing**.

الاحتيال أو النصب الإلكتروني (خداع الناس للاستيلاء على أموالهم)

• phisher (n)

- He was arrested because he was a **phisher**.

نصاب / محتال عبر الإنترنت

scam

• scam (n)

- There was no flat for sale. It was just a **scam**.

عملية نصب أو احتيال - غش

• scam(med) (v)

- It is easy for evil **scam** simple people.

ينصب علي - يغش

• scammer (n)

- Don't believe him. He is a **scammer**.

نصاب - مُحتال - غشاش

security

• secure (d) (v)

- The police **secure** citizens and their property.

يحمي - يؤمن

• secure (d) (v)

- He used his farm to **secure** the loan.

يضمن (يستخدم شيء كضمان)

• secure (adj) **secure** ≠ **insecure**

- Your money is **secure** in the bank.

في خطر / غير محمي

• security (n) **security** ≠ **insecurity**

- The **security** forces protected the building.

انعدام الأمن

software

• software (n)

- I downloaded the new **software**.

برنامج حاسوبي (كلمة لا تُعد)

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- install software - يُثبَّت برنامج
- anti-virus software - برنامج مكافحة الفيروسات

- a piece of software - برنامج

technology

- **technology (n)** التكنولوجيا (الآلات والمعدات و الأساليب التي تعتمد علي التطور العلمي والحاسوبي)
- Modern **technology** has made life easy.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- Information Technology (IT)
- advanced technology
- digital technology
- advances / developments in technology

تكنولوجيا المعلومات
التكنولوجيا المتطورة
التكنولوجيا الرقمية
التطور التكنولوجي

- **technologist (n)** أخصائي / خبير تكنولوجيا
- In our school, Mr Mohammed Omar is a real **technologist**.
- **technological (adj)** تكنولوجي - متعلق بالتكنولوجيا
- Life has become faster thanks to **technological** development.

3 مقاطع بادئة Prefixes

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Examples	أمثلة
anti-		ضد		anti-virus antibiotic	مُكافح الفيروسات مضاد حيوي
cyber-		متعلق بالحواسيب وتكنولوجيا المعلومات		cyberbullying cyber-crime	التنمر الإلكتروني الجريمة الالكترونية
dis-		تُكوّن العكس		dishonest	غير أمين - مُخادع
down-		أسفل		downstairs	بالطابق الأسفل
down-		من الانترنت		download	تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الانترنت)
mal-		سيء - خبيث - مُصاب		malware	البرمجيات الخبيثة
self-		الذات - ذاتي		self-management	إدارة الذات
up-		أعلى		upstairs	بالطابق العلوي
up-		إلى الانترنت		upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الانترنت)

4

مقاطع ناهية suffixes

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ing	تُكوّن اسم / صفة	cyberbullying(n) embarrassing(adj)	التنمر الإلكتروني مُخْرِج
-ise / ize	تُكوّن فعل	summarise / summarize	يُلخّص
-ive	تُكوّن صفة	creative	مُبدِع - خلاق
-ment	تُكوّن اسم	management	إدارة
-ology / -logy	تُكوّن اسم له علاقة بالعلم أو التكنولوجيا	technology	التكنولوجيا

5

Listening & Reading Texts

1

Reading Texts

A. The Internet of Things

(SB page 52)

1. Linking⁽¹⁾ the world

Communication⁽²⁾ is no longer⁽³⁾ about people talking to one another, but about machines⁽⁴⁾ talking to machines. This is known as⁽⁵⁾ the Internet of Things (IOT).⁽⁶⁾ Technology⁽⁷⁾ is developing⁽⁸⁾ so fast that experts⁽⁹⁾ believe everyone will be connected to⁽¹⁰⁾ the IOT in a few years.



2. Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already⁽¹¹⁾, people can control⁽¹²⁾ their heating⁽¹³⁾ and lighting⁽¹⁴⁾ from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions⁽¹⁵⁾ for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish⁽¹⁶⁾ bins need to be emptied⁽¹⁷⁾ and control how much water we use!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) التواصل / الارتباط بـ
- (2) الاتصال
- (3) لم يعد
- (4) الآلات
- (5) معروف كـ
- (6) إنترنت الأشياء
- (7) التكنولوجيا
- (8) تتطور
- (9) الخبراء
- (10) مُتّصل بـ
- (11) بالفعل
- (12) يتحكم في
- (13) التدفئة
- (14) الإضاءة
- (15) القرارات
- (16) القمامة
- (17) يُفْرغ

3. No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones,⁽¹⁸⁾ but imagine⁽¹⁹⁾ if you can get a driverless⁽²⁰⁾ car to come and collect⁽²¹⁾ you using an app⁽²²⁾ on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric⁽²³⁾ and much cleaner⁽²⁴⁾ than petrol⁽²⁵⁾ ones. Experts think our roads will be safer⁽²⁶⁾ as there will be fewer accidents⁽²⁷⁾ using driverless cars.

4. Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet.⁽²⁸⁾ Computers collect information about people and businesses⁽²⁹⁾ which criminals⁽³⁰⁾ can steal.⁽³¹⁾ They use this information to hack⁽³²⁾ into organisations⁽³³⁾ like hospitals, power stations⁽³⁴⁾ and airports, and cause⁽³⁵⁾ major⁽³⁶⁾ security⁽³⁷⁾ problems.

Check Vocabulary

- (18) الهواتف الذكية
- (19) يتخيل
- (20) بدون سائق
- (21) يُخَضِّر - يجمع
- (22) تطبيق
- (23) كهربى
- (24) أنظف
- (25) البنزين
- (26) أكثر أماناً
- (27) حوادث
- (28) حتى الآن
- (29) الشركات
- (30) مجرمين
- (31) يسرق
- (32) يخترق
- (33) المؤسسات
- (34) محطات الطاقة
- (35) يُسبب
- (36) أساسى / رئيسى
- (37) مشكلات أمنية

B. Hassan's blog

(SB page 57)

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert⁽¹⁾ for a free⁽²⁾ game. I clicked⁽³⁾ on the link⁽⁴⁾ and wrote my name, address and some bank details.⁽⁵⁾ When I tried to download⁽⁶⁾ the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!⁽⁷⁾

My dad was furious⁽⁸⁾ because they stole⁽⁹⁾ money from his bank account⁽¹⁰⁾ and my computer stopped working properly!⁽¹¹⁾ Don't click on links you don't recognise⁽¹²⁾ and never give your personal details on a strange⁽¹³⁾ website. Oh, and remember to use anti-virus⁽¹⁴⁾ software⁽¹⁵⁾ to stop thieves!⁽¹⁶⁾

Check Vocabulary

- (1) إعلان
- (2) مجاني
- (3) ينقر
- (4) رابط
- (5) تفاصيل
- (6) يُحْمَل
- (7) احتيال - غش
- (8) ساخط / غاضب جداً
- (9) يسرق
- (10) حساب
- (11) بشكل صحيح
- (12) يتعرف على
- (13) غريب
- (14) مضاد فيروسات
- (15) برنامج حاسوبى
- (16) لصوص

C. Stay safe online

(SB page 57)

Don't add your personal details to a website.

Do change your password⁽¹⁾ often.

Don't click on a link⁽²⁾ you don't recognise⁽³⁾.

Do lock⁽⁴⁾ your phone.

Do lock your social media accounts⁽⁵⁾.

Don't upload embarrassing⁽⁶⁾ photos.

Don't save bank details on a website.

Do use anti-virus software.

Do use different passwords on different websites.

Don't write unkind comments⁽⁷⁾ about other people.

Check Vocabulary

(1) كلمة سر

(2) ينقر على رابط

(3) يتعرف على

(4) يغلق

(5) حسابات مواقع

التواصل الاجتماعي

(6) محرج

(7) تعليقات سيئة

2 Listening texts

A. Boy : I don't think we'll ever live on the moon.

(SB page 54)

Girl: Lots of people are going to study online in the future.

Boy : Did you know that in 2039 the worldwide web will be 50 years old ?

Girl: I can't find the restaurant. I'll check my satnav.

Boy : My mum is buying a new flexible smartphone next week.



B. Hassan : Last week, I was reading about (SB page 56)

a new online game⁽¹⁾ and saw an advert⁽²⁾ that said I could get this game for free. All I had to do was complete a form⁽³⁾ with my name, email address⁽⁴⁾ and credit⁽⁵⁾ card details⁽⁶⁾. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course, it was a scam⁽⁷⁾. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لعبة على الإنترنت

(2) إعلان

(3) يملا / يكمل استمارة

(4) عنوان

(5) (حساب بنكي)

(6) تفاصيل

(7) احتيال / غش

Laila : I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers⁽⁸⁾ often look online to see what we've posted⁽⁹⁾, so I decided to google⁽¹⁰⁾ my name to see what they might find. It was scary. All the photos and the "funny" comments⁽¹¹⁾ I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete⁽¹²⁾ them. I didn't realise⁽¹³⁾ it's almost impossible to remove personal data⁽¹⁴⁾ from the internet.

Saeed : I love reading my friend's social media posts⁽¹⁵⁾, but some people write really horrible⁽¹⁶⁾ things about other teenagers. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments⁽¹⁷⁾ about how he looked and how ugly⁽¹⁸⁾ his bike is. I couldn't believe it ! These kids would never, never bully⁽¹⁹⁾ my friend at school, so why do it online ? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now !

- (8) اصحاب العمل
- (9) يرسل منشور
- (10) يبحث على جوجل
- (11) تعليقات
- (12) ي حذف
- (13) يدرك
- (14) بيانات شخصية
- (15) منشورات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
- (16) فظيع / رهيب
- (17) تعليقات وقحة
- (18) قبيح
- (19) يتنمر / يبلطج

3 Workbook texts

Internet use in Egypt

(WB page 116)

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent⁽¹⁾ survey⁽²⁾ found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

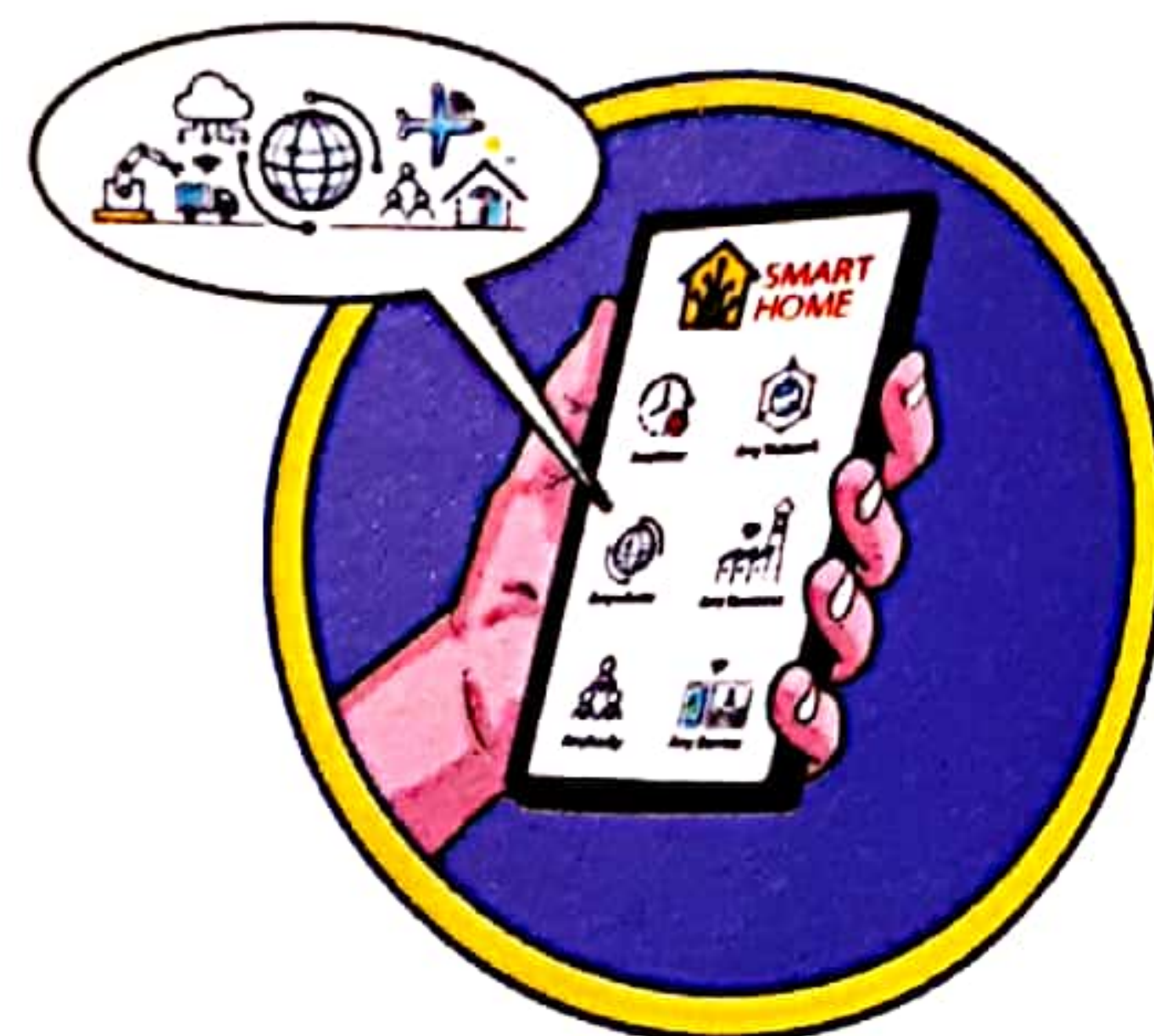
In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day,

usually for communication, so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones, so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility⁽³⁾ that their computer might be hacked.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) حالي / حديث
- (2) احصاء / استبيان
- (3) امكانية / احتمالية



4 Video script section

Sometimes teenagers experience⁽¹⁾ bullying⁽²⁾ because they look different, have different abilities⁽³⁾ or different opinions⁽⁴⁾ and experiences.

If you think someone is being bullied⁽⁵⁾, what should you do ?

Parents and teachers are there to give advice⁽⁶⁾ when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer⁽⁷⁾ to help the person tell their parents.

You can keep a note⁽⁸⁾ of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information⁽⁹⁾ to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully⁽¹⁰⁾ about everything they have done.

Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure⁽¹¹⁾ that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour⁽¹²⁾. Spend time talking and socialising⁽¹³⁾ with them to help them build new friendships⁽¹⁴⁾. Invite them to join your friends.

Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

Check Vocabulary

- | |
|-----------------------|
| (1) يجرب |
| (2) التنمر |
| (3) قدرات |
| (4) آراء |
| (5) يتم التنمر عليه |
| (6) يعطى نصيحة |
| (7) يعرض |
| (8) يدون ملاحظات |
| (9) معلومات كثيرة |
| (10) المتنمر |
| (11) تأكد من |
| (12) سلوك |
| (13) يتشارك اجتماعيًا |
| (14) صداقات |

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What can you do to help yourself remember what the bully has done ?
2. How can you help a person who is being bullied ?
3. What can you do with your friends to help stop the bully ?

General Exercises

On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

1. Somebody into the company's central database. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٠)
a. hacked b. communicated c. contacted d. broken
2. Don't with bad friends. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٠)
a. contact b. connect c. associate d. all of them
3. You can someone you have recently met to see what information is available about them on the internet. (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٠)
a. google b. download c. upload d. hack
4. I want to some apps to my new smartphone. (سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٠)
a. load b. download c. upload d. unload

5. A scam is an online trick used to
 a. legally take someone's money b. win a match
 c. rob someone of their money d. destroy a building
6. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big (السوان - دراو ٢٠٢٠)
 a. skim b. scar c. scam d. scan
7. We all should defend the victims of in our schools. (السوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٠)
 a. rucksack b. bullying
 c. gravel d. conservationists
8. programs can cause your device not to work properly. (السوان ٢٠٢٠)
 a. Software b. Malware c. Security d. Hardware
9. You shouldn't ask strangers , questions.
 a. scientific b. legal c. public d. personal
10. Although he was in disguise مُتكر, I was able to him. (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٠)
 a. concept b. release c. realise d. recognise

II Key & important vocabulary

11. "I must,," she said. "My train leaves in ten minutes."
 a. flow b. flee c. fly d. flea
12. Sugar is a cause of tooth decay تسويس.
 a. major b. minor c. remote d. distant
13. One must always their password to keep their accounts safe.
 a. change b. charge c. recharge d. exchange
14. He is a short-tempered person, so be about what you say to him.
 a. careless b. care c. cares d. careful
15. A / An is a computer programme designed to do a specific function.
 a. app b. CV c. advert d. PhD
16. is tricking someone into giving information or money over the internet or by email.
 a. Malware b. Phishing c. Anti-virus d. Password
17. When I heard the of the gun parts, I knew the man was about to shoot.
 a. direct b. object c. check d. click
18. He wants to a malware from his tablet.
 a. remove b. recognize c. develop d. design

19. This webpage is full of job I found my current job here.
 a. anti-virus b. malware c. adverts d. satnav
20. To protect your data and privacy الخصوصية, you need a strong
 a. hacker b. anti-virus c. malware d. blog
21. There must be a law to criminalize يُجرِّم
 a. technology b. satnav
 c. cyberbullying d. internet of things
22. The has made information exchange تبادل very easy.
 a. satnav b. app c. advert d. internet
23. My tablet is- protected. No one else can use it.
 a. website b. internet c. password d. virus
24. If you have a / an, you can surf the internet on it.
 a. smartphone b. technology c. advert d. online
25. Both anti-viruses and malwares are computer
 a. hardware b. hardwares c. software d. softwares
26. You need to protect your Facebook
 a. network b. account c. evidence d. intention
27. Self - is necessary to the success of any person.
 a. manage b. manager c. managed d. management
28. Captains of ships and car drivers use to know where they are and how to reach a place.
 a. adverts b. satnav c. IOT d. ID
29. The officer asked me about the of the accident.
 a. details b. organisations c. offers d. networks
30. I think a car is not safe to travel in.
 a. modern b. driverless c. strong d. big
31. Watching too many videos the battery of the mobile.
 a. imagines b. steals c. empties d. charges
32. New laws have been to stop cyberbullying.
 a. taken b. warned c. done d. introduced
33. My teacher asked me to a novel in only one page.
 a. write b. summarize c. intend d. remove
34. I two train tickets to Cairo.
 a. tested b. rang c. embarrassed d. booked
35. Facebook, Twitter, Instagram and WhatsApp are social
 a. evidence b. surveys c. media d. offers

51. This police officer thinks there's a between the recent explosion and the terrorist threats.

- a. linked b. link c. links d. linker

52. and advertisement are synonyms.

- a. Advert b. Advance c. Addition d. Adverb

53. Don't worry, sir. There's on the door of the room.

- a. lock b. locked c. locks d. a lock

54. Don't worry, sir. You can the door of the room.

- a. lock b. locked c. locks d. a lock

55. Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is

- a. lock b. locked c. locks d. a lock

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To join this club, fill in this

- a. programme b. application c. malware d. bucket

2. A device is a machine or tool used for a purpose.

- a. particular b. popular c. connected d. online

3. If I don't hear the of the lock, you know the door isn't locked.

- a. comment b. possibility c. post d. click

4. His intelligence itself to us in everything he does.

- a. contacts b. connects c. communicates d. receives

5. You are no more than a who frightens people online.

- a. cyberbullying b. cyberbully c. phishing d. scam

6. is a giant digital library.

- a. An internet b. Internet c. Net d. The internet

7. Love of beauty the two writers.

- a. links b. uploads c. bullies d. provides

8. I can't leave the club. I'm in a five-year contract.

- a. connected b. linked c. locked d. communicated

9. My father refused to use the family house to my brother's loan from the bank.

- a. borrow b. lend c. secure d. endanger

10. Saudi Arabia buys military like tanks and الدبابات and missiles الصواريخ from the USA.

- a. software b. hardware c. presentation d. prediction



1 The "will" Future

التكوين Formation

يتكون المستقبل البسيط في هذه الصيغة في المبنى للمعلوم من :
في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

subject الفاعل + will / shall + inf.

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط.

ex. - I will (shall) help you do your homework.

- Nada will be four next March.

عند النفي : subject الفاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf.

ex. - We won't be ready before he comes back.

- Ahmed won't attend the party.

عند السؤال بـ «هل» : will / shall + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. - Will you wait for the bus ?

- Yes, I will (wait for the bus).

- No, I won't (wait for the bus).

- عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

question word أداة الاستفهام + will / shall + subject فاعل + inf. ?

ex. - When will you go to bed ?

- What will they do next ?

يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبنى للمجهول من :

object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p.

ex. - A camera will be bought (by Rodayna) tomorrow.

Mini Test (1)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I will 21 next Monday.

a. am

b. is

c. be

d. being

2. show me your new tablet ?

a. You will

b. What will you

c. You won't

d. Will you

3. I think he for returning home late.

a. will punish

c. won't punish

b. will be punished

d. is punishing

Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (أحداث ليس للفاعل أو رغباته أو إرادته دخل فيها):

- ex. - It's my birthday next Tuesday. I'll be 17.
- The school will be ten years old this year.

٢ التعبير عن قرار سريع (رد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام):

- ex. - Oh, that's the doorbell. I'll open it.

٣ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل، ويمكن في هذه الحالة أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل:

يخشى **be afraid** / متأكد **be sure** / يأمل **hope** / يتوقع **expect** / يعتقد **think**
..... يفترض **suppose** / يتساءل **wonder**

- ex. - I expect Lucy and Jim will stay for dinner.
- I think it will rain.

- ومن الممكن أن يصاحب ذلك بعض الظروف مثل:

- ex. - Perhaps I'll go home early today.
- She will probably refuse to take any money.

٤ عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة أو الدعوة:

- ex. - You look very thirsty. I'll get you a cold drink.

٥ عند طلب خدمة:

- ex. - Will you let me use your mobile, please?

٦ التعبير عن الوعود:

- ex. - My father has promised that we will spend a month in Sharm El-Sheikh.

٧ توجيه تهديدات:

- ex. - Do your homework or I'll punish you.

② The "Be + going to + inf. form

١ في الجمل المثبتة :

subject الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- ex. - Mohammed is going to play tennis.
- I'm going to study medicine.

٢ عند النفي :

subject الفاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + inf.

- ex. - Mr Walid isn't going to play squash.

٣ عند السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. ?

- ex. - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting ?
- Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).
- No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).

- السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

question word أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. ?

- ex. - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday ?

٤ في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + p.p.

- ex. - Tennis is going to be played (by Mr Ali).

Mini Test (2) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We the next summer holiday in Alexandria.
 - will be spent
 - going to spend
 - are going to be spent
 - are going to spend
- the office ?
 - When are you going to leave
 - You are going to leave
 - Are you going to be left
 - You are going to be left
- Someone to prison for this crime.
 - is going to send
 - is going to be sent
 - will send
 - going to send

Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن الخطط الشخصية المسبقة "plans" :

- ex. - I am going to decorate my house.
 = I have planned to decorate my house.
 = I have made a plan to decorate my house.

٢ التعبير عن النية (intend / intention) لعمل شيء في المستقبل :

- ex. - He is going to study medicine at university.
 = He intends to study medicine at university.
 = He has the intention to study medicine at university.

٣ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة وجود دليل (أي يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء) :

- ex. - His leg is broken. He is going to have an operation.
 - وبهذا المعنى يمكن استخدام "going to" بعد أفعال مثل :

be sure / be afraid / believe / think

- ex. - Mum is very ill. I think she is going to see a doctor.
 - لاحظ ان الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلاً وتستخدم معها (will) :
 ex. - He will win the running race. He's very fast.

٤ وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

- ex. - He is going to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has decided to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has made a decision to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has made up his mind to have lunch outdoors.

٥ وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث :

be going to + inf. = be about to علي وشك + inf.

- ex. - I'm going to leave right now.
 = I'm about to leave.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

Affirmation الإثبات	تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل + (inf. + ing) + am / is / are + الفاعل Subj. - Hany is visiting our school tomorrow.
Negation النفي	Subj. + am not / isn't / aren't + (inf. + ing) - Hany isn't visiting our school tomorrow.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Am / Is / Are + Subj. + (inf. + ing)? - Is Hany visiting your school tomorrow?
'Wh__' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	الفاعل Subj. + am / is / are + أداة الاستفهام Q.W. + (inf. + ing) ? - When is Hany visiting your school?
Passive المبني للمجهول	Obj. + am / is / are + being + P.P. - Our school is being visited (by Hany) tomorrow.

Mini Test (3) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Malak some friends tomorrow evening.
a. meets b. will meet c. going to meet d. is meeting
2. your birthday party tomorrow ?
a. What are you giving b. Are you giving
c. You are giving d. Are you being given
3. Our guests at the airport by the manager himself.
a. are welcoming b. are going to welcome
c. are being welcomed d. will welcome

Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن المستقبل القريب في حالة وجود ترتيبات نهائية مسبقة ، و يدل علي ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / made arrangements / prepared / made preparations

ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is **arranged**.

٢ لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My brother **is getting married** next Thursday.

٣ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My class **are going on** a school trip next week.

٤ إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتباً له وبالتالي نستخدم المضارع المستمر :

ex. - I **can't go** out with you tonight because I'm **meeting** my uncle at the airport.

4 The Present Simple for Timetables

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث أو المواقف المرتبطة بجداول مواعيد ثابتة مثل الطائرات والقطارات والمباريات والحصص والامتحانات ومواعيد العمل:

- ex. - My train **arrives** at 7:15 tomorrow morning.
- The match **starts** at 9 p.m. next Friday.

ملاحظات هامة على صيغ المستقبل Important Notes on Future Forms

١ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية تدل على المستقبل ، وتأتي في نهاية الجملة ، لكن عندما تأتي في بداية الجملة نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) بعدها:

tomorrow / in the future / soon / one day / next (year / month / week / Friday.....) this time (next week / tomorrow.....) in (a year, month, week.....) بعد / خلال (next week / tomorrow morning / 2030.....) قبيل / بحلول

- She **will do** the shopping tomorrow.
- Next Monday, I **am visiting** my uncle.

٢ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

مستقبل / جملة أمر → حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + After / as soon as / When / the moment

- After I **arrive** home, I'll **take** a rest.
- **Tell** Ahmed to call me the moment you **see** him.

مستقبل / جملة أمر → حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + before

- Before we **leave** the office, I'll **phone** some clients.
- **Don't leave** here before you **finish** all your jobs.

حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + till / until + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفي (غالبا) / جملة أمر

- Mum **won't set** the table for lunch until my father **arrives** home.
- **Don't put** the bread in the shopping bag until it completely **cools**.

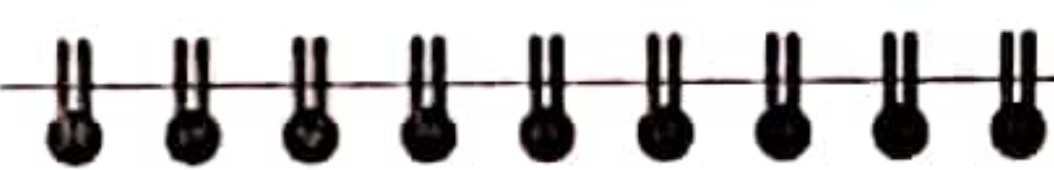
٣ أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والتملك وكذلك (be) لا تُستخدم في المضارع المستمر كأفعال أساسية، وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم (will) ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

المشاعر Feeling	like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish.
Senses الحواس	hear, see, smell, feel, taste, sound, appear, يبدو seem, look يبدو.
Communication التواصل	promise, satisfy, يُرضي surprise, deny, يُنكر agree, disagree.
Perception الإدراك	realize, يُدرك understand, know, mean, think = believe, يعتقد imagine, يتخيل recognize, يتعرف على remember, forget.
Other verbs أفعال أخرى	be, belong, concern, depend, يعتمد involve, يشمل matter يهم own = possess يملك need, owe, يدين

- I think she's agreeing with me. (X)
- I think she will agree with me. (✓)

Notes for more understanding

ملاحظات هامة



١ لاحظ استخدام (will) :

Subject + promise / offer / threaten + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- I **promise to lend** you the money you need.
- I **will lend** you the money you need.

Subject + have / has just decided + to + inf.
= Subject + (have / has) made a quick decision + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- I **have just decided to watch** a film on TV.
- I **will watch** a film on TV.

.... don't / doesn't want + to + inf.
= hope / hopes + won't + inf.

- Mum **doesn't want my brother to get** bad marks.
- Mum **hopes my brother won't get** bad marks.

.... predict / expect..... + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- We **expect** Bassem **to win** the gold medal.
- Bassem **will win** the gold medal.

٢ لاحظ استخدام (going to) :

Subject + intend / have intentions / plans / have plans + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- She **has plans to study** physics at university.
- She **is going to study** physics at university.

Subject + (have / has) decided + to + inf.
= Subject + (have / has) made a decision + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- We **have decided to move** to another flat.
- We **are going to move** to another flat.

Subject + have / has made up mind + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- He **has made up his mind to find** another job.
- = He **is going to find** another job.

Subject + am / is / are + about to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- He is collecting his things. He **is about to leave** the office.
- He is collecting his things. He **is going to leave** the office.

- يُستخدم المضارع البسيط أو التام وليس (will / be going to) بعد الروابط الزمنية مباشرة ولكن يمكن استخدامهما في الجملة الرئيسية (الثانية)

- After I (will arrive – am going to arrive – **arrive**) home, I **will take** a shower.
- Before she (**has left** – is going to leave – will leave) the office, she **is going to send** the emails.

٣ لاحظ استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية :

- Subject + (have /has) arranged / prepared / made arrangements + to + inf.

= Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing)

- I **have arranged to take** a course in English next month.

- I **am taking** a course in English next month.

٤ لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية: (When) (After) (Before) (until)

- She **will buy** some fruit. Then, she **will return** home.

= When she **buys** some fruit, she **will return** home.

= After she **buys** some fruit, she **will return** home.

= Before she **returns** home, she **will buy** some fruit.

= She **won't return** home until she **buys** some fruit.

Exercises

On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I am starving, I am not doing anything until I something to eat.

- a. have b. will have c. was having d. had

2. Oh, the water is boiling. I off the gas.

- a. will turn b. am going to turn
c. am turning d. turn

3. A: We haven't got any sugar. B: I know. I some this evening.

- a. will buy b. am going to buy
c. will be buying d. will have bought

4. A party in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.

- a. is giving b. is being given
c. gives d. is going to give

5. It's the first time I've ever seen this hotel. I've decided that I
in it next month.
a. am going to stay b. will stay c. am staying d. have stayed
6. The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. It looks as if it
down.
a. will fall b. is falling c. is going to fall d. falls
7. We tomorrow. We have booked our tickets.
a. are travelling b. will travel
c. travel d. going to travel
8. A: How old are you? B: I 44 next February.
a. am b. am going to be
c. will be d. am being
9. I have made up my mind. I a new house.
a. am going to buy b. will buy
c. am buying d. buy
10. A: I don't know how to use this camera.
B: It's quite easy. I you.
a. am showing b. am going to show
c. will show d. show
11. Our school part in the sports competition next week. That has
been arranged.
a. will take b. takes
c. is taking d. is going to take
12. I expect that Reem married next year.
a. get b. will get c. has got d. gets
13. Watch out! You the flower vase.
a. would drop b. are going to drop
c. drop d. are dropping
14. I work early today. I have arranged that with the manager.
a. leave b. am going to leave
c. am leaving d. will leave
15. The train Aswan at 8:00 o'clock. It's on the timetable.
a. is going to leave b. will leave
c. is leaving d. leaves
16. I expect that my team the match.
a. is winning b. is going to win
c. will win d. wins

17. A: Why are you taking down all the pictures? B: I the room.
a. paint b. am going to paint
c. will paint d. am painting
18. My English lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
a. start b. has been starting
c. starts d. is stating
19. I've decided to buy a mobile. I a smart one.
a. will buy b. buy
c. am going to buy d. am buying
20. They a party next Monday. Everything is arranged.
a. would have b. has
c. have d. are having
21. The agent says my flight at 7 o'clock tomorrow.
a. is b. shall be c. will be d. is being
22. She looks extremely pale شاحبة. I think she
a. will faint b. is fainting
c. is going to faint d. faint
23. I think my cousin law. He is keen on defending people.
a. would study b. is going to study
c. studying d. will study
24. A: I've decided to set up a business.
B: Oh, have you? When start?
a. shall you b. do you
c. are you going to d. will you
25. I dinner today, mum. You look tired.
a. prepare b. will prepare
c. am preparing d. am going to prepare
26. A: What arrangements have you made for next week?
B: I to Alexandria with my father.
a. will travel b. am travelling
c. am going to travel d. travel
27. A: What are your personal plans for the next two years?
B: I a new house.
a. build b. will build
c. am building d. am going to build
28. Twenty years from now, I think my country a fantastic place.
a. is b. is going to be
c. will be d. shall be

II Warm up

29. He is going to catch the bus when it
 a. arrives b. will arrive c. arrived d. arrive
30. When you arrive, me at once.
 a. are going to call b. are calling
 c. will call d. call
31. Don't wash the dishes if you in a hurry.
 a. were b. are being c. are d. have been
32. I can't go out with you this afternoon. I my homework.
 a. do b. going to do c. will do d. am doing
33. A: When are you going to leave for Rome?
 B: I tomorrow on the 6:00 o'clock plane.
 a. leave b. am leaving
 c. am going to leave d. will leave
34. It is raining heavily. Don't go out or you wet.
 a. get b. will get
 c. are going to get d. are getting
35. A: Make a prediction about your life ten years from now.
 B: I married.
 a. will be b. am
 c. am getting d. am going to get
36. He is brave by nature. He the problem.
 a. face b. facing
 c. is going to face d. will face
37. You won't leave the office until the manager you.
 a. called b. had called c. has called d. call
38. After the manager has called you, you the office at once.
 a. will leave b. won't leave c. have left d. left
39. In ten years' time, my father even older.
 a. will look b. is looking c. going to look d. looks
40. As soon as my son for school, I'll do the housework.
 a. will leave b. have left c. leaves d. had left

III Check your understanding

41. "I won't go to bed until my father returns home." I mean that
- I will go to bed before my father arrives home.
 - once I go to bed, my father will arrive home.
 - once my father arrives home, I will go to bed.
 - I won't go to bed after my father arrives home.
42. "Everything is arranged for my brother's wedding tomorrow." What does this mean?
- My brother will get married tomorrow.
 - My brother gets married tomorrow.
 - My brother will be got married tomorrow.
 - My brother is getting married tomorrow.
43. "My father has made up his mind about selling the old car to the mechanic for 70,000 pounds." What does this mean?
- My father is going to sell the old car to the mechanic.
 - My father won't sell the old car to the mechanic.
 - My father isn't selling the old car to the mechanic.
 - My father sells the car to the mechanic.
44. "I am about to leave soon." This means
- I'm being left soon.
 - I am going to leave soon.
 - I will leave soon.
 - I leave soon.
45. "Omar has decided to redecorate his flat." This means
- Omar will redecorate his flat.
 - Omar is going to redecorate his flat.
 - Omar is redecorating his flat.
 - Omar redecorates his flat.
46. "I'm going to look for a better job." This is a / an
- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
| a. prediction | b. threat | c. intention | d. promise |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
47. "Karim will come first this year." This is a / an
- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
| a. prediction | b. threat | c. intention | d. promise |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|------------|

48. "I will buy you a tablet for your birthday." This is a / an
 a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
49. "Keep calm or I'll send you out." This is a / an
 a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
50. "This school will be 70 years old next year." This is a / an
 a. fact b. future fact
 c. plan d. arrangement
51. Watch out! You're going to step into a hole. This means that the addressee المُخاطَب into a hole.
 a. will step b. will be stepped
 c. is about to step d. has stepped

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

1 We are very busy at home. We (a) giving my sister's birthday party. She (b) be nine. I (c) promised that I will buy (d) a tablet as a birthday present.

a. b. c. d.

2 We all dream about our future. However, I have plans, (a) just dreams. I (b) going to start (c) business. I'm sure (d) will be a success.

a. b. c. d.

3 Everything in our school works to a timetable. (a) first lesson (b) at 7:30. Each period (c) 45 minutes long. We (d) school at 2:15 in the afternoon.

a. b. c. d.

4 The Omars have made their arrangements for the next summer holiday. They (a) spending (b) in Sharm. They (c) booked their rooms there already. They hope it (d) be enjoyable.

a. b. c. d.

5 My secretary has some instructions for tomorrow. As soon as she (a) at the office, she (b) check the inbox mail (c) arrange the meetings (d) customers.

a. b. c. d.

Advanced Exercise on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She to the park with us in the evening tomorrow. She knows all about it.

a. goes b. will go c. is going to go d. is going

2. I can see you are busy, so I long.

a. am not staying b. will stay
c. won't stay d. am not going to stay

3. I some old friends at the club tomorrow evening.

a. will see b. am seeing
c. am going to be seen d. see

4. I'll try to advise her but I know she

a. doesn't listen b. isn't listening
c. won't listen d. isn't going to listen

5. You so lazy. Stop it, please. It's annoying.

a. will be b. are being c. are going to be d. are to be

6. Being intelligent, she first next year.

a. comes b. is coming
c. is going to come d. will come

7. I here until he returns to tell him the instructions.

a. will wait b. won't wait c. waited d. didn't wait

8. Not until the manager calls me the office.

a. I leave b. I have left c. will I leave d. did I leave

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

Our school manager is strict صارم. (a) late for school more than five minutes, you (b) be allowed (c) (d), you won't be able to take part in the school activities.

a. b. c. d.

Part V Grammatical Hints from Reading & Listening

On

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) مع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

on (TV, the radio, the telephone, the internet, social media, mass media, a social networking site, a website)

ex. - People share information about themselves on social networking sites.

..... spend + money / time

spend money on + n. / inf. + ing = spend money to + inf.

ex. - He spent a lot of money on (buying) clothes.

= He spent a lot of money to buy new clothes.

spend time + n. / inf. + ing

ex. - She spent two days preparing for the party.

- It's a waste of time / money + (inf. + ing) ... مضيعة للوقت / المال ...

- It's a waste of money cooking all this food for two people.

..... verb + obj. مفعول (inf. + ing)

هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (obj. + ing)، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

catch - discover - feel - hear - leave - notice - observe - see -
watch - find - overhear يتنصت

ex. - The police caught him hiding the money he had stolen.

- I saw him running in the street.

ومع أفعال أخرى يكون (inf. + ing) اختصار لـ (by + inf. + ing) :

ex. - People connect to the internet by using their smartphones.

= People connect to the internet using their smartphones.

yet

١ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل المنفية في المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة. وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن :

ex. - My father hasn't arrived yet. (I expect he will arrive.)

٢ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل الاستفهامية في المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً في نهاية السؤال، وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن :

ex. - Has Amira called yet? (I expect she will call.)

٣ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) بعد صفات التفضيل :

ex. - As a writer, this is my best book yet.

٤ تُستخدم (yet) كأداة ربط بمعنى (لكن / ومع ذلك) وفي هذه الحالة تساوي (but) في المعنى :

ex. - He is very intelligent, yet too lazy to do anything.

Exercises

On Grammatical Hints

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I haven't done the shopping
a. just b. already c. ago d. yet
- She spent the weekend her mother.
a. helping b. helped c. help d. helps
- They spent a lot of money their new flat.
a. on b. to c. with d. of
- Haven't you eaten your dinner ?
a. ago b. after c. yet d. just
- She spent a week for her birthday party.
a. preparing b. prepare c. prepares d. prepared
- She spent all her saving a modern car.
a. buys b. buy c. to buying d. to buy
- This is Salah's best goal
a. never b. yet c. but d. however
- There will be better education modern technology.
a. use b. used c. to use d. using
- It is a waste of time online for three hours.
a. chatted b. to chatting c. chatting d. a chat

10. She is stupid very beautiful.
 a. yet b. although c. since d. as
11. Listen to these people about modern technology.
 a. talks b. be talked c. talking d. talked
12. You can find information about everything the internet.
 a. of b. on c. for d. about

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

Social media have changed a lot of things in our lives. We no longer spend a long time (a) or waiting for traditional letters. We now have access to instant communication (b) the internet. Social media (c) very useful (d) time consuming مضبعة للوقت if we are not careful.

a. b. c. d.

Part VI

Language Skills

1

Essay Writing

كتابة المقال

* Write an essay about 150 words about a story you have read :

My plans for the future

Everyone has his or her future plans. It is a good thing to have your own future plans. These plans are the goals that you want to achieve. In this essay, I'm going to write about both my work plans and my family plans.

My work plans are very simple. I want to have a good job which pays me enough money. My dream job is to be an accountant in a bank. Although accountants work hard for many hours, they earn a lot of money. As an accountant, I won't need to look for extra work. As soon as I leave my work, I will give the rest of the day to my family.

My family plans are very ambitious. I intend to have a small family. My wife must have a good education. I prefer that she should be a housewife, but I don't mind if she has her own job. I wish I could live in a villa, not a flat. I want my villa to have a large garden with a swimming pool.

However, plans don't achieve themselves. I must work hard to reach my dreams. Without hard work and good planning, my plans will stay in the world of dreams.

2 الترجمة Translation

تنويه برجاء الرجوع للجزء الخاص بالترجمة في الكتاب التأسيسي Skill builder

① Translate into Arabic :

1. Egypt has achieved significant progress in various fields of industry, education and modern technology.
2. In the future, the only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still in this ever-changing world.
3. Many people now use smartphones which can connect to the internet and send emails. These phones can help you control your personal life as well as your business.

② Translate into English :

- ١- إضاعة الوقت من أهم سلبيات استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، فيجب عليك أن تحدد الوقت الذي يمكنك أن تقضيه على هذه المواقع.
- ٢- يُعتبر التليفون المحمول ثورة كبيرة في عالم الاتصالات، فلقد جعل من الممكن التواصل مع أي إنسان في أي مكان بسرعة كبيرة.
- ٣- تُتيح الأجيال الجديدة من الهواتف الذكية إجراء مكالمات الفيديو، كما أنها تتيح الكثير من التطبيقات التي تساعدك في دراستك أو عملك.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

achievements	إنجازات	revolution	ثورة
fields	مجالات	significant	ملحوظ / بارز
industry	صناعة		

أحرص على التدريب المستمر

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدريبات للتقويم المستمر على كل وحدة

★ اختبار تراكمي

★ تدريبات للأزهر

★ تدريبات على المهارات

★ اختبارات على المنهج



Consolidate

your Vocabulary From Chapter 5

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية
بالقصة المقررة جزء القصة نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The police forces the terrorists killing some of them and arresting the rest.
a. caught b. honoured c. fought d. realised
2. I won't help you with the cooking. You will have to do it your own.
a. about b. from c. of d. on
3. The new coach won the Super Cup in his first match, which was a good
a. spade b. start c. sail d. fight
4. We had to lower خفض the because there was a storm.
a. sails b. seals c. soil d. harbour
5. I asked my teacher to a maths problem to me.
a. think b. understand c. realise d. explain
6. Do you want to swim in this stormy weather ? Don't be
a. correct b. right c. wise d. crazy
7. I city life to living in the countryside.
a. sailed b. prefer c. explained d. started
8. Without sun cream, the sun will your skin.
a. cool b. shower c. burn d. freeze
9. President Sadat was an intelligent
a. leader b. sailor c. businessman d. pirate
10. Don't what he says. He is a big liar.
a. lead b. burn c. believe d. prefer



A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you need any help, me please.
a. control b. communicate c. connect d. contact
2. Salma is still the phone. I think we'd better start dinner without her.
a. with b. on c. of d. at
3. After our national team had won the final match, everyone was flags of Egypt high.
a. flying b. rising c. donating d. wearing
4. His evil hobby is to into others' accounts.
a. hook b. hock c. halt d. hack
5. I want to malware from my tablet.
a. download b. remove c. upload d. develop
6. The IOT is internet of things.
a. refer to b. abbreviate to c. short for d. abbreviation
7. is considered a crime.
a. Uploading b. Downloading c. Phishing d. fishing
8. I heard the of the gun and I knew that the criminal was going to shoot.
a. danger b. decision c. self d. click
9. The software downloaded from this website is mostly which will damage your computer.
a. malware b. hardware c. adverts d. apps
10. This will help you design photos.
a. lock b. communication
c. virus d. app
11. The flight at nine o'clock. Don't be late.
a. leaves b. is leaving c. was leaving d. left
12. Look out! You in the ditch.
a. will fall b. are falling
c. fall d. are going to fall

13. I will see her after she back.
 a. comes b. came c. will come d. had come
14. We have some fantastic news. My sister a baby.
 a. will have b. is having
 c. shall have d. is going to have
15. you let me use your mobile?
 a. Have b. Do c. Can d. Will
16. Everything has been prepared for the journey. My family and I
 to Alexandria tomorrow.
 a. will go b. are going to go
 c. is going d. are going

17. Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

I have an English friend called Martin. He (a) visiting Egypt (b) the first time next Friday. His plane (c) at Cairo Airport at 13:00. He will find me (d) for him at the arrival hall.

a.

b.

c.

d.

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In this short article, we are going to take a brief look at the most precious substance on the Earth- water. Water is very important for all living things. It is considered the artery of life. No one can do without it.

The Earth's surface is two-thirds water, yet most of this is undrinkable or unusable because it is either seawater or ice. Of the 1% that is available as fresh water, most is used for farming or goes to industry. Fresh water contamination is the major problem since it is all too easy to pollute rivers and streams with pesticides from agriculture as well as industrial waste from factories and sewage.

In poor and developing countries, the addition of sewage to sources of water leads to serious diseases that inevitably lead to death. In China, a United Nations report estimates that over 78% of people drink from polluted water supplies. Unfortunately, although humankind has made enormous efforts to control the supply of fresh water by constructing more than 35,000 dams throughout the world, falling water tables, shrinking rivers and lakes, and loss of wildlife are the results.

a. By building dams. **b.** By dropping sewage into it.
c. By evaporation and condensation **d.** By melting it.

a. positive **b. negative** **c. equal** **d. good**

a. eighty-seven b. seventy-eight
c. twenty-two d. one

a. drunk b. iced
c. used for washing and farming d. stored

*** Answer the following questions :**

23. What are the long-run effects of polluting fresh water? Mention at least TWO effects.

24. How can rivers and canals be protected from pollution? Mention at least TWO solutions.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

By the year 2023, scientists are predicting that we will be able to send text messages by the power of thinking. Do you think that will be possible?

26. Translate into Arabic :

د. Translate into Arabic :

تُعتبر مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي بعضًا من أهم إنجازات التكنولوجيا، غير أن هذه المواقع لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب أن نتجنبها.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

The internet of things (IOT)

UNIT 6

Learning from literature

SB pages 62 : 71

WB pages 122 : 127

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

★ Reading :

A biography on Stevenson; A poem,
The Gardener

★ Writing :

A short review of a poem; A book review

★ Listening :

A conversation about Robert Louis
Stevenson

★ Speaking :

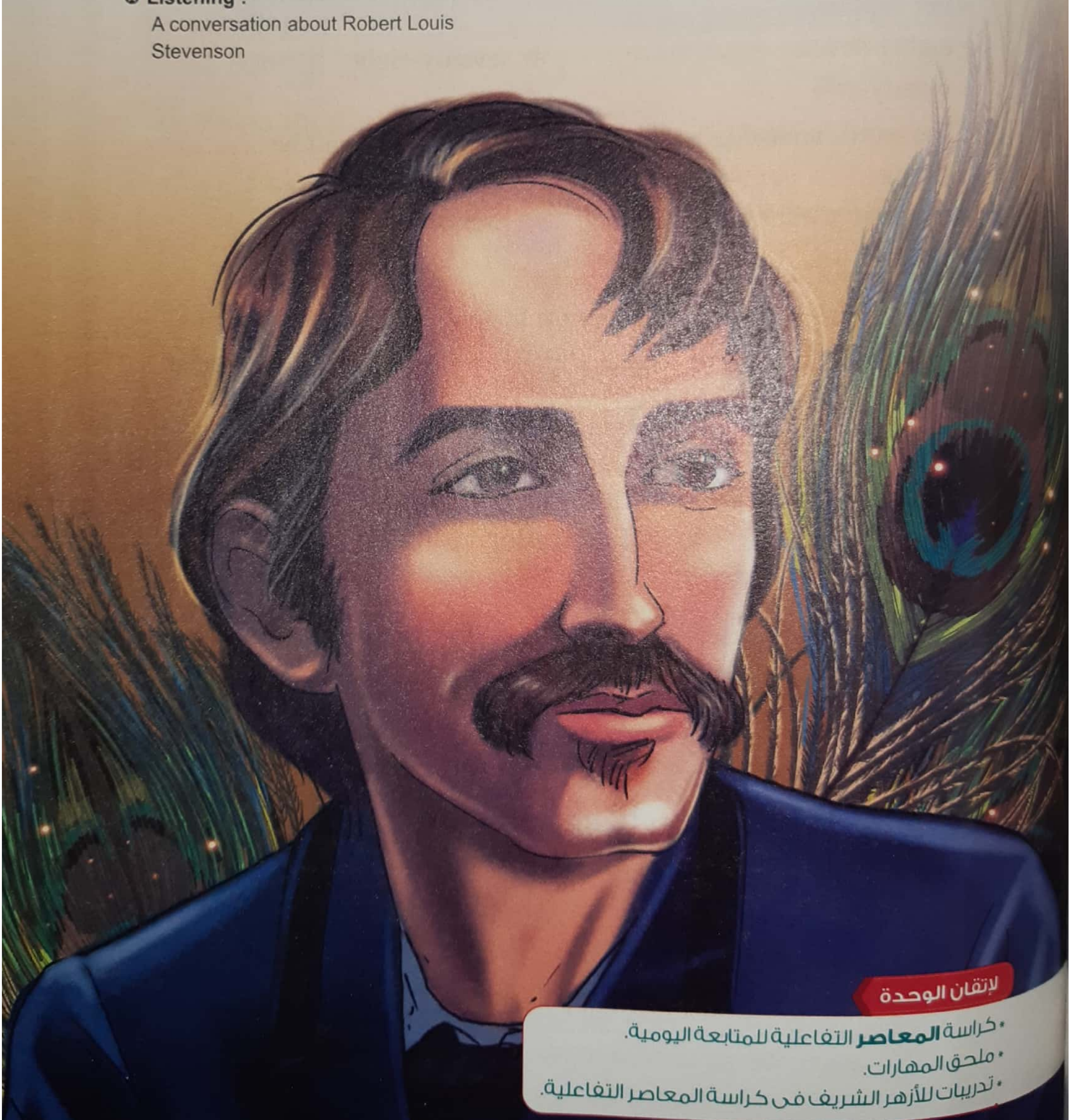
Polite requests

★ Language :

Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

★ Life skills :

Communication; Critical Thinking



لإتقان الوحدة

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.

• ملحق المهارات.

• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	literature(n)	الأدب
candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	lock(ed) (n - v)	قفل - يقفل
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يوضح التباين	novel(n)	رواية
currant(n)	نبات الكشمش	plot(n)	قطعة أرض
currant row	صف من نبات الكشمش	plot(n)	الحبكة - ذروة الأحداث
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس	poem(n)	قصيدة
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	poet(n)	شاعر
gravel(n)	الحصى	poetry(n)	الشعر - النظم
gravelled (adj)	مغطى بالحصى	rhyme(d) (n - v)	القافية - يُقْفِي / يَسْجَع
hay(n)	تبن / قش	rhythm(n)	إيقاع - الوزن الشعري
hop(ed) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل	row(n)	صف
hopping(n)	القفز - الحجل	sentence(n)	جُملة
issue(n)	قضية	stressed(adj)	مُشدَّد / مُفْخَم
keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق الممهَّد بالحصى	variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية
line(n)	سطر شعري	verse(n)	فقرة شعرية

2 Definitions التعريفات

dig (v)	يحفر	break up and move earth with your hands or a machine
gravel (n)	الحصى	small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.
hay (n)	تبن / قش	dried grass that people use to feed animals
hop (v)	يحجل	to move by jumping on one foot
lock (v)	يقفل	close something using a key
novel (n)	رواية	a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary
plot (n)	قطعة أرض	small pieces of land for growing things on
poem (n)	قصيدة	a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme
poet (n)	شاعر	someone who writes poems
poetry (n)	الشعر - النظم	a form of literature, or artistic فنّي writing, that attempts تحاول to stir مشاعر a reader's imagination خيال or emotions

rhyme (d) (v) يَتطابَق في القافية	if two words or lines of poetry rhyme, they end in the same sound, including a vowel حرف متحرك
rhythm (n) إيقاع	a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.
treasure (n) كَنْز	gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden
verse (n) فقرة شعرية	lines that form one part of a poem

3 Important Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	lie - lay - lain (v)	يرقد - يتمدد
attempt (ed) (n - v)	محاولة - يحاول	lying (n)	رقود
author (n)	مؤلف	light (n)	ضوء النهار - مصباح
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب	line (n)	سطر شعري
boring (adj)	مُمل	narrate (d) (v)	يروى / يحكي
case (n)	حالة - قضية	path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
clear (adj)	صافي	pirate (n)	قرصان
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	popular (adj)	ذو شعبية
comic (n)	مجلة مصورة للأطفال	preparation (n)	إعداد - تجهيز
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	regret (ted) (n - v)	الندم - يندم
cook (ed) (n - v)	طباخ - يطبخ	request (ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
day (n)	يوم - النهار	review (n)	عرض نقدي
dedicate (d) (v)	يخصص	rule (d) (n - v)	قاعدة - يحكم
determine (d) (v)	يحدد - ينوي أن	season (n)	فصل / موسم
differently (adv)	بشكل مختلف	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو
dress (ed) (n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس	serious (adj)	جاد - خطير
dried (adj)	مُجفف	stir (red) (v)	يُثير / يُحرك
emotions (n)	مشاعر	stone (n)	حجر
especially (adv)	بصفة خاصة	suppose (d) (v)	يفترض
events (n)	أحداث	surface (n)	سطح
fair (adj)	عادل	tools (n)	أدوات
feed - fed (v)	يُطعم	topic (n)	موضوع
full-time (adj)	دوام كامل	toy (n)	لعبة أطفال
grown-ups (n)	الكبار	wake- woke -	يوقظ - يستيقظ
imaginary (adj)	خيالي / غير حقيقي	woken (v)	
imagination (n)	خيال	weather (n)	الطقس
length (n)	طول		

improve (d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يتحسن	well (adj)	بصحة جيدة
island (n)	جزيرة	while (n)	فترة من الوقت
kidnap (ped) (v)	يخطف	wish (ed) (n - v)	أمنية - يتمني
lawyer (n)	محامي	wonder (ed) (v)	يتساءل

4 Extra Vocabulary

activity (n)	نشاط	niece (n)	ابنة الأخ أو الأخت
although (conj.)	برغم أن	outside (adv)	بالخارج
arts (n)	آداب - فنون	play (n)	مسرحية
brief (adj)	موجز / مختصر	polite (adj)	مؤدب - مهذب
cause (d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسبب	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر
critical (adj)	ناقد - نقدي	sailor (n)	بحار
describe (d) (v)	يصف	situation (n)	موقف
exciting (adj)	مثير	special (adj)	مميز - خاص
faculty (n)	كلية	the Pacific (n)	المحيط الهادي
grass (n)	عشب	thinking (n)	تفكير
however (conj.)	مع ذلك	troubles (n)	مشاكل
later (adv)	فيما بعد	unfriendly (adj)	غير ودود
map (n)	خريطة	warm (adj)	دافئ
mind (n)	العقل	warmer (adj)	أكثر دفئاً
mix (ed) (v)	يختلط ب - يخلط	wooden (adj)	خشبي
moving (adj)	متحرك		

Part II

More about Vocabulary

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

come	home	يعود للبيت	follow	rules	يتبع قواعد / قوانين
do	a favour	يصنع معروفاً	improve	his health	يُحسن صحته
	an important job	يؤدي عمل هام	make	a request	يطلب
give	a reason for	يُبرر		a surface	يمهد سطح
	a rhythm	تعطي إيقاع	spend	preparations for	يُجهز لـ
have	a rhythm	به إيقاع		time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة
	fun	يمرح / يلهو	stay	in bed	يلزم الفراش

Mini Test (1)

Collocations

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Good citizens always the rules.
a. break b. have c. follow d. spend
2. The doctor has advised me to in bed until I get better.
a. make b. do c. improve d. stay
3. When your father home, I'll tell him you don't want to study your lessons.
a. comes b. has c. follows d. spends
4. He me a favour when he helped me start my car on the desert road.
a. made b. did c. improved d. stayed
5. In a line of poetry, stressed words the same rhythm.
a. come b. have c. give d. b & c
6. The fresh air of the countryside has my health.
a. made b. did c. improved d. stayed
7. My children much fun in the park yesterday.
a. came b. had c. followed d. spent
8. Aya a lot of time watching TV.
a. gave b. made c. broke d. spent
9. He had offered to help even before I a request.
a. made b. did c. improved d. stayed

2

Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
clear	واضح	obvious / understandable / direct / uncomplicated / explicit
clear	صافي - نقي	bright / cloudless / pure
grown-ups	الكبار	adults
hate	يكره	loathe / detest
lock-up	سجن صغير (التخشيبية)	small prison
walk	طريق للتنزه سيراً	route / path

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
agree about	يوافق على	disagree about	يختلف على
avoid	يتجنب	confront	يواجه
boring	مُمل	interesting	شيق
clear	واضح	vague / unclear	غامض
clear	صافي - نقي	cloudy - impure	غائم / غير نقي
dress	يرتدي ملابس - يُلبس	take off	يخلع ملابس
fair	عادل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
formal	بلغة رسمية	informal	بلغة دارجة
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
hate	يكره	love / like	يُحب
light	النور	dark - darkness	ظلام
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular - unknown	مغمور - غير معروف

Mini Test (2) Synonyms & Antonyms

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Formal and informal are
a. synonyms b. antonyms c. lines d. verses
- "The sun rose to a clear morning." The word 'clear' can be replaced by
a. bright b. cloudless c. cloudy d. a & b
- "The answer to this question is clear." The word 'clear' is antonymous with
a. vague b. cloudy c. sunny d. a & b
- Hate is to as grown-ups is to adults.
a. love b. like c. detest d. admire
- "She had a full-time job." "Full" is an antonym of
a. part b. empty c. little d. few

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a book of facts	كتاب علمي	for a while	لفترة من الوقت
a brief summary	ملخص موجز	go to bed	يذهب للنوم
a clear conclusion	خاتمة واضحة	I hated it	كنت أكره ذلك
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	I'm afraid I can't	بؤسفني أنني لا أستطيع
a full-time writer	كاتب مُتفرغ	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
a good length for a poem	طول مناسب لقصيدة	in different seasons	في الفصول المختلفة
a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	its rhythm is too slow	إيقاعه بطيء جداً
an adventure story	قصة مغامرة	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
at night	في الليل	main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
be arranged in	مرتب على شكل	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قراءتها
be best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	not feeling very well	يشعر أنه ليس بخير
be outside playing	يلهو بالخارج	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
be special about	الشيء المميز في	quite the other way	على العكس تماماً
by candlelight	علي ضوء الشمعة	seem hard to	يبدو صعباً بالنسبة لـ
stressed words	كلمات يرتفع فيها الصوت	by day	نهاراً
compare and contrast	يقارن ويوضح التباين	summarize the main points	يلخص النقاط الرئيسية
date published	تاريخ النشر	the part I find boring is ...	الجزء الذي أراه مملاً هو ...
describe how I feel	يصف كيف أشعر	this was where	حيث
different from	مختلف عن	travel books	أدب الرحلات
easy to remember	من السهل تذكرها	wedding party	حفلة زفاف
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	when it is light	في النهار
Faculty of Arts	كلية الآداب	words that rhyme	كلمات تُقفي مع بعضها البعض
feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف		

5 Verb + Preposition

agree about	يتفق في	learn from	يتعلم من
arrange ... in	يُرتب ... على شكل	make ... into	يُحوّل ... إلى
break up	يُفكّ	mix with	يختلط بـ - يتعامل مع
come from	يأتي من	put ... away	يضع ... جانباً
disagree about	يختلف في	rhyme with	يُقفي مع
get up	ينهض من الفراش	write about	يكتب عن
go past	يمر بـ		

Mini Test (3)**Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions**

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1. On hearing the unexpected news, he remained silent for a
 a. when b. why c. while d. times
2. He used a heavy hammer to break the small rock.
 a. in b. up c. of d. into
3. Look at this shop. This is I saw you for the first time.
 a. where b. when c. what d. who
4. It is nothing of your business to agree or disagree what I say.
 a. in b. for c. at d. about
5. Short lines of poetry are easy
 a. remember b. remembering c. to remember d. remembers
6. Being sociable, he likes to mix others.
 a. with b. by c. from d. of
7. Farmers do most of their work day, not at night.
 a. at b. by c. on d. with
8. 'Lap' rhymes 'tap'.
 a. in b. on c. with d. for
9. Before electric lamps, people used to read at night candlelight.
 a. for b. from c. to d. by
10. I saw the boys outside in the garden.
 a. playing b. play c. plays d. a & b

Part III**Vocabulary Study****1 Clear the confusion** لاحظ الفرق**row / raw**

صف (جنباً إلى جنب)

① • row- In class, I sit in the third **row**.**• raw**- People can't eat **raw** meat.

نيء / غير مطهي / خام

currant / current

② • currant(n)

نبات الكشمش (له ثمار تشبه العنب أو الزبيب)

- There are some **currant** trees in the garden.

• current(adj)

حالي / جاري

- I follow **current** events on the internet.

strong / strange

③ • strong (adj)

قوي

- He has **strong** muscles. عضلات

• strange(adj)

غريب

- People don't like **strange** things.

feel different / feel differently

④ • feel different

يشعر أنه مختلف أو مميز

- His excellent skills make him **feel different**.

• feel differently

لديه شعور مختلف

- Everyone enjoys their time. I don't know why you **feel differently**.

Mini Test (4)

Clear the Confusion

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I am very happy in my job.

a. currant

b. current

c. currency

d. currently

2. Cotton is a material.

a. some

b. same

c. row

d. raw

3. I am not used to this place. It is to me.

a. light

b. popular

c. strange

d. strong

4. I know why you feel You are not used to the hot weather of Aswan.

a. differently

b. different

c. clear

d. row

جزء لتنمية مهاراتك اللغوية التي تحتاج الى معرفة اكثر
من المفردات اللغوية الآتية ومشتقاتها واستخداماتها.

تنويه

2 More about key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

lock

- **lock (v)** يقفل
- Remember to **lock** the front door when you leave the house.
- **lock (v)** يحتفظ (بشيء في مكان آمن)
- My wife **locks** her jewellery in the safe. الخزنة
- **lock (v)** يتوقف عن الحركة (يقفش)
- The wheels of the car **locked** in the middle of the road.
- **lock in (v)** يحجز ... بالخارج lock out X يحبس / يحتجز ... بالداخل
- The thieves are **locked in** a dark room.
- I lost my keys and was **locked out** of my house.
- **lock up (v)** يسجن
- All criminals must be **locked up**.
- **lock (n)** قفل
- I can't take the key out of the **lock**.

verse

- **verse (n)** مقطع من الشعر (جزء من قصيدة يحتوي على عدد من السطور الشعرية)
- This poem has five **verses**. Each verse includes six lines.
- **verse (n)** آية (في القرآن أو الكتاب المقدس)
- Mr Helmi recites some **verses** before he starts his work in the office.
- **verse (n)** الشعر - النظم
- This play is written in **verse**.

rhyme

- **rhyme (n)** القافية
- Traditional poetry always has **rhymes**.
- **rhyme (n)** شعر مُقَفِّي (له قافية)
- This poem is written in **rhyme**.
- **rhyme (n)** نشيد
- I liked **rhymes** when I was in primary school.
- **rhyme (with) (v)** يسجع / يُكوّن قافية
- The word "night" **rhymes** with "white".

plot

قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)

- **plot (n)**
- I have a small vegetable **plot**.
- **plot (n)**
- My grandfather bought this **plot** a short time before his death.
- **plot (against) (n)**
- There was a **plot** against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- **plot (n)**
- The **plot** of the film was exciting.
- **plot (against / to) (v)**
- He **plotted** to steal the safe of the supermarket.
- They **plotted** against their manager.

مدفن العائلة

مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)

حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (الأحداث)

يتآمر / يكيد (ضد)

walk

- **walk (v)**
- She always **walks** to school.
- I like **walking** in the fields near my country house.
- She **walks** her dog in the afternoon.
- **walk (v)**
- Don't worry. I'll **walk** you home.
- **walk (n)**
- The **walks** around the park are covered with gravel.
- **walk (n)**
- I usually **go for a walk** (go walking) at weekends.

يمشي / يسير - يتنزه سيراً في - يُفَسِّح (حيوان) سيراً

يوصل (يمشي مع شخص ليطمئن أنه وصل لمكان ما بأمان)

طريق مشاه (خاصة للتنزه)

التنزه سيراً (تمشية للفسحة)

poetry

- **poetry (n)**
- I studied English **poetry** at university.
- write poetry يكتب الشعر
- a line of poetry بيت شعر
- a volume / collection of poetry ديوان شعر
- **poet (n)**
- In Arabic, Hafez Ibrahim is my favourite **poet**.
- **poem (n)**
- Ahmed Shawky wrote great **poems**.

الشعر

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- recite poetry يلقي الشعر

- a piece of poetry مقطوعة شعرية

شاعر

قصيدة

• poetic / poetical (adj)

شِعْرِيّ - شاعري

- My daughter has the talent of poetic expression.

literature

• literature (n)

الأدب (الروايات والقصص والشعر والمسرحيات ... إلخ)

- Poetry is the oldest form of Arabic literature.

• literary (adj)

أدبي (متعلق بالكتابات الأدبية)

- I used to read literary criticism. النقد

3 Important idioms مصطلحات هامة

keep the gravel walk	to stay on the path through the garden يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى في البستان كي لا تطأ قدماء النباتات
currant row	a line of plants that have small fruits صف من نبات الكشمش (نبات شبيه بالعنب أو الزبيب)

4 Prefixes بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
a-	تُكوّن صفة أو ظرف	aloud awake بصوت عال مستيقظ
co-	مساعد / مصاحب	co-pilot مساعد طيار
mis-	خطأ	misunderstand يسئ فهم
re-	يعيد / يكرر	resend يعيد إرسال

5 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ache	تُكوّن أسماء أمراض	headache صداع
-ant	تُكوّن أسماء وصفات	applicant pleasant مُتقدم لوظيفة سار
-ible	تُكوّن صفات	sensible عاقل / حكيم
-ic	تُكوّن صفات	rhythmic ذو إيقاع قوي
-ical	تُكوّن صفات	rhythmical ذو إيقاع قوي
-ure	تُكوّن أسماء	pleasure سعادة

6 Listening & Reading Texts

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 62)

A. Robert Louis Stevenson

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years later⁽¹⁾ in Samoa, a small island⁽²⁾ in the South Pacific.⁽³⁾ He was not always well⁽⁴⁾ because the weather⁽⁵⁾ in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer⁽⁶⁾ at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time writer.⁽⁷⁾



He often travelled to warmer⁽⁸⁾ places to try to improve⁽⁹⁾ his health. For a while⁽¹⁰⁾ he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although⁽¹¹⁾ he is best known for⁽¹²⁾ his novels,⁽¹³⁾ like Kidnapped⁽¹⁴⁾ and Strange Case⁽¹⁵⁾ of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, Stevenson also wrote many poems⁽¹⁶⁾ and travel books.⁽¹⁷⁾ His first successful⁽¹⁸⁾ novel was Treasure Island – an adventure⁽¹⁹⁾ story about pirates.⁽²⁰⁾ His books are still very popular⁽²¹⁾ today and many of them have been made into⁽²²⁾ films.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) فيما بعد
- (2) جزيرة
- (3) المحيط الهادي
- (4) بصحة جيدة
- (5) الطقس
- (6) محامي
- (7) كاتب متفرغ
- (8) أكثر دفئاً
- (9) يُحسِّن
- (10) فترة من الوقت
- (11) برغم أن
- (12) مشهور بـ
- (13) روايات
- (14) مختطف
- (15) قضية
- (16) قصائد
- (17) كتب الرحلات
- (18) ناجح
- (19) مغامرة
- (20) قراصنة
- (21) ذو شعبية
- (22) يتحول إلى

B. The Gardener (SB page 63)

The gardener⁽¹⁾ does not love to talk.

He makes me keep the gravel⁽²⁾ walk;

And when he puts his tools⁽³⁾ away, he locks⁽⁴⁾ the door and takes the key.⁽⁵⁾

Away behind the currant⁽⁶⁾ row,⁽⁷⁾
Where no one else but cook⁽⁸⁾ may go,
Far in the plots,⁽⁹⁾ I see him dig,⁽¹⁰⁾
Old and serious,⁽¹¹⁾ brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue,
Nor wishes⁽¹²⁾ to be spoken to.

He digs the flowers and cuts the hay,⁽¹³⁾
And never seems⁽¹⁴⁾ to want to play.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) بستاني
- (2) الخصى
- (3) أدوات
- (4) يقفل
- (5) مفتاح
- (6) نبات الكشمش
- (7) صف
- (8) طباخ
- (9) قطع أرض
- (10) يحفر - يغرس
- (11) جاذ
- (12) يتمني
- (13) تبن / قش
- (14) يبدو

C. Bed in Summer (SB page 66)

In winter⁽¹⁾ I get up⁽²⁾ at night
and dress⁽³⁾ by yellow
candlelight.⁽⁴⁾

In summer quite the other
way,⁽⁵⁾ I have to go to bed by
day.⁽⁶⁾ I have to go to bed and
see The birds still hopping⁽⁷⁾
on the tree,

Or hear the grown-up⁽⁸⁾ people's feet⁽⁹⁾
Still going past⁽¹⁰⁾ me in the street.
And does it not seem hard⁽¹¹⁾ to you,
When all the sky is clear⁽¹²⁾ and blue,
And I should like so much to play,
To have to go to bed by day



Check Vocabulary

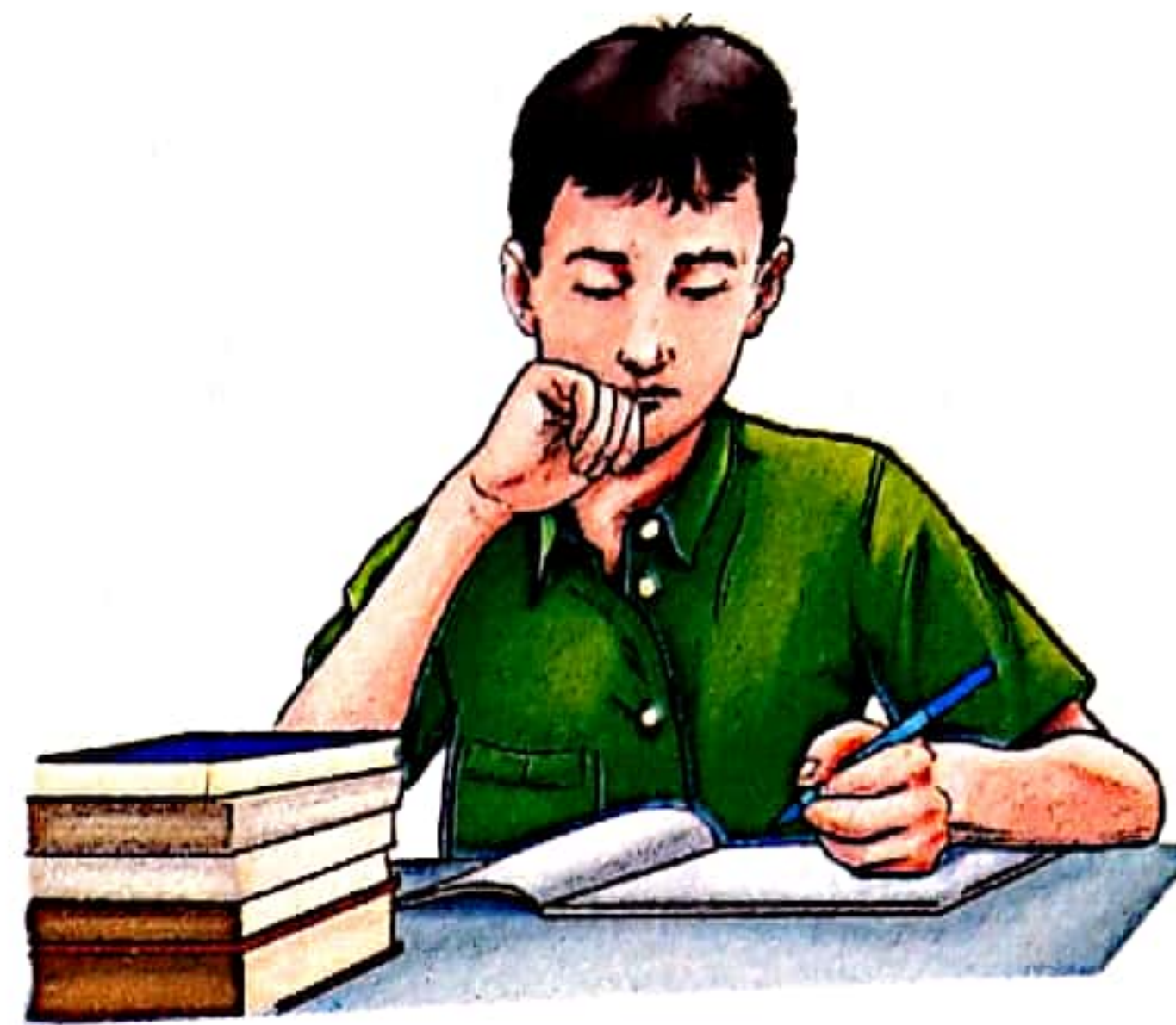
- (1) فصل الشتاء
- (2) ينهض من الفراش
- (3) يرتدي ملابسه
- (4) ضوء الشمعة
- (5) علي العكس تماماً
- (6) نهاراً
- (7) يقفز على قدم واحدة - يحجل
- (8) الكبار
- (9) أقدام
- (10) يمر بـ
- (11) صعب
- (12) صافي

D. Khaled's opinion about the poem

(SB page 66)

Khaled, 4 : 04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly⁽¹⁾ describe⁽²⁾ the situations⁽³⁾ he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject⁽⁴⁾ is very interesting because everyone feels differently⁽⁵⁾ in different seasons.⁽⁶⁾ In my opinion, poets⁽⁷⁾ should write about everyday life.⁽⁸⁾ However,⁽⁹⁾ I think the second verse⁽¹⁰⁾ is too long and its rhythm⁽¹¹⁾ is too slow.⁽¹²⁾



Hamid, 5 : 36 PM

Hamid's opinion about the poem

I love the language in the poem, especially⁽¹³⁾ the way Stevenson describes the light⁽¹⁴⁾ at different times of day.⁽¹⁵⁾ I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes⁽¹⁶⁾ in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite boring⁽¹⁷⁾ because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities.⁽¹⁸⁾ I think poets should write about more exciting⁽¹⁹⁾ things.

Sara's opinion about the poem

(SB page 67)

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt when I was young. In the summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated⁽²⁰⁾ it. Like⁽²¹⁾ the author⁽²²⁾ I wanted to be outside⁽²³⁾ playing and I didn't think it was fair⁽²⁴⁾ that everyone else was outside having fun.⁽²⁵⁾



It's a good length⁽²⁶⁾ for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact⁽²⁷⁾ that the words rhyme.⁽²⁸⁾ I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines⁽²⁹⁾ rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember!

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بوضوح
- (2) يصف
- (3) المواقف
- (4) موضوع
- (5) بشكل مختلف
- (6) فصول
- (7) شعراء
- (8) الحياة اليومية
- (9) مع ذلك
- (10) فقرة شعرية
- (11) إيقاع
- (12) بطيء
- (13) خاصة
- (14) النور
- (15) النهار
- (16) القوافي
- (17) مممل
- (18) أنشطة
- (19) مثير
- (20) يكره
- (21) مثل
- (22) مؤلف
- (23) بالخارج
- (24) عدل
- (25) يمرح
- (26) طول
- (27) حقيقة
- (28) يُقفى
- (29) سطر شعري

2 Listening texts



Audioscript

(SB page 64)

Check Vocabulary

- | | |
|------|--------------------------|
| (1) | اسكتلندي |
| (2) | على وجه الخصوص |
| (3) | مملة قليلاً |
| (4) | أفلام المغامرات |
| (5) | ينشر |
| (6) | قصص رومانسية |
| (7) | مجموعة مختارة من القصائد |
| (8) | يهرب من |
| (9) | دولة سويسرا |
| (10) | في الغالب / إلى حد بعيد |

Teacher : This week we're studying the Scottish⁽¹⁾ writer, Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular⁽²⁾ his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard about him or read any of his work ?

Nesma : Didn't he write Treasure Island ? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring,⁽³⁾ so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher : Did you like it ?

Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love adventure films⁽⁴⁾ and I enjoy reading adventure stories, too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.

Teacher : Well, it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island 'was published⁽⁵⁾ in 1881. And Wafaa, have you read any of his books ?

Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic stories⁽⁶⁾ and poems.

Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection of poems⁽⁷⁾ called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to get away from⁽⁸⁾ the cold Scottish weather.

Nesma : Where did he go ?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland⁽⁹⁾ mainly⁽¹⁰⁾ In fact, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family loved sailing and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894. Now, for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or a poem by Stevenson and bring it to class to discuss. Then ...

(SB page 65)

Audioscript

Wafaa : I don't have time to go to the library this afternoon.
Could you do me a favour⁽¹⁾ and go for me ?

Nesma : Yes, of course. Which books do you want me to get ?

Wafaa : Can you find A Child's Garden of Verses ? I prefer reading poetry to long stories.

Nesma : No problem. But, could you do something for me when you're in town, please ?

Wafaa : Yes, what is it ?

Nesma : I don't really enjoy reading, so can you get me a DVD of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde ? Then, I won't have to read it !

Wafaa : Nesma !

Check
Vocabulary

(1) يصنع لي معروفاً

Listening WB

(WB page 125)

Lesson 4

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea.
To see what he could see, see, see.
But all that he could see, see, see.
Was the bottom of the deep blue sea, sea, sea.

3 Workbook texts

A. Poem 1 My friend's cat

Every day when I come
home
I look for my friend's cat
I usually find this cat
Lying in an old hat.
What do you think of that?

Poem 2 The boy's toy

There was a small boy
Who had a wooden⁽¹⁾ toy
He loved that toy.
One day he took it to bed
And slept with it by⁽²⁾ his
head. He loved that toy.
When the boy was woken⁽³⁾
He found the toy was broken!⁽⁴⁾
He loved that toy.

(WB page 124)

Check
Vocabulary

(1) خشبي

(2) بجوار

(3) استيقظ

(4) مكسور

B. Sherif : Taha, could you do something for me ?

(WB page 123)

Taha : Yes, of course. What is it ?

Sherif : Can you play football with us tonight ? We need another player.

Taha : No, I am afraid I can't. I hurt my leg last week. I can't run on it.

Sherif : Ok, don't worry. I'll ask Omar.

C. Randa : Good morning. I wonder if you can help me.

Assistant : Certainly. What is it ?

Randa : I don't suppose you could tell me who the manager is ?

Assistant : Yes, of course. It's Mr. Mansour.

Randa : Could you do me a favour ?

Can you give him my CV ?

I'd really like to work here.

Assistant : No problem, I'll give it to him when I next see him.

4 Video script section

Literature⁽¹⁾ comes in a variety⁽²⁾ of forms⁽³⁾ : poetry⁽⁴⁾, novels⁽⁵⁾, travel books and biographies⁽⁶⁾ are just a few.

Reading literature from different times helps us learn about the world we live in, about important modern issues⁽⁷⁾ and about how much society⁽⁸⁾ has changed.

When you read any piece of literature, it's helpful⁽⁹⁾ to consider⁽¹⁰⁾ your own opinion - why you like or dislike a particular⁽¹¹⁾ character or whether you have experienced something similar to what you've read in a poem.

Discussing this with your friends can also help you learn more about each other and the world around you.

Check Vocabulary

(1) الأدب

(2) تنوع

(3) أنماط / أشكال

(4) شعر

(5) روايات

(6) سير ذاتية

(7) قضايا معاصرة

(8) المجتمع

(9) مفيد / مجدى

(10) تعبر عن

(11) خاصة

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What different forms of literature does the video name ?
2. What can reading literature from different times teach us ?
3. What should you discuss with your friends ?

General Exercises

On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Warm up تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

1. Bold and cold do
 (السوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)
 a. rhyme b. verse c. poem d. synonym
2. In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with
 (كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٠)
 a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
3. If you..... some of his early writing with his later work, you can see how much he improved.
 (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
 a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock
4. He went to the to visit his dear father.
 (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٠)
 a. plot b. plotter c. pottery d. plotted
5. I had to after the injury I had yesterday.
 (سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٠)
 a. run b. hope c. hop d. happen
6. As the poem's lines end in different sounds, the poem is
 (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. rhymed b. unexpected c. expected d. unrhymed
7. Most of today's songs have a very fast
 (المنيا - ديرمवास ٢٠٢٠)
 a. words b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm
8. Which of the following is NOT correct?
 (المنيا - ديرمवास ٢٠٢٠)
 a. Will you help me with this heavy bag?
 b. I don't suppose you could help me with this heavy bag.
 c. I don't suppose could you help me with this heavy bag.
 d. Do you think you could help me with this heavy bag?
9. a hungry family can be very expensive.
 (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٠)
 a. Failing b. Feeding c. Falling d. Feeling
10. Some attacked the ship to steal things from it.
 (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٠)
 a. pirates b. pilots c. parents d. pioneers
11. She always in front of the mirror.
 (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٠)
 a. dresses b. wears c. puts on d. takes

II Key & important vocabulary

12. The of taste, shape and colour is what makes one fruit different from another.
 a. variety b. stress c. sentence d. line
13. Novels, poems and plays are forms of
 a. science b. fashion c. dirt d. literature
14. A group of words that start with a capital letter, end with a full stop and give some meaning is known as a
 a. word b. line c. sentence d. verse
15. We call a book about the life of someone a
 a. research b. biography c. novel d. poem
16. He is interested in social
 a. issues b. hopping c. mutiny d. verse
17. When the lights go out at night, we usually depend on
 a. daylight b. candlelight c. the sun d. darkness
18. Don't yourself to others. Everyone is different.
 a. regret b. review c. compare d. request
19. Never doing anything good you have done for anybody.
 a. regret b. grow c. feed d. lie
20. This problem needs time and collaboration to be solved.
 a. handy b. easy c. simple d. serious
21. My father has a / an job as a manager of a bank.
 a. part-time b. full-time c. polite d. impolite
22. I intend to stay with my aunt in the countryside for
 a. while b. whilst c. a while d. during
23. He has no health problems. This means he is
 a. well b. pale c. good d. bad
24. I don't like being up early during holidays.
 a. walked b. woken c. get d. got
25. As a young man, I used to ask for advice as they are wise. حكما
 a. teenagers b. infants c. kids d. grown-ups
26. As a mother, she all her time to her children.
 a. borrows b. takes c. dedicates d. receives

27. Can you on your left leg like me?
a. hope b. please c. hop d. dig
28. There are among trees and plants in parks.
a. walks b. rhymes c. raws d. candles
29. The is a black, red or white fruit or the plants that produce it.
a. currant b. barrow c. garden d. line
30. Children like poems and music that have strong
a. verse b. rhyme c. rhythm d. poem
31. There is a of rose الورد trees by the wall of the garden.
a. gravel b. currant c. row d. pinch
32. The cow was hungry, so the farmer found it some to eat.
a. butter b. hay c. water d. cheese
33. I have a small..... in my garden where I plant some vegetables.
a. rhyme b. farm c. field d. plot
34. The paths through the park were covered in
a. treasure b. gravel c. swing d. silver
35. My grandfather's garage is full of which he uses to fix cars.
a. barrows b. gravels c. tools d. mice
36. Gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden are known as
a. treasure b. money c. gemstone d. property
37. We have a small in front of our house in which we plant flowers.
a. park b. pool c. garden d. villa
38. President Sadat took the 1973 war
a. lock b. treasure c. decision d. medicine
39. Good citizens the rules.
a. kill b. forget c. break d. follow
40. His mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.
a. pleasant b. popular c. repeated d. enjoyable
41. To make a polite always say please and excuse me.
a. request b. tick c. phrase d. organisation
42. The first of this poem has eight lines.
a. rhyme b. rhythm c. poet d. verse
43. It is the role of to give advice to young people.
a. babies b. adults c. children d. boys

III Derivatives, synonyms, antonyms & word-building

44. is the best literary ادبي form that expresses emotions.
a. Poetry b. Poet c. Poems d. Poetic
45. language is emotionally effective.
a. Poet b. Poets c. Poems d. Poetic
46. Shakespeare was a great playwright كاتب مسرحي and a
a. poetry b. poet c. poems d. poetic
47. In addition to plays, Shakespeare wrote great which are still admired.
a. poetry b. poet c. poems d. poetic
48. "He kept the gravel walk". In this sentence, 'walk' means a
a. journey b. path c. trip d. movement
49. Novels, poems and plays are different forms of writing.
a. literacy b. illiteracy c. literature d. literary
50. "He locked the documents in a safe". In this sentence, 'locked' means
a. kept b. jailed c. imprisoned d. closed
51. In a park, we walk along paths which are
a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
52. Which of the following prefixes mean "again"?
a. A- b. Co- c. Re- d. Ir-
53. The words "through" and "throw"
a. lock b. rhyme c. rhythm d. bare
54. Children like listening to and reading
a. locks b. rhymes c. rhythms d. bares
55. Formal is to as fair is to unfair.
a. form b. inform c. informal d. unformal

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مَجَاب عَنْهُ فِي نِهَايَةِ الْكِتَابِ

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A: The street is dark and empty.
B: No problem. I'll you home.
a. pinch b. walk c. plot d. lock
2. The desert is the of a lot of animals.
a. house b. hole c. home d. nest

3. The play is written in It has rhymes.
a. verse b. poem c. English d. rhythm
4. The each measure 20 metres by 30 metres.
a. land b. plots c. area d. ground
5. A: Do you mind helping me?
B: What would you like me to do?
a. Sure b. Yes, not at all c. Yes, of course d. No, not at all
6. what way will you pay back your debts?
a. On b. In c. With d. At
7. The word 'time' rhymes with
a. rhythm b. rhyme c. verse d. poet
8. Our parents are to thank for the they do to us.
a. harms b. favours c. damages d. vowels
9. Terrorists الإرهابيون against their countries.
a. bare b. hop c. profit d. plot
10. "He has a pleasant character". In this sentence, 'pleasant' means
a. naked b. happiness c. joy d. friendly

Part IV

Structure



شاهد وتعلم

Verbs + infinitive / – ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

agree to	يوافق أن	learn to	يتعلم أن
arrange to	يرتب أن	manage to	يتمكن من
choose to	يختار أن	offer to	يعرض أن
decide to	يقرر أن	plan to	يخطط أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	promise to	يعد أن
fail to	يفشل في أن	refuse to	يرفض أن
help to	يساعد في	threaten to	يهدد أن
hope to	يأمل أن	want to	يريد أن
intend to	ينوي أن	wish to	يتمنى أن
		would like to	يود أن

- Hazem is **planning to go** to university next year. He **hopes to** study medicine.

١ بعض الأفعال السابقة قد يأتي بعدها المفعول أولاً ثم (to + inf.) :

- I wanted **Omar** to work hard.
- They **expected** me to come first.

٢ في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

- Ahmed **decided not to use** my tools.

(أخذ أحمد قراراً بالآلا يستخدم أدواتي - لن يستخدمها)

- Ahmed **didn't decide to use** my tools.

(لم يقرر أحمد أن يستخدم أدواتي - قد يقرر أن يفعل ذلك فيما بعد)

٣ بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تأتي بعدها حروف جر أخرى غير (to) بمعاني مختلفة، لاحظ :

- I **agree with** you. (أُتفق معك)
- The couple **agreed on** a time for the wedding. (اتفقوا على)

٤ بعض الأفعال السابقة يُمكن أن يتبعها (that) ثم جملة :

- They decided that they won't sell the family house.

Mini Test (1) مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I planned the weekend with my grandparents.
a. spend b. to spend c. spending d. to spending
- I promise I will be always helpful to you.
a. to b. with c. on d. that
- This player intends this year. He can play for two more seasons.
a. retire b. to retire c. not to retire d. retiring

2 Verb + (inf. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمانع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يتمتع	recommend	يوصي بـ / يُحبِّذ
finish	ينهى	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

- You should **avoid going** out late at night.
- She has just **finished cleaning** her bedroom.

• في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not + inf. + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

- He suggested not going to the park.

(اقترح عدم الذهاب إلى الحديقة = لا يريد أن يذهب)

- He didn't suggest going to the park.

(لم يقترح الذهاب إلى الحديقة - ليست فكرته)

• لاحظ استخدام صيغة (subjunctive) مع الأفعال التالية :

suggest / recommend / advise / ask ... + (that) + ... inf. / should + inf. ...

- I suggest that Sama join the school trip.

(Not : joins)

- I suggest that Sama should join the school trip.

Mini Test (2)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Do you enjoy a sport ?

a. do

b. doing

c. to do

d. to doing

2. He denied me before. He said it was our first meeting.

a. seeing

b. to see

c. not seeing

d. not to see

3. I can't imagine in the city. I enjoy its excitement and noise.

a. live

b. to live

c. living

d. not living

4. She suggested that her mother another doctor.

a. seeing

b. to see

c. see

d. sees

5. Would you mind me a hand?

a. to give

b. giving

c. being given

d. give

3 Verb + (inf. + ing) / (to + inf.)

١ الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى:

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

- ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.
 - The wind **began to blow / blowing** just as we arrived home from school.
 - ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال love / prefer / like يأتي بعدها (to + inf) غالباً :
 ex. - I'd **prefer to finish** my work early today.
 - I'd **love to attend** your birthday party.
 - لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتي بعدها (to + inf) فقط :
 ex. - The weather is starting to get colder. (Not : to get)

٢ الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح في المعنى:

remember, forget, stop, try + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1. Remember

• remember + to + inf. يتذكر أن يفعل

- ex. - **Remember to bring** your homework tomorrow.

• remember + gerund يتذكر أنه فعل

- ex. - I **remember waking** up in the middle of the night.

2. forget

• forget + to + inf. ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به)

- ex. - She **forgot to buy** her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.

• forget + gerund ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء لكنه نسي ذلك)

- ex. - I **forgot phoning** the manager, so I phoned him again.

3. stop

• stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء آخر

- ex. - On her way home, Dina **stopped to talk** to her friend Warda.

• stop + gerund يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

- ex. - Dina and Warda have **stopped talking** to each other.

4. regret

ex.

• regret + (inf. + ing)

يندم على شيء قد فعله

- I regret wasting my time.

ex.

• regret + to + inf. ...

يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شيء

- I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

5. go on

ex.

• go on + (inf. + ing)

يستمر في القيام بنفس العمل أو النشاط

- Rodayna went on studying physics for three hours.

ex.

• go on + (to + inf.)

ينتقل من عمل إلى عمل آخر

- Rodayna studied physics for three hours, then she went on to study Arabic.

Mini Test (3)

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It continued for three hours non-stop.

a. raining b. to raining c. to rain d. a & c

2. I'd love your birthday party. Surely, I'll be there on time.

a. attending b. to attend c. to attending d. a & b

3. Remember off the gas before you go out.

a. attending b. turning c. to turn d. to be turned

4. I remember that man before.

a. seeing b. to see c. to seeing d. a & b

5. He stopped because it affected his health badly.

a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c

6. He stopped outside because other people on the bus refused to let him smoke while driving.

a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c

4 Notes for more understanding

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

١ يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would

- She **can speak** 3 languages.

٢ جميع حروف الجر يأتي بعدها اسم (noun) أو فعل مضاف له (ing):

- I will **go on working** for this company.

- I want you to **look after the baby**.

٣ يُستخدم اسم مكان بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (إلى):

- They **went to Aswan**.

٤ يُستخدم الفعل في المصدر (inf.) بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (أن - لكي):

- I **hope to win** the next match.

- We work hard **to achieve** our goals in life.

٥ يُستخدم الفعل مضاف له (ing) أو اسم (noun) بعد حرف الجر (to) في الحالات التالية:

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	be opposed to	يعترض علي
apply to	يُطبق / ينطبق ... علي	contribute to	يساهم في
be used to	يكون معتاد علي	lead to	يؤدي إلى
become used to	يتعود علي	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
get used to	يتعود علي	object to	يعترض علي
be accustomed to	معتاد علي	take to	يعتاد علي

- Pollution **leads to having health problems**.

= Pollution **leads to health problems**.

٦ نستخدم (to + inf.) في حالة وجود فعل بعد بعض الصفات مثل:

happy / sad / glad / ready مستعد / willing مستعد / unwilling / eager متحمس / pleased / lucky / amazed

- She was **ready to live** in Aswan after getting married there.

٧ في حالة وجود فعل بعد (know / show / learn / teach / tell) نستخدم (how to + inf.) أو (to + inf.) فقط:

- I don't **know (how) to use** this mobile.

٨ في حالة وجود فعل بعد (what / how / where.....) نستخدم (to + inf.) :

- He got lost; he didn't know where to go.

٩ الأفعال و الظروف الآتية يأتي بعدها inf. فقط بدون to :

يجعل / يصنع make / يفضل would rather / يسمح let / ينبغي had better

- She would rather stay at home.

١٠ لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد الكلمات (the first / the second / the last / the next)

- Mona was the last to watch the film.

١١ الفعل (help) يأتي بعده المصدر مع (to) أو بدونها:

- He helped me do (to do) the job.

١٢ لاحظ ما يلي : It + be + adj. + (for + subj. / obj. pron.) to + inf. ...

- It was easy for me to do the job.

١٣ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) في حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) في حالة وجود مفعول:

يوصى بـ recommend / يمنع forbid / يسمح allow / ينصح advise
يشجع encourage / يسمح permit

- We don't allow smoking here.

= We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

١٤ الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليبدل على أننا تابعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) ليبدل على أننا تابعنا جزء من الحدث:

يشاهد watch / يلاحظ notice / يرى see / يسمع hear

- I heard Mariam sing a song.

= I heard the whole song.

- I heard Mariam singing a song.

= I heard part of the song.

General Exercises

On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You should something good in your free time.

a. find

b. do

c. take

d. spend

2. A famous scientist has agreed an article about COVID-19.
a. to write b. writing c. to writing d. writes
3. Have you finished that book that I gave you ?
a. to read b. from reading c. reading d. read
4. Ahmed hopes a job next month.
a. finding b. to find c. finds d. find
5. You should avoid friends with such bad people.
a. to make b. make c. to making d. making
6. I like football on TV.
a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
7. I'd like football on TV.
a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
8. My uncle has offered me how to drive a car.
a. teaching b. teach c. to teach d. taught
9. I like in London as it's a beautiful city.
a. to living b. live c. lives d. living
10. Reem promised and she usually keeps her promises.
a. she comes b. to come c. coming d. will come
11. Would you helping me? - No, not at all.
a. think b. mind c. remember d. remind
12. The child started because he was hungry.
a. crying b. cried c. is crying d. cries
13. The thief denied the money.
a. stolen b. was stealing c. to steal d. stealing
14. We have arranged at 9 o'clock.
a. meeting b. will meet c. to meet d. met
15. I wish a car.
a. to have b. he has c. had he d. will have
16. I prefer in a swimming pool.
a. swim b. to swim c. to swimming d. swam
17. I feel like a cold drink.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
18. The little girl playing with her toys until midnight.
a. wanted b. kept c. decided d. promised

19. One day, I'd like poems myself.
a. to write b. writing c. to writing d. wrote
20. He hopes the test first time.
a. passing b. to be passed c. to pass d. to passing
21. Omar has decided with his father when he finishes university.
a. to work b. to be worked c. working d. to working
22. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot the front door.
a. locking b. to lock c. locked d. locks
23. When you go diving, you should avoid the coral reefs.
a. damage b. damages c. damaging d. to damage
24. The naughty boy promised the school principal well in class.
a. behaving b. to behave c. to have behaved d. behave

II Warm up

تدريبات للتهيئة من الاختبار الورقي للمحافظات طبقاً لمنظومة التعليم الجديدة.

25. Enjy is sorry that she was unable to help her mother last night. This means she her mother last night.
a. regrets helping b. doesn't regret to help
c. regrets not to help d. regrets not helping
26. I regret to the cinema. It was not a very good movie.
a. to go b. go c. going d. went
27. I regret that we can't go to the Science Museum next week. There are no more tickets.
a. saying b. to say c. to saying d. have said
28. Salma was busy the washing up.
a. does b. doing c. to do d. done
29. Why didn't you remember me the key? How can I open the door now?
a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. have brought
30. I suggest that Samy the club.
a. join b. joins c. has joined d. will join
31. Many people in our town objected the new bridge.
a. to build b. to building c. building d. built
32. My father often me to drive his car.
a. lets b. makes c. allows d. denies
33. The rules of the library don't allow
a. to smoking b. smoking c. smoke d. to smoke

34. I prefer being jobless to like a slave عبد in such a company.
 a. be treated b. treating c. being treated d. treat me
35. We all recommend that book.
 a. that read b. that he read c. to read d. to reading
36. After she stopped, everyone clapped.
 a. to sing b. singing c. sang d. sung
37. I regretted her in public. It was bad for me.
 a. criticise b. criticising c. to criticise d. to criticising
38. I regret but it is the law. Tomorrow is my last day at work.
 a. to retire b. retiring c. to retiring d. retire
39. Stop You are giving me a headache.
 a. to shout b. shouted c. shouting d. to shouting
40. He found the film quite frightening, so he stopped it.
 a. to watching b. to watch c. watching d. watched
41. I stopped a shower to refresh myself.
 a. to take b. to taking c. taking d. being taken
42. If you want to stay healthy, you should try more exercise.
 a. did b. to doing c. to do d. do
43. Try the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.
 a. to put b. will put c. putting d. put
44. I tried some medicine but I found that the only chemist's in our area was closed.
 a. bought b. buying c. to buy d. to buying
45. I have a stomachache, so I tried some medicine.
 a. taking b. to take c. to be taken d. to taking
46. Please, remember your books with you next time.
 a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. brings
47. I remember the zoo every year when I was young.
 a. visiting b. to visit c. visited d. visit
48. Don't forget bread on your way home, Ashraf.
 a. buying b. bought c. to buy d. to buying
49. I don't forget my wife for the first time.
 a. seen b. I see c. to see d. seeing
50. The gardener let us in the bark.
 a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling

51. The gardener allowed us in the park.
 a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling

III Check your understanding

52. I heard Omar talking on his mobile. This means
 a. I heard everything he said.
 b. I heard part of what he said.
 c. I heard nothing he said.
 d. I heard everything he didn't say.
53. Try using this cream. This means
 a. I know this cream will work.
 b. I know this cream won't work.
 c. I want you to use it and see what will happen.
 d. I hope this cream won't work.
54. "He has stopped drinking coffee as it is unhealthy." What does this mean?
 a. He wants to drink coffee.
 b. He doesn't want to drink coffee.
 c. He no longer drinks coffee.
 d. He will go on drinking coffee.
55. "I remember taking an aspirin." This means
 a. I took an aspirin.
 b. I didn't take an aspirin.
 c. I remember to take an aspirin.
 d. I will take an aspirin.

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

1 My sister and I had a job to do at home yesterday. My mother had asked us (a)make (b) beds and (c) to make any noise (d) my baby sister was asleep.
 a. b. c. d.

2 I had a bad headache this morning. I (a) taking an aspirin (b) I didn't feel any better. My brother offered (c) take me to the doctor's. (d) , the doctor examined and gave me some medicine.
 a. b. c. d.

3 I have a fixed ثابت daily routine. I get up at six (a) morning. I (b) doing exercises soon after getting up. After I take a shower, I (c) prefer to take (d) tea out in the garden.

a. b. c. d.

4 My mother has a list of instructions to tell me before I leave for school every day. "Remember (a) take your sandwiches", she says. "(b) forget (c) check your school bag and don't (d) your friends have a bad effect on you".

a. b. c. d.

5 I am a good swimmer. When I was young, I wasn't used (a) swimming. I used to (b) very frightened of the sea. My father sent me to a swimming school. There, I learnt (c) to swim well. Now, I (d) swimming nearly every day.

a. b. c. d.

Advanced Exercise on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I suggested stopping him that old film as it was a waste of time.

a. watching b. watches c. watched d. to watch

2. Why do you go on the same lies أكاذيب again and again?

a. to tell b. telling c. to telling d. be told

3. I recommend meals at home.

a. have b. to have c. having d. to having

4. I recommend my children meals at home.

a. have b. to have c. having d. to having

5. I don't allow anyone..... in my office.

a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to smoke

6. I don't allow in my office.

a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to smoke

7. I go out late at night.
 a. wouldn't rather b. would rather to
 c. would rather didn't d. would rather not
8. I was made my room before I went out.
 a. to tidy b. to tidying c. to tidying d. not tidy
9. It is starting again.
 a. raining b. to rain c. rains d. to raining
10. Fancy you here.
 a. seeing b. is seeing c. was seeing d. see

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

Some people find it difficult to make friends. They usually avoid (a) and talking to other people. They prefer (b) on (c) own to going out and (d) used to being among others.

a. b. c. d.

Part V Grammatical Hints from Reading & Listening

home

عند استخدام كلمة (home) كظرف مكان، لا تأخذ حرف الجر (to) مع أفعال الحركة التالية:

go - arrive - leave - reach - return - come

- ex. - I **go home** at three o'clock. (Not: go to home)
 - Mum **returned home** and prepared lunch. (Not: return to home)

عند استخدام كلمة (home) كاسم بعد الصفات والضمائر، فهي تأخذ حرف الجر (to) :

- ex. - I **go to my home** at three o'clock.
 - Mum **returned to the family home** and prepared lunch.

in addition to / as well as

In addition to + n. / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

- ex. - **In addition to going** to the market, we went to the zoo.
 - We went to the zoo **in addition to going** to the market.

بالإضافة إلى v. ing + as well as

ex. - As well as going to the market we went to the zoo.

إذا استخدمت **as well as** بين فاعلين، فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول من ناحية المفرد والجمع:

ex. - I as well as Ali have a car.

- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

يمكن أن تربط **as well as** مفعولين أو صفتين:

ex. - Hala plays the guitar as well as the piano.

- Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

في عُمر at the age of

At the age of + العمر = when + subject + was / were + العمر = aged + العمر

ex. - My grandmother died in 2018 at the age of 92.

- My grandmother died in 2018 when she was 92.

- My grandmother died in 2018, aged 92.

Like / Unlike

يمكن استخدام (like / unlike) كروابط:

جملة + اسم + على عكس Unlike / مثل Like

ex. - Like his father, Abdulrahman works hard.

- Unlike his friends, Ahmed doesn't play football.

لهذا السبب that's why

جملة نتيجة + so / that is why / as a result / for this reason

ex. - He didn't earn enough money. That's why he travelled abroad.

- I've been feeling tired all week, so I'm going to bed early tonight.

- It's my mother's birthday soon. For this reason, I want to buy her a present.

Exercises**On Grammatical Hints**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I feel tired. I will home.

a. go to

b. go

c. arrive to

d. return to

UNIT 6

2. football, I also play tennis.
a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to
3. I play football., I play tennis.
a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to
4. Nasser his cousins likes chicken.
a. as well as b. and c. in addition d. or
5. As well as my mother, I did my homework.
a. helping b. help c. helps d. a help
6. I was so tired yesterday. I went to bed early.
a. Because b. Although c. That's why d. In addition to
7. her two sisters, Sama is always nervous.
a. As b. Unlike c. Because d. In addition
8. My grandfather died in 2000, 62.
a. since b. ago c. age d. aged
9. When I finish the report, I will my home.
a. return b. go c. arrive d. go to
10. She was very busy preparing for the party, she called me to go and help her.
a. in addition b. as well as c. so d. because
11. his mother, Ahmed doesn't like noise. They both can't live in a busy city.
a. Like b. Unlike c. As d. As well
12. I left university in 1994, the age of 22.
a. in b. at c. on d. for

② Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :

Little children are usually stubborn. عنيد My elder daughter's school is near our house, that's (a) she goes there on foot. However, she hates (b) She wants to go to a faraway school (c) her brother. That's (d) she wants me to take her to school in my car like him.

- a. b. c. d.

Part VI

Language Skills

1 Polite request الطلب المهذب

Making a Request	Reply
Formal Requests الطلب بطريقة رسمية	
1 Could you possibly + inf. ...? هل من الممكن أن ...؟	- Certainly. بالتأكيد
2 I wonder if you could + inf. أتساءل إذا ما كان بإمكانك ...	- That's not a problem. هذا لا يمثل مشكلة.
3 I don't suppose you could + inf. أظن أنه لا يمكنك أن ...	- Yes, of course. نعم بالطبع.
4 Do you think you could + inf. ...? أعتقد أنه يمكنك ...؟	- No. I'm afraid I can't. لا، للأسف لا أستطيع.
Informal Requests الطلب بطريقة ودية (غير رسمية)	- Yes. What is it? نعم ، ماذا تريد؟
1 Can you + inf.? هل يمكنك أن؟	- No problem. لا توجد مشكلة في ذلك.
2 Could you do me a favour, please? هل يمكن أن تقدم لي معروفًا من فضلك؟	- Sure. بالتأكيد.
3 Could you do something for me? هل يمكن أن تفعل شيئًا لأجلي؟	

- لاحظ الرد على هذا السؤال:

هل تمانع أن؟
 Would you mind + inf. + ing / noun?
 موافقة (Agreeing)
 - No, I don't. / No problem. / No, not at all.
 عدم موافقة (Disagreeing)
 - Yes, I do.

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Writing Reviews

١- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لعمل فني أو أدبي (قصة / رواية / مسرحية / مسلسل / فيلم)، ينبغي تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

- Begin with a brief summary (40-60 words). ابدأ بملخص قصير (حوالي ٤٠ / ٦٠ كلمة).
- Determine the most important topics. / characters / plot. حدد أهم الموضوعات / الشخصيات / الحبكة.
- Dedicate a paragraph for each idea / topic / character. خصص فقرة لكل فكرة / موضوع / شخصية.
- Write a short clear conclusion. The conclusion summarizes the main points of the review in addition to your opinion. اكتب خاتمة قصيرة وواضحة، وتتضمن الخاتمة النقاط الرئيسية للعرض النقدي بالإضافة لوجهة نظرك.

٢- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لقصيدة، ينبغي أن تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

- The title العنوان
- The author المؤلف
- Date published تاريخ النشر
- The main idea / topic الفكرة الرئيسية / الموضوع
- What you like about it الشيء الذي يعجبك
- What you don't like about it الشيء الذي لا يعجبك
- Conclusion الخاتمة

Model review

* Write a review of about 150 words about a film or a book you like :

Welad El-Am (The Cousins)

Welad El-Am (The Cousins) is an Egyptian action film. It is a story of love and betrayal الخيانة directed by Sherif Arafa.

Salwa (Mona Zaki) realizes that her husband, Ezzat (Sherif Mounir), is really Daniel; an Israeli spy جاسوس who kidnaps يختطف her and their two children to Israel to start a new life there.

Mostafa (Karim Abdel Aziz), the Egyptian spy, has been after Daniel for a while. When Salwa asks for help from a man in the street in Israel, her story reaches the Egyptian authorities **السلطات** and Mostafa is sent to collect information on Daniel and rescue Salwa.

There are conflicts **صراعات** of interest. Mostafa's hatred **كراهية** of Daniel is mixed with his need to do things correctly. Salwa's desire to leave is mixed with her belief that Daniel loves her.

The plot also involves Dareen, the Palestinian suicide bomber **انتحارية**. There is also the Egyptian woman who befriends **تُصادق** Salwa in order to watch **تراقب** her.

Mona Zaki's performance **أداء** as Salwa was strong. Sherif Mounir and Karim Abdel Aziz have done a great job as well.

To conclude, the film is really great. The story, the actors and the direction **الإخراج** worked together to make this film which I see deserves watching.

3 الترجمة Translation

تنويه برجاء الرجوع للجزء الخاص بالترجمة في الكتاب التأسيسي **Skill builder**

① Translate into Arabic :

1. Novels and stories depend on narration and details. Poetry, on the other hand, depends on rhyme, rhythm and rhetorical phrases.
2. Nature, as it was created, was full of harmony and beauty. When man interfered stupidly with it, he destroyed everything beautiful.
3. One has to do his best at work to achieve their goals. They should also enjoy the beauties of life to ease the pressure of work.

② Translate into English :

- ١- عندما تتساقط أوراق الأشجار في فصل الخريف وتصبح الأغصان عارية، تفقد الطبيعة جزءاً كبيراً من جمالها وجاذبيتها.
- ٢- ليس هناك شك أن قراءة الأعمال الأدبية لها فوائد كثيرة، فهي تثري ثقافتنا وتعطينا خبرات كثيرة وتجعلنا نستمتع بالمواقف التي يخلقها الكاتب.
- ٣- الشعر يأخذك إلى عالم خيالي مليء بالسعادة والانسجام الروحي، فهو يخاطب المشاعر الجميلة التي لا يجيد الجميع التعبير عنها.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

address	يخاطب	harmony	الانسجام
appealing	جذاب	interfere	يتدخل
attractiveness	الاجاذبية	literary	أدبي
beauty	الجمال	narration	السرد
create	يخلق	paradoxes	مفارقات
culture	الثقافة	phrase	عبارة
destroy	يدمر	pressure	الضغط
details	التفاصيل	rhetorical	بلاغي
ease	يخفف عن	spiritual	روحي
enrich	يثرى	there's no doubt	ليس هناك شك
experience	الخبرة	undoubtedly	بلا شك
feelings	المشاعر		

أحرص على التدريب المستمر

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدريبات للتقويم المستمر على كل وحدة

★ اختبار تراكمي

★ تدريبات للأزهر

★ تدريبات على المهارات

★ اختبارات على المنهج



Consolidate

your Vocabulary From Chapter 6

المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية
بالقصة المقررة جزء القصة نهاية الكتاب

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When a place is not easy to break into, we say it is well-
a. furnished b. dressed c. known d. defended
2. Climbing Mount Everest is a/an
a. adventure b. diary c. contact d. cannon
3. When the wind , a lot of leaves fell from the trees.
a. sank b. stopped c. blew d. fired
4. Wood does not in water.
a. sink b. blow c. defend d. give
5. To the school, you need to cross the street.
a. get from b. get on c. get up d. get to
6. It you an advantage to be good with a computer.
a. fires b. gives c. prevents d. puts
7. A is a heavy weapon.
a. gun b. knife c. cannon d. sword
8. I won't you from defending yourself. You can say why you made this mistake.
a. sink b. blow c. allow d. prevent
9. The criminal fired his gun the driver.
a. at b. with c. from d. of
10. It is necessary to put a flag on the top of each school.
a. off b. up c. down d. for



I. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Thank you for the favour you have kindly me.
a. done b. made c. had d. introduced
2. To is to move something in or under soil using a tool.
a. lock b. swing c. uncover d. dig
3. This has a musical rhyme and a strong rhythm.
a. music b. novel c. poem d. poetic
4. They found an old ship under the water, which they think is full of
a. treason b. electricity c. passengers d. treasure
5. There is a narrow for walking on through our small garden.
a. motorway b. barrow c. path d. beach
6. Naguib Mahfouz's novels are very with all readers.
a. popular b. recent c. public d. serious
7. The word "blue" with "clue".
a. pinches b. rhymes c. includes d. hides
8. A currant is a line of plants that produce small fruit.
a. raw b. row c. law d. bow
9. Please, can you the door when you leave the room ?
a. look b. stick c. lock d. dig
10. It was a very long poem. It had about 60
a. verses b. rows c. rhythms d. pleasures
11. Hazem is planning to university next year.
a. goes b. going c. to go d. gone
12. The manager decided the reports he left the office.
a. read b. reading c. to read d. reads
13. Sami enjoys science fiction novels.
a. read b. to read c. reading d. reader
14. They don't allow us in the park .
a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling

15. He is used up early.

a. get

b. to get

c. getting

d. to getting

16. I can't afford this expensive flat.

a. to buy

b. buying

c. buy

d. to buying

17. **Fill in the gaps with suitable word (s) :**

My grandfather gave me some useful advice. He said that I (a) better (b) hard at home and at school. He also asked that I (c) a time plan. Finally, he (d) me promise to do my best.

a.

b.

c.

d.

II. Reading & Critical Thinking

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I have a friend called Ragab who always pretends to know everything. Whenever a name is mentioned, he says he knows the person who owns that name. I believed Ragab until one day I found out he was a big liar. Once he visited me when I was sitting with my cousin Mr Mohammed, who happened to be a well famous writer. Before I introduced my friend to Mr Mohammed, his eyes fell on one of the books, which was lying on the table. Ragab at once said that the author of the book was one of his relatives, and started telling stories about the adventures they had together. He also said that Mohammed never wrote a book before discussing its ideas with him. Mohammed kept on listening with interest. He asked my friend Ragab if he could recognize Mr Mohammed if he saw him. My friend assured him that he would. With a loud laugh, Mr Mohammed introduced himself to my friend who was so ashamed that he immediately left the house. Since that day my friend Ragab does his best to avoid me, and when he does meet me, he never says that he knows anything or anybody.

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

18. What was the turning point in this story?

a. Ragab says that Mr Mohammed is his friend.

b. Ragab visits the writer.

c. Ragab pretends to advise Mr Mohammed about his books.

d. Mr Mohamed introduces himself to Ragab.

19. After Ragab's meeting with Mr Mohammed, he was

- a. pleased b. proud c. regretful d. brave

20. Who / What is responsible for the embarrassing situation?

- a. Ragab himself b. The writer
c. Mr Mohammed d. The book on the table

21. What made the situation worse?

- a. Ragab said he knew Mr Mohammed.
b. Mr Mohammed listened patiently before introducing himself.
c. The writer didn't introduce Ragab to Mr Mohammed.
d. Ragab left the writer's house.

*** Answer the following questions :**

22. What motive دافع do you think Ragab had for telling lies? What better solution should he have had?

23. If you were Ragab, would you be pleased to be in such a situation? How would you behave in it?

24. If you were the writer, how would you help Ragab get over this situation? Would that be easy?

III. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

There have been several types of literary writings. The type that is most appealing to human emotional nature is undoubtedly poetry.

26. Translate into Arabic :

يعلم الجميع أن النساء أكثر حبًا وتذوقًا واستمتاعًا بالشعر، لكن من المفارقات الغريبة أن أشهر وأكثر الشعراء من الرجال وليس النساء.

IV. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

A review of a novel you have read

.....
.....
.....

تنويه اختبار تراكمي على كل ثلاث وحدات في الكراسة التفاعلية.

Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

adventure(n)	مغامرة	mysterious(adj)	غامض
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يذكر اسم
app(n)	تطبيق	old-fashioned(adj)	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن
care(n)	عناية / رعاية	online (adj - adv)	علي الإنترنت
case(n)	حالة / قضية	paintings(n)	لوحات
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	password(n)	كلمة المرور
communication(n)	التواصل - الاتصال	penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة
concerned(adj)	مهتم	perhaps(adv)	ربما
continue(d) (v)	يستمر - يدوم	popular(adj)	شائع = ذو شعبية
copy(ied) (v)	ينسخ	prefer(red) (v)	يفضّل
cover(ed) (n - v)	غلاف - يغطي	print(ed) (v)	يطبع
cruel(adj)	قاسي	professor(n)	أستاذ جامعي
Dark Ages(n)	عصور الظلام	real(adj)	حقيقي
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	recommend(ed) (v)	يوصي بـ / يَزَكّي
details(n)	تفاصيل	relaxing(adj)	مُرِح
difference(n)	اختلاف / فرق	reply(ied) (v)	يُرَد
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجّع	rest(n)	باقي - راحة
escape(d) (v)	يهرب	save(d) (v)	يحفظ - يدخر
ever(adv)	علي الإطلاق - من قبل	setting(n)	مكان وزمان الاحداث
face(d) (v)	يواجه	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
impossible(adj)	مستحيل	software(n)	برامج - برمجيات
interesting(adj)	شيق	strange(adj)	غريب
kidnapped(adj)	مخطوف	surprisingly(adv)	من المدهش
like(conj.)	مثل	technology(n)	تكنولوجيا
lose - lost (v)	يخسر - يفقد	text(n)	رسالة نصية - نص
material(n)	محتويات	trick(ed) (v)	يخدع

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

action(n)	حركة - حدث	maps(n)	خرائط
almost(adv)	تقريباً	message(n)	رسالة
around(adv)	حول	museum(n)	متحف
arrange(d) (v)	يرتب	situation(n)	موقف
character(n)	شخصية	still(adv)	لا يزال
dangerous(adj)	خطير	successful(adj)	ناجح
decide(d) (v)	يقرر	together(adv)	معاً
example(n)	مثال	true(adj)	صحيح
fantastic(adj)	رائع	warmer(adj)	أكثر حميمية
farm(n)	مزرعة	wonderful(adj)	رائع
full(adj)	مملوء		

Part II

Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

express	ideas	تعبّر عن أفكار	send	a message to	يُرسل
have	a penfriend	لديه صديق مراسلة		a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
make	friends with	يُصادق / يُصاحب	take	it for granted	يكون على يقين / يظن أنه من المُسلم به

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an example is	أحد الأمثلة هو	just a pen and paper will do	فقط قلم وورقة سيفيان بالغرض
and so on	وهكذا	know very well	يعرف جيداً
around the world	حول العالم	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
as far as I'm concerned	علي قدر اهتمامي	make ... stressed	تجعل ... تحت ضغط
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	not my kind of book	ليس نوعي المفضل من الكتب
different from	مختلف عن	old-fashioned	ذو أسلوب قديم - موضة قديمة
each other	بعضهم البعض	on a ship	علي سفينة
events of the story	أحداث القصة	online clubs	نادي / منتدى علي الانترنت
for the rest of your life	طوال ما تبقي من عمرك	really fun	ممتع فعلاً
full of action	ملي بالأحداث	seventeen-year-old	ذو السبعة عشر عاماً

be here to stay مستمر / لا غني عنه
in the 1930s في ثلاثينات القرن العشرين
Information Dark Age عصر الظلام الرقمي
it's not all good news ليست اخبار جيدة علي الاطلاق

continue to يستمر في
copy ... onto ينسخ ... علي
decide to يقرر أن
encourage ... to يشجع ... أن
escape with يهرب مع
hack into يخترق

that is just the start of هذه مجرد بداية لـ
the Dark Ages عصور الظلام
travel through يسافر عبر
you shouldn't judge لا تحكم بالظاهر
a book by its cover يتمكن من / ينجح في
manage to ينتقل
move to يُبعد
send ... away يقيم مع
stay with يأخذ ... بعيداً
take ... away يُراسل
write to

Reading & Listening texts

1 Reading Texts

A. Why penfriends are history !

(SB page 72)

Communication⁽¹⁾ is easy today. Many people use apps⁽²⁾ on their smartphones⁽³⁾ to talk to their friends. When we send a message⁽⁴⁾ to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply⁽⁵⁾ very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends.⁽⁶⁾ These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular.⁽⁷⁾

An example⁽⁸⁾ is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided⁽⁹⁾ to write to each other⁽¹⁰⁾ in the 1930s, and are now perhaps⁽¹¹⁾ the longest two people ever⁽¹²⁾ to be penfriends.

Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued⁽¹³⁾ to write to her. Like⁽¹⁴⁾ Nellie, Daphe lived on a farm⁽¹⁵⁾ and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as⁽¹⁶⁾ letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) التواصل - الاتصال
- (2) تطبيقات
- (3) الهواتف الذكية
- (4) رسالة
- (5) يرد
- (6) صديق مراسلة
- (7) شائع - ذو شعبية
- (8) مثال
- (9) يقرر
- (10) بعضهم البعض
- (11) ربما
- (12) على الإطلاق
- (13) يستمر
- (14) مثل
- (15) مزرعة
- (16) بالإضافة إلى

Nellie still⁽¹⁷⁾ prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology⁽¹⁸⁾ to communicate.⁽¹⁹⁾

Surprisingly,⁽²⁰⁾ there are now many online⁽²¹⁾ clubs for penfriends. They encourage⁽²²⁾ people to write letters to penfriends around⁽²³⁾ the world, and they are very successful.⁽²⁴⁾ Many say that writing letters is relaxing⁽²⁵⁾ and a warmer⁽²⁶⁾ way to communicate than with an email or text.⁽²⁷⁾ You do not need apps, passwords or anti-virus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do.'

- (17) لا يزال
(18) تكنولوجيا
(19) يتصل - يتواصل
(20) من المدهش
(21) على الانترنت
(22) يشجع
(23) حول
(24) ناجح
(25) مريح
(26) أكثر حميمية
(27) رسالة نصية

B. A fantastic adventure story !

(SB page 74)

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's Kidnapped⁽¹⁾ is not as great as Treasure Island or as exciting as The Strange⁽²⁾ Case⁽³⁾ of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, but it is full⁽⁴⁾ of action⁽⁵⁾ and really fun.

I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious⁽⁶⁾ uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel⁽⁷⁾ man and he tricks⁽⁸⁾ David. He arranges⁽⁹⁾ for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to⁽¹⁰⁾ escape⁽¹¹⁾ with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures.⁽¹²⁾ I recommend⁽¹³⁾ this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) المخطوف
(2) غريب
(3) حالة / قضية
(4) مملوء
(5) حركة - حدث
(6) غامض
(7) قاسى
(8) يخدع
(9) يرتب
(10) يتمكن من
(11) الهروب
(12) مغامرة
(13) يوصى بـ / يزكى

C. Not the best book for me

(SB page 74)

As far as I'm concerned,⁽¹⁾ this book is too old-fashioned.⁽²⁾ The story is interesting⁽³⁾ and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters⁽⁴⁾ are very real.⁽⁵⁾ David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer⁽⁶⁾ to read more modern books. Kidnapped is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مهم
(2) أسلوبه قديم
(3) شيق
(4) شخصيات
(5) حقيقى
(6) يفضل

D. My favourite book !

(SB page 74)

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with⁽¹⁾ a man called Alan Breck. Together⁽²⁾ they travel through Scotland and face⁽³⁾ many dangerous⁽⁴⁾ and exciting situations.⁽⁵⁾ I love all the details⁽⁶⁾ about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely⁽⁷⁾ read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يُصَادِق - يُصَاحِب
- (2) مَعًا
- (3) يَواجِه
- (4) خَطِير
- (5) مَوَاقِف
- (6) تَفَاصِيل
- (7) بِالتَّائِيد

2 Listening Texts

Interviewer : Hello, today I'm talking to Professor⁽¹⁾ Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

Professor : That's true,⁽²⁾ although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer : What are you worried about?

Professor : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages,⁽³⁾ because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Professor : Today we use computer technology for almost⁽⁴⁾ all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic,⁽⁵⁾ of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose⁽⁶⁾ a lot of material⁽⁷⁾ because new technology won't be able to read it.

(SB page 73)

**Check Vocabulary**

- (1) أستاذ جامعي
- (2) صحيح
- (3) عصور الظلام
- (4) تقريبًا
- (5) رائع
- (6) يفقد - يخسر
- (7) محتويات

Interviewer : But we'll copy⁽⁸⁾ all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save,⁽⁹⁾ or we will forget the passwords⁽¹⁰⁾ to give us this information.

Interviewer : What can we do about this?

Professor : In my opinion, we need to print⁽¹¹⁾ more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum⁽¹²⁾ and you will see wonderful⁽¹³⁾ old paintings,⁽¹⁴⁾ photographs, maps⁽¹⁵⁾ and so on.⁽¹⁶⁾ With care,⁽¹⁷⁾ these will be with us for a long time.

Interviewer : So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

Professor : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow. We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer : It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.

(8) ينسخ

(9) يحفظ

(10) كلمة مرور

(11) يطبع

(12) متحف

(13) رائع

(14) لوحات

(15) خرائط

(16) وهكذا

(17) عناية / رعاية

General Exercises on Units 4,5&6

Collected from SB & WB تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't know what to do, so I am going to ask my uncle for advice.

- a. an b. some c. a d. any

2. There is always a lot of before you can go on a plane.

- a. bullying b. security c. malware d. calm

3. I faculty of engineering when I grow up, it's my intention.

- a. will join b. join c. am going to join d. am joining

4. Most people take clean water for, but not all places have it.

- a. granted b. given c. having d. done

5. My cousin spends a lot of time photos on the internet.

- a. post b. posted c. posting d. posts

6. Your computer is very easy to guess : it's 1 , 2 , 3 , 4 !

- a. app b. software c. virus d. password

7. I want to write short story. It looks like fun.

- a. no article b. the c. an d. a

8. You will find information about the sports club on the school

- a. communication b. connection
c. noticeboard d. notice

9. Ramy promised me to finish my school project.

- a. helps b. help c. helping d. to help

10. Before you plant a tree, you'll need to a hole.

- a. dig b. get c. take d. want

11. The teacher suggested to the library to borrow some poetry books.

- a. go b. to go c. to going d. going

12. There will soon be the for us to all travel in cars without drivers.

- a. speed b. technology c. scientist d. model

13. poem I read yesterday is really interesting.

- a. A b. An c. The d. No article

14. They all have smartphones, so they are all to the internet.

- a. joined b. with c. disconnected d. connected

15. We never allow in this school.

a. bully

b. bullying

c. to bully

d. is bullied

16. The email said it was from a bank, but we all knew it was really a

a. software

b. lock

c. scam

d. hack

2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

Do you think people will (1) able to go to the moon for a holiday in the future ? Some people say ' Space Tourism ' is (2) to generate a lot of money in the future. The training programme (3) cost over \$ 200 000, so it (4) be available to most people. However, some companies have waiting lists of people who (5) hoping to become astronauts in the next two years. Perhaps your grandchildren (6) take their holidays on Mars !

3 A. Translate the following into Arabic.

1. Do you think man will live on the moon in the future ?

.....

2. Young people are able to share in doing voluntary work in different field.

.....

B. Translate the following into English.

١. دائماً أتذكر أن أغير كلمة السر لتليفونى المحمول كل شهر.

.....

.....

٢. علينا أن نستغل أوقات الفراغ فى ممارسة الهوايات المفيدة.

.....

.....

4 Read the text and answer of questions :

Is screen time good ?

Many people like to access information and social media easily. But is it bad for us to spend so much time in front of a screen ?

On the one hand, computers, tablets and smartphones are useful tools for communicating with friends and family. Young people can use the internet for its educational content, learn important research skills and also see a variety of cultures from around the world.

On the other hand, technology can make young people less physically active. And there are also concerns that the light that comes from digital devices can cause health problems. For example, looking at a screen at night can make it more difficult to sleep. The internet is still quite new, so we do not really know what the long-term affects that using it are going to have on our health.

The internet has also introduced us to new words for problems that people did not have in the past. Your parents did not have cyberbullying, for example. There have always been scams, but problems such as phishing for personal information and hacking into banks are also quite new.

In the end, the solution is about balance. Technology can help us to develop new skills and it can open up the world. We will almost certainly have more technology in the future, too. We need to learn how to use it carefully for the good of everyone. However, physical activity and regular sleep patterns are essential too. Balance both and we can all live in a healthy, well-educated world.

1. According to the text, people like technology because they can

- a. play games b. find information c. take pictures

2. According to the text, technology does not improve

- a. communication b. education c. physical exercise

3. People are worried that the light from tablets can cause difficulty in

- a. sleeping b. reading c. turning off the screen

4. In the past, there were
 - a. never any scams.
 - b. no words for some of today's problems.
 - c. different words for the same problems.
5. What is the most positive effect of having access to the internet, in your opinion ? Why ?

.....
6. What sort of new technology will we have more of in the future ?

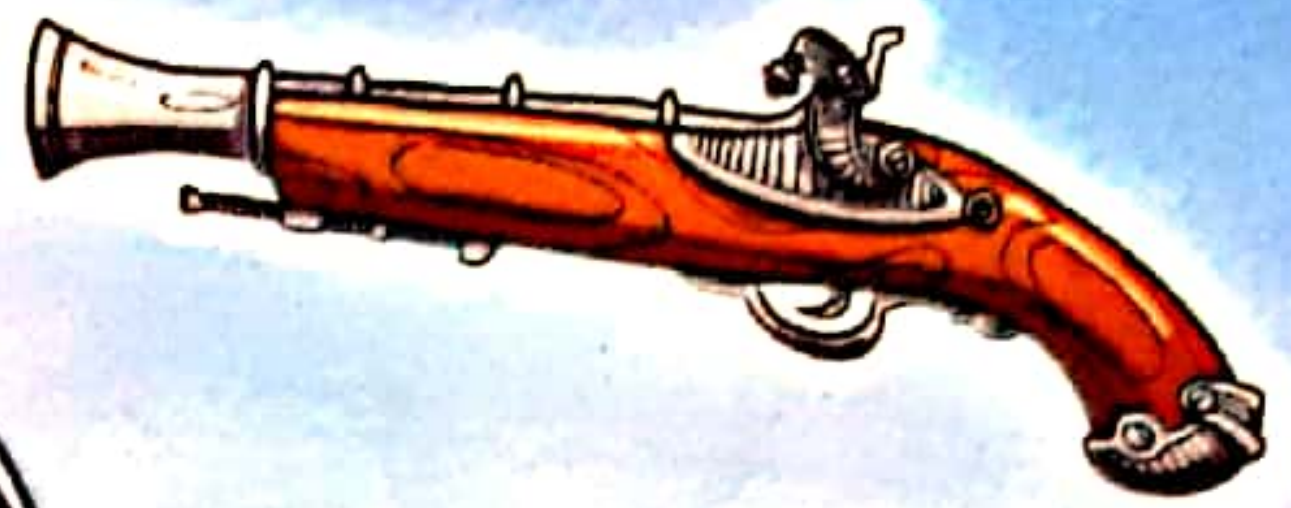
.....
7. In what ways do you balance using technology with staying active ?

.....

5 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic.

1. Write an email to a friend about a problem or a decision you have to make. Include some information about the situation and ask your friend advice.
2. Write an email to a friend who has moved to a new town. Include some advice about how to make new friends and arrange a time when you can visit them.

Treasure Island



Main Characters



Dr. Livesey



Jim Hawkins,
A young teenage boy



Captain Smollett,
the ship's captain



Mr. Trelawney

The Pirates



Billy Bones



Long John Silver



Captain Flint,
His parrot



Ben Gun



Pew

Setting

The story takes place at The Admiral Benbow Inn in Bristol on the *Hispaniola*, a sailing ship on Treasure Island, an island in the Caribbean.

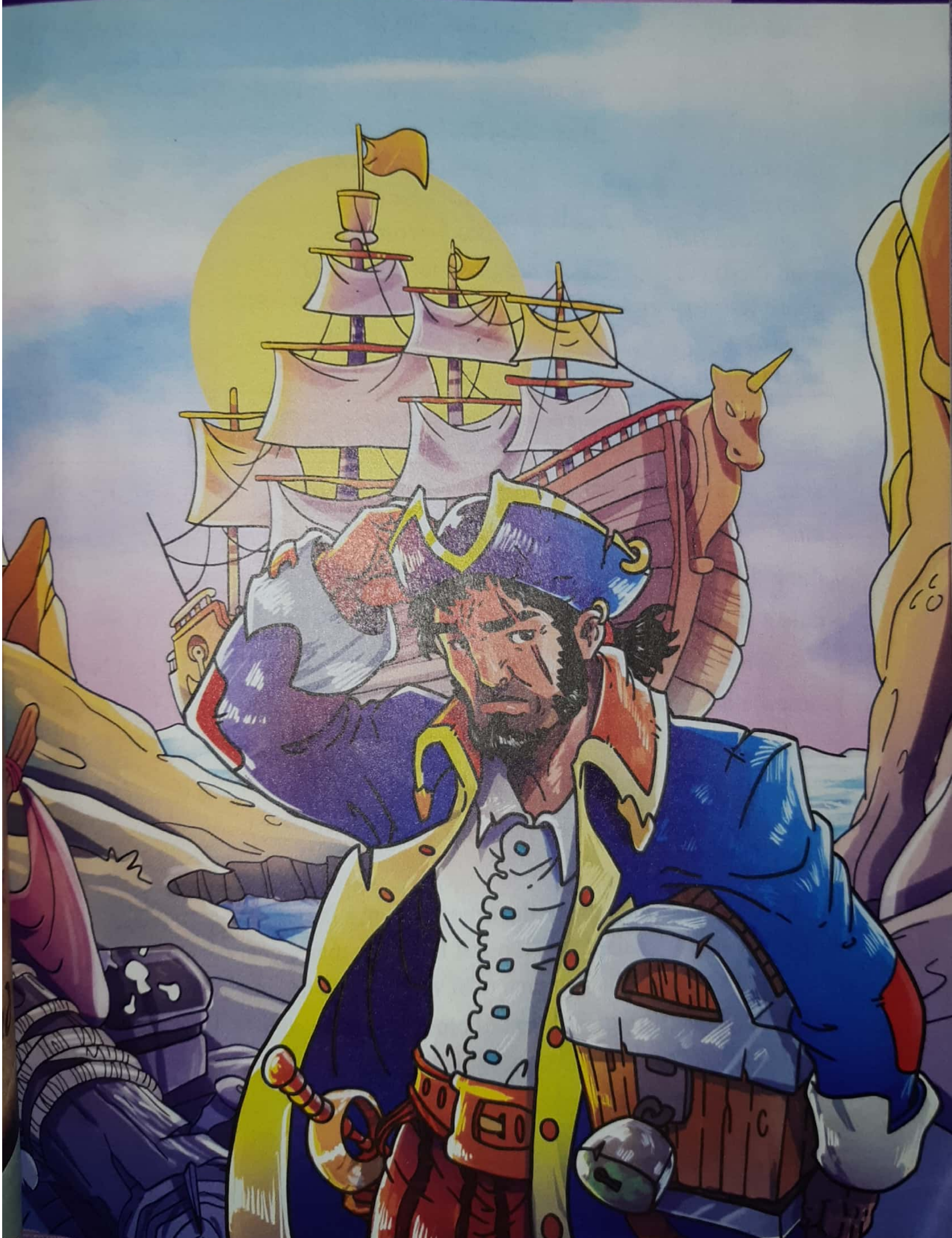


Treasure Island

By Robert Louis Stevenson

CHAPTER

1



Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hide – hid – hidden (v)	يُخْبِي - يُخْبَى
blind (adj)	كفيف البصر	inn (n)	نَزْل (فندق صغير)
captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	owe (ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
cliff (n)	مُنْحَدَر	own (ed) (v)	يملك
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
danger (n)	الخطر	papers (n)	مستندات - جرائد
dare (d) (v)	يجرؤ	scar (n)	نُدْبَة - أثر جرح
frightened (adj)	خائف	sword (n)	سيف
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	terrible (adj)	فظيع
guard (ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس	travel (led) (n - v)	السفر - يسافر
gun (n)	بندقية	weak (adj)	ضعيف - واهن
hand (ed) (n - v)	يُعطي (باليد) - يد		

Words and their definitions

scar	: a mark on the skin from a cut or a wound	أثر جرح في الجسم
cliff	: a steep piece of land or rock	منحدر
dare	: to be brave enough to do something	جرىء
pale	: having a skin colour that is very white or whiter than it usually is	شاحب
sword	: a weapon with a long, sharp blade	سيف

Before You read

- Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?

Jim Hawkins

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned⁽¹⁾ an inn⁽²⁾ called the Admiral Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar⁽³⁾ on his face.

He looked around⁽⁴⁾ him.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) امتلك
- (2) نزل / فندق
- (3) ندبة / أثر الجرح في الجسم
- (4) نظر حوله

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up⁽⁵⁾ to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins⁽⁶⁾.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs⁽⁷⁾. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors⁽⁸⁾ visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised⁽⁹⁾ that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

(5) يرفع ... إلى

(6) عملات ذهبية

(7) منحدرات

(8) بحارة

(9) أدرك / فهم

(10) يجرو

(11) ذهب في تمشية

(12) شاحب

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain's stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare⁽¹⁰⁾ to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk⁽¹¹⁾ along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale⁽¹²⁾, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk." "Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill. "Black Dog!" the Captain said.

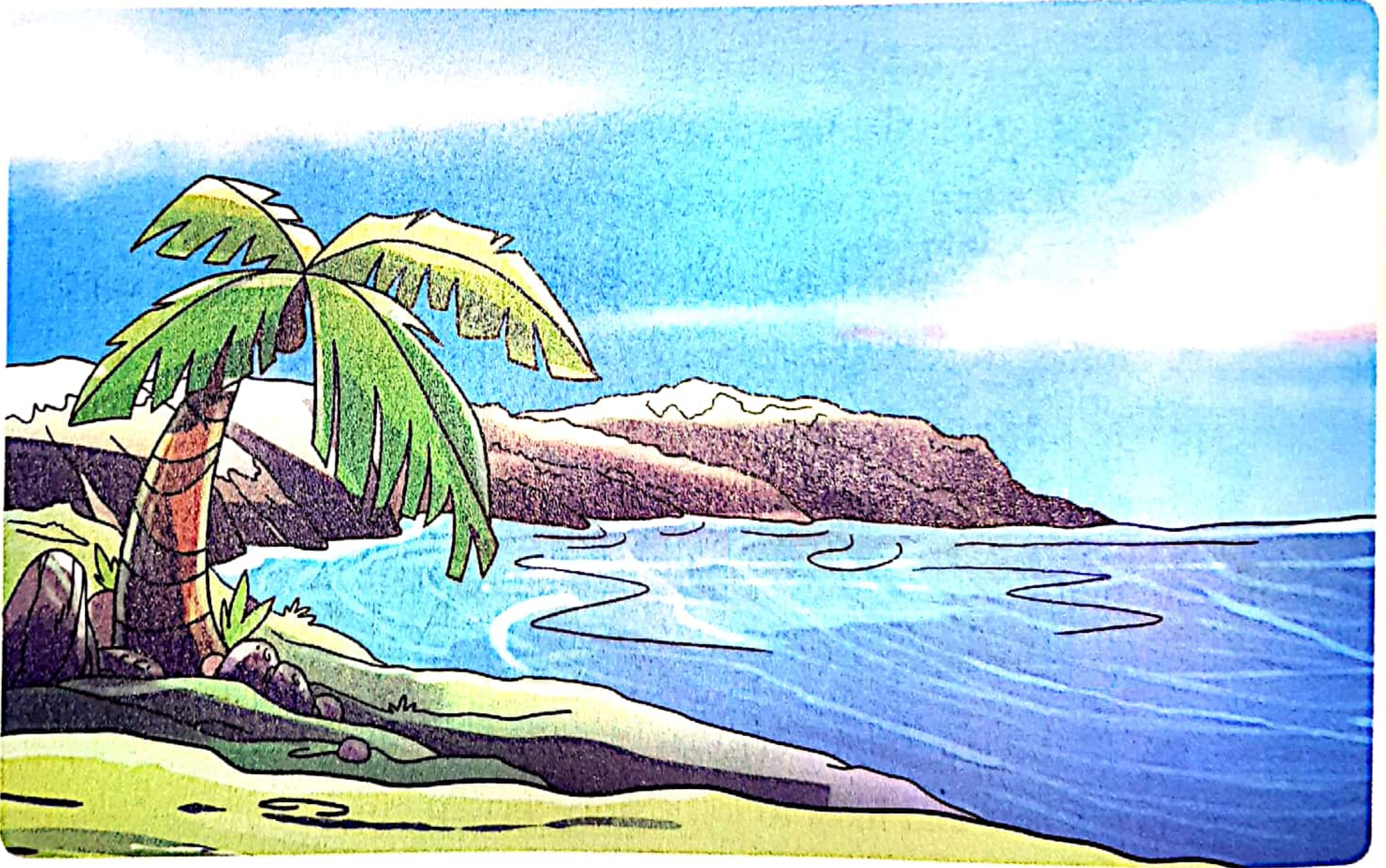
"That's right," he replied⁽¹³⁾. "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures⁽¹⁴⁾ since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts⁽¹⁵⁾ and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword⁽¹⁶⁾ and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood⁽¹⁷⁾ on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight⁽¹⁸⁾. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick. "Help us, Dr Livesy! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs⁽¹⁹⁾."

(13)	أجاب / رد
(14)	مغامرات
(15)	صرخات عالية
(16)	سيف
(17)	دم
(18)	عراك / مشاجرة
(19)	الدور العلوى
(20)	دواء



We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine⁽²⁰⁾. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted. "Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible⁽²¹⁾ and forgot all about the strange things⁽²²⁾ that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a blind man⁽²³⁾ coming down the road towards⁽²⁴⁾ the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind⁽²⁵⁾ person help me?" "You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed my hand⁽²⁶⁾.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"

I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised⁽²⁷⁾ to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned around⁽²⁸⁾ and left. The Captain looked at what the man gave him. "Ten o'clock!" he said.

"I have time!⁽²⁹⁾"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in danger⁽³⁰⁾. We decided to go to the nearest village⁽³¹⁾ and ask our neighbours⁽³²⁾ for help guarding⁽³³⁾ the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesy. Another man said that we could have his gun⁽³⁴⁾.

(21) شعرت بالسوء

(22) أشياء غريبة

(23) رجل كفيف

(24) تجاه / ناحية

(25) طيب / عطوف

(26) أمسك بيدي

(27) مندهش

(28) استدار حول

(29) لديه وقت

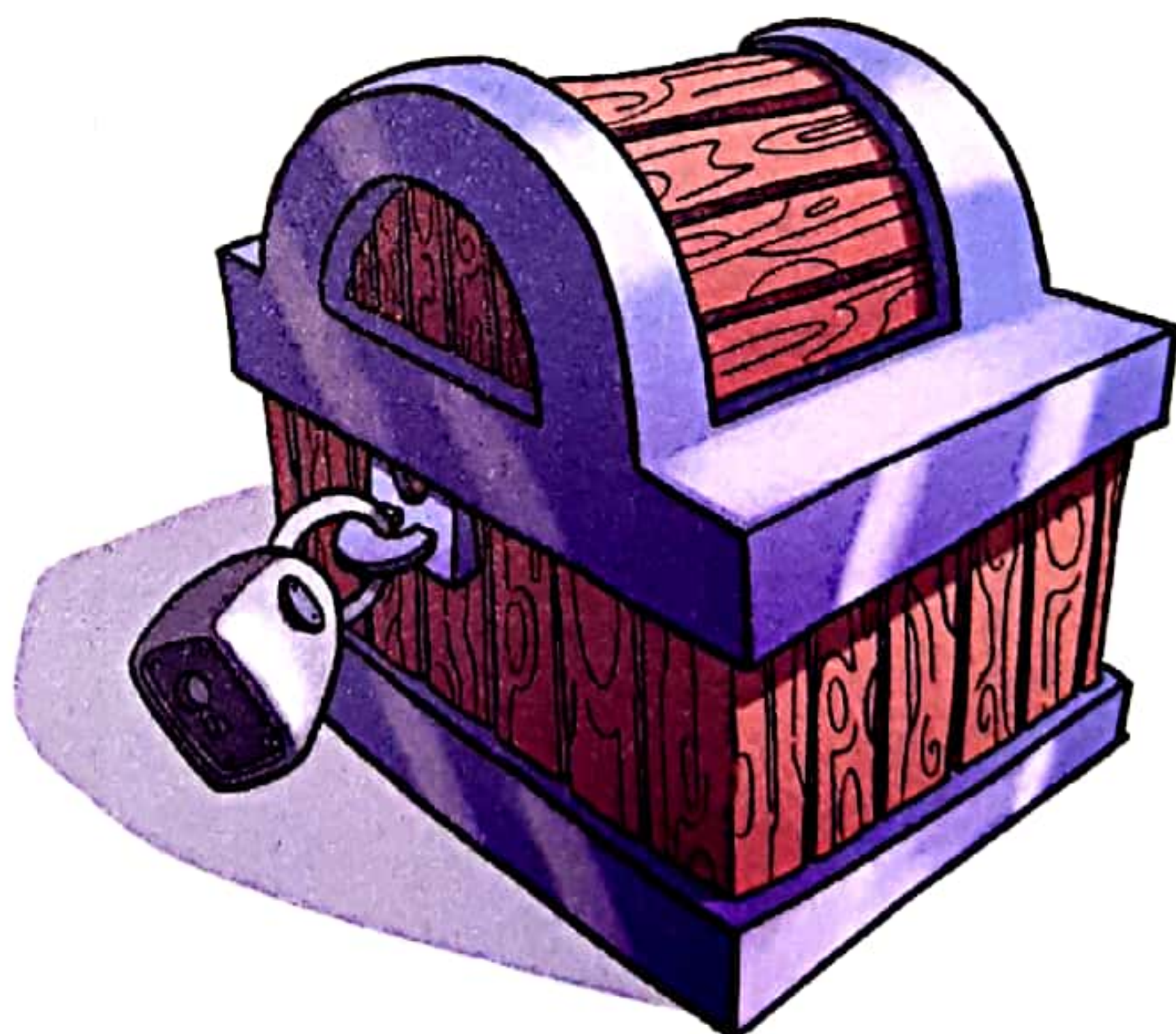
(30) فى خطر

(31) أقرب قرية

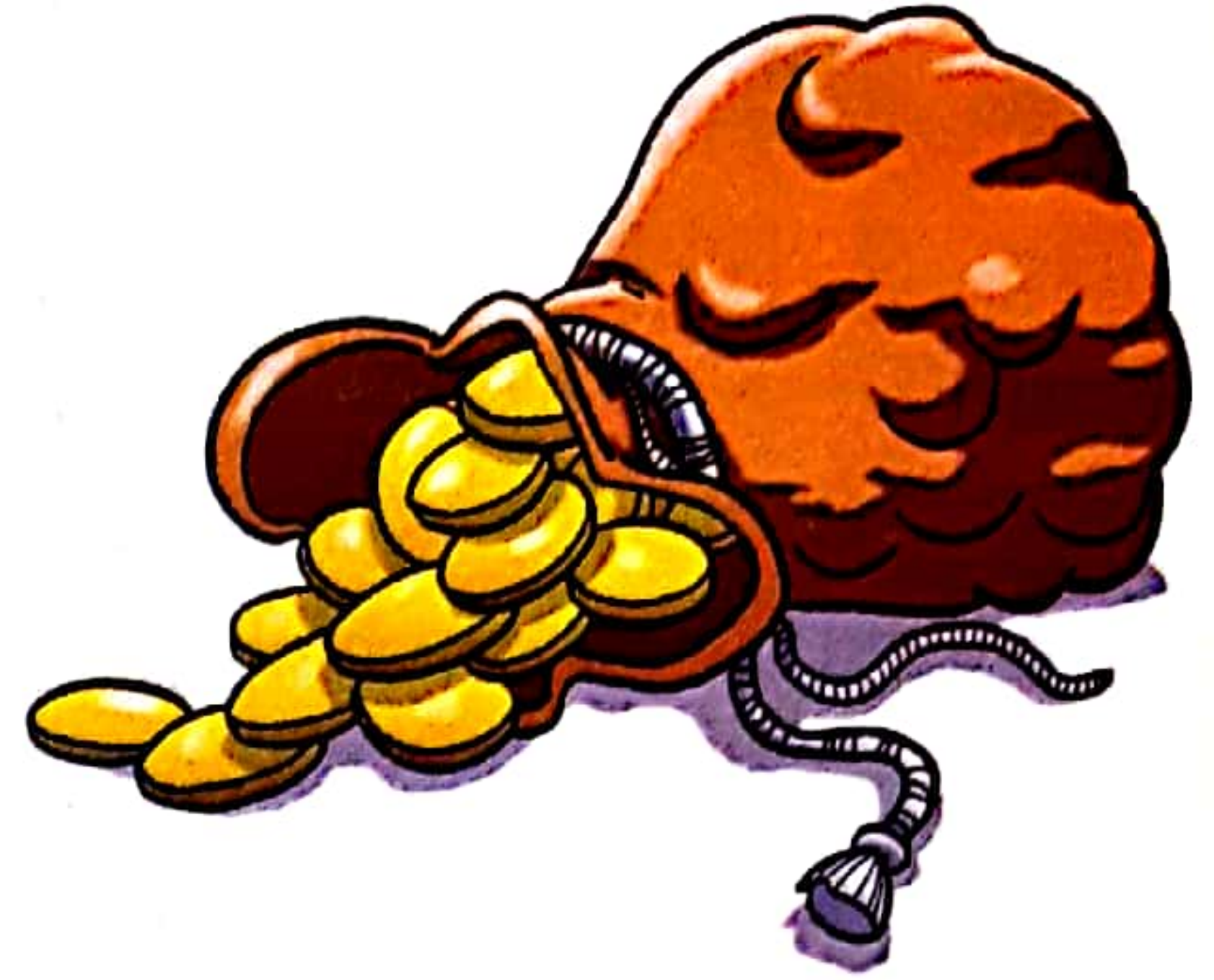
(32) جيران

(33) حماية

(34) بندقية



It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the Captain's jacket. I also saw the message⁽³⁵⁾ that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight." We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins inside.



"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes⁽³⁶⁾ us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too weak⁽³⁷⁾ to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge⁽³⁸⁾, where we could hide⁽³⁹⁾ in the dark.

(35) رسالة

(36) يدين لـ

(37) ضعيف

(38) كوبرى

(39) يختبئ

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You me twenty thousand pounds. Please, I need my money back.
a. own b. owe c. possess d. have
2. The policeman the criminal's arm and pushed him into the police car.
a. bit b. guarded c. released d. grabbed
3. There was a small by the road where we could have a meal and spend the night.
a. beach b. inn c. prison d. pool
4. Being, he needs someone to help him cross the road.
a. strong b. indebted c. blind d. wealthy
5. There's a night watchman who our school at night.
a. guards b. steals c. fears d. frightens
6. In ancient times, people usually carried to protect themselves or fight others.
a. tanks b. submarines c. missiles d. swords
7. I wanted to ask my father for more pocket money, but I didn't
a. guard b. dare c. attack d. owe
8. This wound الجرح might leave a / an on your cheek.
a. scare b. scar c. inn d. guard
9. His long illness made him go
a. healthy b. powerful c. pale d. strong
10. Be careful! This is steep and very dangerous.
a. cliff b. plain c. lake d. tree

Chapter 1

11. They stopped at a small by the road to rest and have a meal.
a. cliff b. scar c. island d. inn
12. He much money to the bank.
a. owes b. grabs c. hides d. guards
13. After two weeks in hospital, he looked and weak.
a. blind b. frightened c. pale d. terrible
14. The wound left a on his face.
a. cliff b. scar c. island d. inn
15. Sharp were important weapons in the past.
a. dangers b. papers c. swords d. guns
16. To that remote farm, you need a gun.
a. owe b. grab c. hide d. guard
17. A friend of mine the sleeve of my shirt and it was torn.
a. travelled b. grabbed c. frightened d. hid
18. She not say no to her father.
a. dare b. grab c. hide d. guard
19. To reach that remote desert, you need a ship.
a. sword b. scar c. island d. inn
20. I don't know how he could climb such a high rocky
a. cliff b. scar c. island d. inn

CHAPTER

2



Vocabulary

catch - caught (d) (v)	يقبض علي	island (n)	جزيرة
clue (n)	دليل / مفتاح كل اللغز	magistrate (n)	قاضي / محقق
cook (n)	طاه - طبَّاح	map (n)	خريطة
crew (n)	طاقم سفينة / طائرة	rich (adj)	ثري / غني
cross (n)	علامة (× / +)	rob (bed) (v)	يسرق
dead (adj)	ميت	sail (ed) (v)	يبحر
direction (n)	اتجاه	secret (n - adj)	سر - سري
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	servant (n)	خادم
head (n)	رئيس - قائد	the rest (n)	الباقى
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمَّن	treasure (n)	كنز

Words and their definitions

clue	: an object or a piece of information that helps to solve a crime	مفتاح لحل اللغز
crew	: all the people who work on a ship or a plane	طاقم سفينة / طائرة
escape	: succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you	يهرب
head	: the most important person in an organisation	رئيس / قائد
magistrate	: someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court	قاضي / محقق
rob	: steal something from a person, shop ... etc.	يسرق / يسلب
servant	: someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning	خادم

Before You read

- What do you think will happen next in the story ?

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out⁽¹⁾, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!" The men started to look around the house.

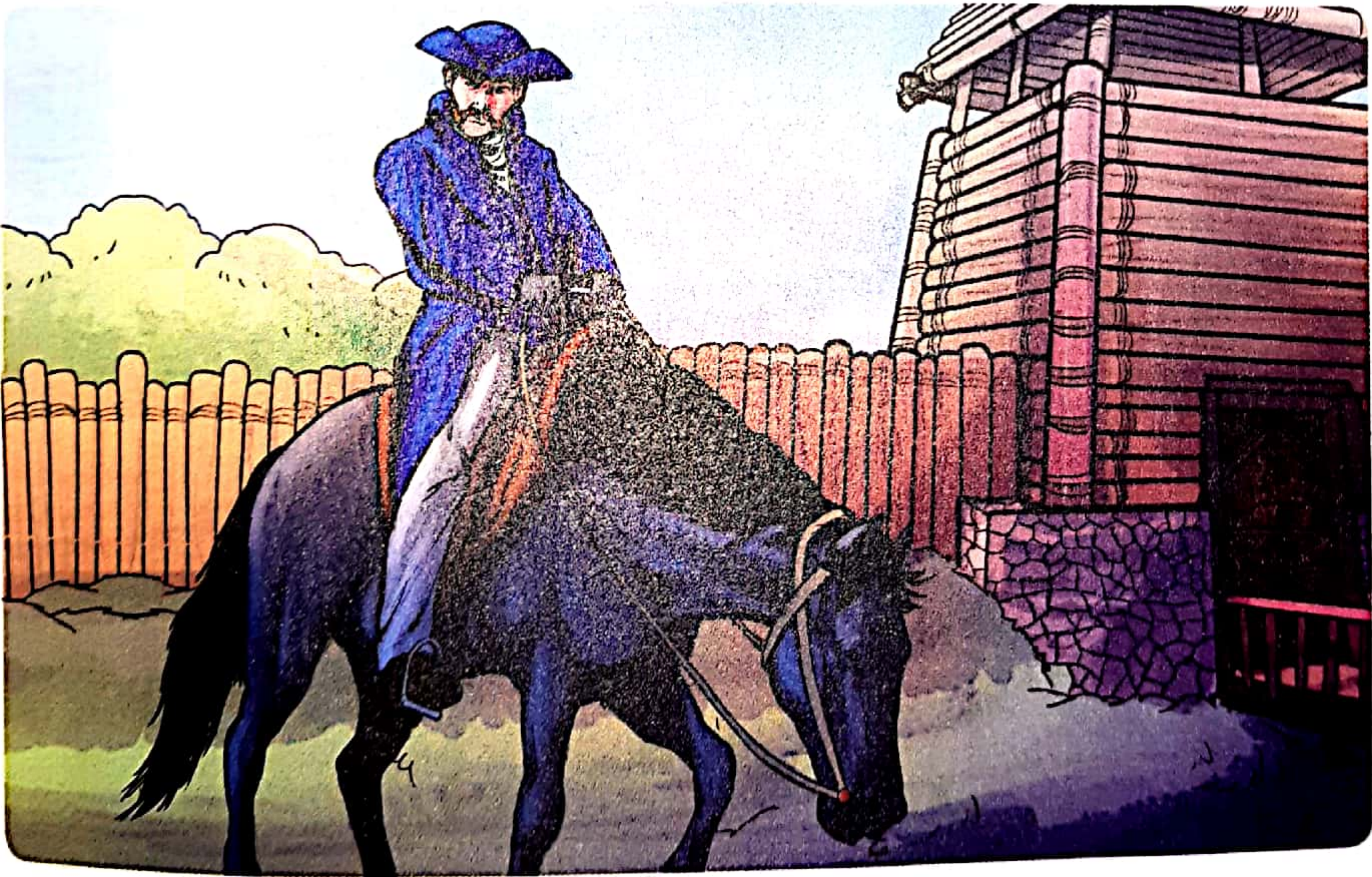
"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions⁽²⁾.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest⁽³⁾ were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better⁽⁴⁾, and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped⁽⁵⁾ on a boat.

Check Vocabulary

- | |
|-----------------|
| (1) نادى |
| (2) اتجاهات |
| (3) البقية |
| (4) شعر بتحسن |
| (5) هرب |
| (6) رئيس الشرطة |



I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head of the police⁽⁶⁾.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesy."

“That’s a good idea,” said Mr Dance. “He’s a magistrate⁽⁷⁾ as well as a doctor. He’ll know what to do. I’ll come with you.”

We found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.

“I think this might be a clue⁽⁸⁾ as to where Flint buried⁽⁹⁾ his treasure!”⁽¹⁰⁾ said Dr Livesy.

“That is why those men were not interested in⁽¹¹⁾ money,” agreed⁽¹²⁾ Mr Trelawney. “If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure ourselves!”

“If Jim here agrees,” said the doctor, looking at me, “we should look at these papers now.”



The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe⁽¹³⁾ the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed⁽¹⁴⁾ of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map⁽¹⁵⁾ of an island, with a big cross⁽¹⁶⁾ on it next to the words, “most of treasure here.”

- (7) رجل قضاء / محقق
- (8) دليل / مفتاح اللغز
- (9) دفن
- (10) كنز
- (11) مهتم بـ
- (12) وافق
- (13) يصف
- (14) يسلب / يسرق
- (15) خريطة
- (16) علامة (X)

"Dr Livesy, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney.

“In a few days, we’ll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship’s boy. You can be the ship’s doctor.”

“I agree,” said the doctor, “but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know.”

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave⁽¹⁷⁾ England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for⁽¹⁸⁾ the journey⁽¹⁹⁾ in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney.

It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the Hispaniola for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew⁽²⁰⁾ ready to work on it. The crew included⁽²¹⁾ a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook⁽²²⁾. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by⁽²³⁾ the thought⁽²⁴⁾ of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news⁽²⁵⁾ of the treasure a secret⁽²⁵⁾.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye⁽²⁶⁾ to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail⁽²⁷⁾.

- (17) مستعد للمغادرة
- (18) جهاز
- (19) رحلة (طويلة)
- (20) طاقم السفينة
- (21) يشمل / يتضمن
- (22) طبّاخ جيد
- (23) مثار بسبب
- (24) فكرة
- (25) حافظ على سرية الأخبار
- (26) يودع
- (27) يبحر

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The decided that the man was innocent برئ and set him free.
 a. pirate b. sailor c. cook d. magistrate
2. It is one of the policemen's jobs to criminals and send them to prison.
 a. hold b. catch c. hand d. overlook
3. The job of the new is to clean the house and the garden.
 a. master b. landlord c. servant d. captain
4. Dr Zewail was the of the team who discovered the femtosecond.
 a. head b. hand c. lord d. owner
5. The ancient Egyptians left us lots of hidden
 a. islands b. crosses c. treasures d. crews
6. There are signs along the roads that show us
 a. treasures b. directions c. riches d. meals
7. The of the plane consisted of a pilot, a copilot and eight attendants.
 a. passengers b. wings c. engine d. crew
8. Poor is to as servant is to master.
 a. wealth b. wealthy c. rich d. the rich
9. The police have found a strong that helped them solve the crime.
 a. clue b. cross c. island d. blind
10. This is a good tourist attraction for people who like fishing, diving and sailing. Water completely surrounds it.
 a. hill b. mountain c. island d. river
11. He was set free أطلق سراحه after the had decided that he was not responsible for the crime.
 a. captain b. magistrate c. pilot d. sailor

12. It is said that knowledge is the most valuable قِيم
 a. island b. clue c. pressure d. treasure
13. Important decisions are taken only by the of the country after consulting his advisors.
 a. head b. heart c. magistrate d. map
14. It is impossible to from this prison.
 a. catch b. rob c. include d. escape
15. As a, he does the housework.
 a. sailor b. crew c. servant d. cook
16. The mark (\times / +) is called a
 a. angle b. cross c. circle d. square
17. Some thieves tried to the bank last night.
 a. rob b. steal c. include d. cook
18. The of the plane consists of a pilot, a copilot and flight attendants.
 a. staff b. stuff c. crew d. crow
19. It is the job of the ship's to prepare the meals for people on board.
 a. crew b. sailors c. cooker d. cook
20. I'm not sure he is guilty مذنب. I don't have a strong against him.
 a. clue b. cross c. secret d. head

CHAPTER

3



Vocabulary

attack (ed) (n - v)	يهاجم - هجوم	mutiny (n)	تَمَرُّد / عَصِيَان
barrel (n)	برميل (خشبي)	note (n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
crutch (n)	عُكَّاز - رَكِيزَة	of different sizes	ذو أحجام مُخْتَلِفَة
destination (n)	مَقْصِد - وَجْهَة السَّفر	parrot (n)	ببغاء
empty (ied) (n - v)	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	patient (adj - n)	صبور - مريض
finger (n)	إصبع اليد	pay - paid (for) (v)	يدفع ثمن
frightened (adj)	خائف	pirate (n)	قُرْصَان
gang (n)	عصابة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلي
harbour (n)	مَرَسِي - ميناء	return (ed) (v)	يعود - يُعِيد
helper (n)	مُسَاعِد	safe (adj)	آمن - في أمان
journey (n)	رحلة	sailor (n)	بَحَّار
lose a leg	يفقد إحدى ساقيه	save (d) (v)	يُنْقِذ - يَدَّخِر
make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك	secret (n - adj)	سر - سَرِّي

Words and their definitions

harbour	: an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely	ميناء
mutiny	: when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge of them and take control for themselves	تمرد
crutch	: a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg	عكاز
parrot	: a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak	ببغاء
barrel	: a large container made of wood	برميل
pirate	: a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them	قرصان
gang	: a group of people that causes trouble	عصابة
secret	: known about by only a few people and kept from others	سر
patient	: able to wait calmly for a long time	صبور
attack	: an act of violence that is intended to hurt a person or damage a place	هجوم

Before You read

- What do you think life is like on the Hispaniola ?

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note⁽¹⁾ to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of⁽²⁾ people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for⁽³⁾ his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers⁽⁴⁾. The helper ran out of the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked⁽⁵⁾ my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour⁽⁶⁾ past boats of different sizes⁽⁷⁾, all preparing to go to sea. Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) ملاحظة
- (2) ملئ بـ
- (3) يدفع لـ
- (4) مساعدين
- (5) هاجم
- (6) ميناء (الرسو السفن)
- (7) أحجام مختلفة



It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

“What’s the problem?” asked Mr Trelawney.

“I don’t like the men on this ship and I’m not happy about where we’re going,” he said. “Why not?” asked Dr Livesy.

“I was told that the destination⁽⁸⁾ of the journey was a secret,” he explained. “But the crew tell me we’re looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew.”

“Don’t you like the crew we chose?” asked Mr Trelawney.

“If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you. And don’t show anyone the map,” said Smollett.

(8) وجهة (السفر)

(9) تمرد / عصيان

(10) يحافظ على سلامتك

(11) دعامة / عكاز

(12) ببغاء

(13) جعلنى أضحك

“Are you worried there will be a mutiny⁽⁹⁾?” asked Dr Livesy.

“I don’t like the men on the ship and I’m not happy about where we’re going,” he said.

“Why not ?” asked Dr Livesy.

“It’s my job to keep you safe⁽¹⁰⁾, that’s all,” said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

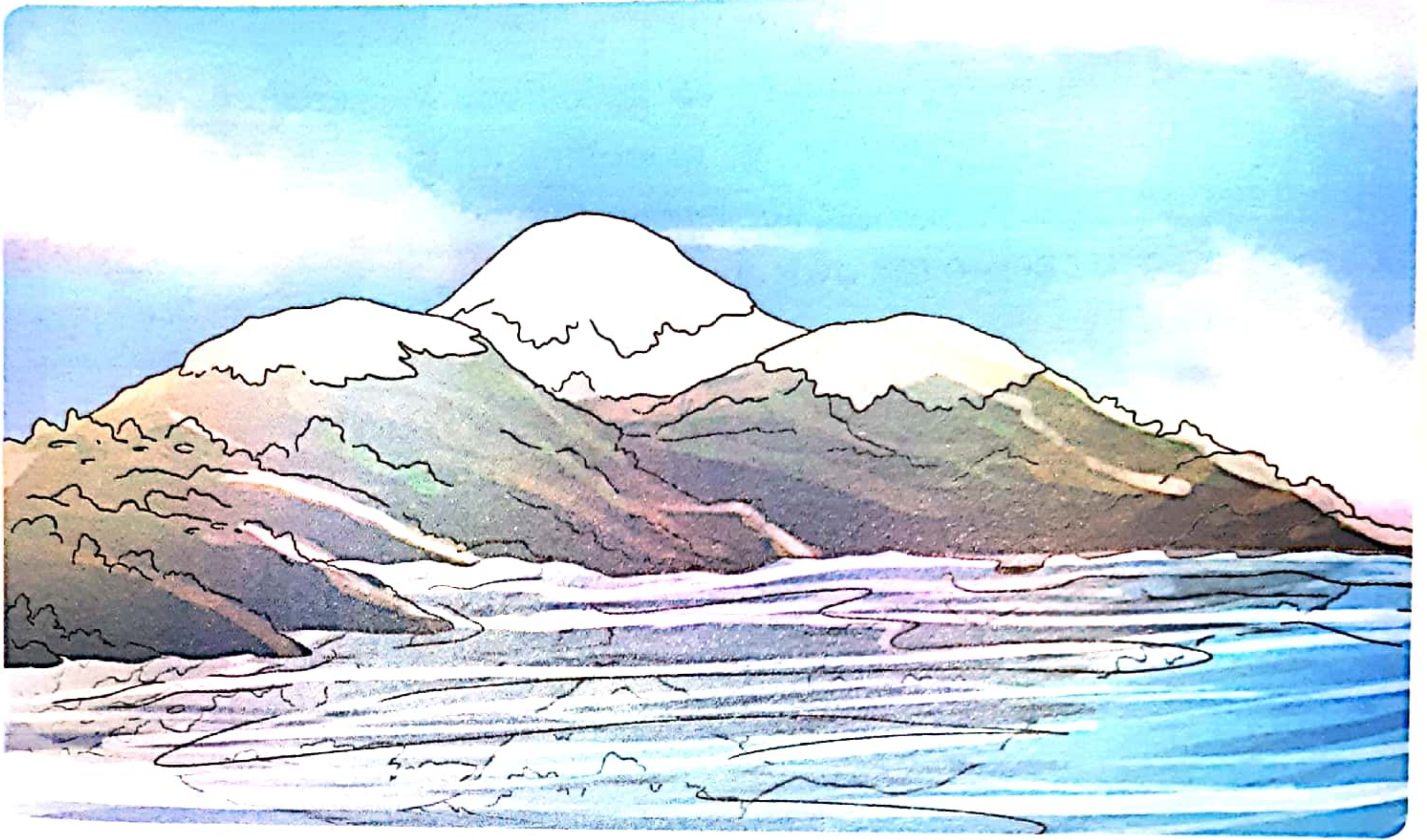
“I think you’ve two good men on the ship,” said Dr Livesy. “That’s Long John Silver and Captain Smollett.”

“I know Long John Silver is a good man,” said Mr Trelawney, “but I don’t think Captain Smollett is.” I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch⁽¹¹⁾. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn’t working, he looked after his parrot⁽¹²⁾. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh⁽¹³⁾.



One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel⁽¹⁴⁾ which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty⁽¹⁵⁾. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby⁽¹⁶⁾. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.



“On that journey, Flint was the captain,” he said.
“It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today.”

“You won’t be able to return to Bristol after this journey,” said another sailor called Dick. “What will happen to your inn?”

(14) برميل

(15) فارغ

(16) قريب / مجاور

(17) صبور

“I’ve sold it,” said Silver. “My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you’ll have lots of money, too.”

Another man joined them and said, “I’m tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?”

“You must be patient⁽¹⁷⁾,” said Silver. “Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack.”

“We shouldn’t wait that long,” replied another sailor.

“You’re like the others,” said Silver. “You want to do things quickly. That’s what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead⁽¹⁸⁾.”

(18) ميت

(19) قرصان

(20) عصابة

(21) أرض / يابسة

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate⁽¹⁹⁾, and the other crew were part of his gang⁽²⁰⁾.

“No, we wait,” continued Silver. “When the time is right, I’ll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?”

When I heard these words, I was very frightened. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out: “I can see land!⁽²¹⁾”

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My daughter has a that can sing and repeat what we say.
 a. puppy b. parrot c. kitten d. hen
2. What we say here is top It is not for publishing.
 a. secret b. public c. score d. tip
3. The fox that and kills the birds on our farm comes from the neighbouring desert area.
 a. feeds b. returns c. attacks d. protects
4. If you go on working hard, you will your goal.
 a. lose b. mistake c. fail d. reach
5. A: What is your next ? B: London. I'm going there next Friday.
 a. secret b. barrel c. destination d. mutiny
6. Don't be The lion is in its cage.
 a. frightened b. frightening c. tired d. tiring
7. The coach depends on his to find information about other teams.
 a. sailor b. helpers c. pilot d. cook
8. I asked Sama to the book she had borrowed from me.
 a. return b. take c. catch d. attack
9. It is not safe to go sailing in this area because there are
 a. rescuers b. parrots c. patriots d. pirates
10. One of the told his captain that he could see land in the distance.
 a. sails b. sellers c. sailors d. seals
11. One of the sailors led a against the captain, but they failed to take the ship.
 a. barrel b. parrot c. crutch d. mutiny

12. The police and arrested the terrorists.
a. lost b. attacked c. saved d. paid
13. Don't repeat what others say. You are a man, not a
a. parrot b. note c. vulture d. leader
14. This country produces two million of oil a day.
a. pipes b. ships c. barrels d. litres
15. This needs somebody to look after him.
a. destination b. patient c. gang d. parrot
16. When I broke my leg, I had to depend on a when I walked.
a. journey b. mutiny c. barrel d. crutch
17. Those are the who attacked and took our ship.
a. pirates b. parrots c. cooks d. servants
18. A of thieves have been arrested while robbing an empty villa.
a. barrel b. pirate c. gang d. sailor
19. Such a large ship can't enter this small
a. island b. harbour c. attack d. patient
20. The treasure is hidden in a place. No one knows where it is.
a. empty b. patient c. safe d. secret

General Exercises on Chapters

1,2&3

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The people tried to catch the thief, but he
a. caught b. escaped c. arrested d. managed
2. Be careful or you will fall off the ; it's very steep.
a. mountain b. hall c. well d. cliff
3. We much to our great teachers.
a. take b. lend c. owe d. borrow
4. Black Dog is ; he has lost his sight.
a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. crippled
5. Outside the building there are two men whose job is to and protect us.
a. guard b. attack c. prevent d. own
6. The thief had a long curved on his cheek, so we could recognize him.
a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
7. What a brave young man! He was the only student who to say the truth.
a. could b. dared c. refused d. disagreed
8. A/An is a group of people who work against the law.
a. gang b. crew c. staff d. team
9. Unfortunately, the burglar the house.
a. stole b. took c. owed d. robbed
10. The ship helped each other to control the situation well.
a. gang b. staff c. crew d. team
11. A is a bird with brightly coloured feathers that can learn to copy human speech.
a. chick b. duck c. parrot d. pirate

12. The police usually look for a to solve a crime.
a. clue b. key c. lock d. case
13. There are in this villa. They do all the housework.
a. managers b. gentlemen c. masters d. servants
14. The questioned the criminal to know the truth.
a. gang b. manager c. magistrate d. soldier
15. A : What is the of the Hispaniola ?
B : It's headed to the Treasure Island.
a. situation b. destination c. position d. condition
16. Flint and his men are They attack ships and take money and goods by force.
a. pirates b. drivers c. pilots d. divers
17. A is a large container made of wood or metal.
a. tin b. jar c. barrel d. cup
18. The thief my bag and ran away.
a. lent b. borrowed c. grabbed d. gave
19. The child seemed to be ill. He was thin and
a. fit b. strong c. pile d. pale
20. A is a weapon with a long pointed blade and a handle.
a. gun b. sword c. bomb d. pistol

Chapter 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The is the person who is in charge of **مسئول** a ship, or a plane.
a. hostess b. sailor c. driver d. captain
2. I don't have a lot of money on me; only a few in my pocket.
a. wealth b. coins c. jewellery d. gold
3. Strong is to as blind is to sighted.
a. power b. powerful c. weak d. terrible
4. My friend went on a journey in the forest. He was looking for
a. adventure b. safety c. sleep d. technology
5. Always keep away from
a. dangerous b. danger c. safety d. safe
6. Afraid and are antonyms.
a. terrified b. terrifying c. frightening d. frightened
7. He had a with which he could shoot the lion dead.
a. sword b. knife c. gun d. stick
8. I asked the secretary to me the report in person. **شخصياً**
a. hand b. owe c. fear d. dare
9. The escaping criminal in the fields, away from the police.
a. left b. fought c. hid d. guarded
10. A : " Who this villa? B: It is my uncle's.
a. owes b. owns c. guards d. grabs
11. These prove **ثبت** that Mr Ashraf has a villa, two blocks of flats and three modern cars.
a. pepper b. peppers c. paper d. papers
12. My uncle likes He is usually away in one place or another.
a. coins b. guns c. travel d. reading

Chapter 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My cousin works as a in a famous restaurant.
a. cooker b. cook c. cooking d. cooks
2. The on the map shows the place where the ship sank. غرقت
a. sail b. island c. cross d. crew
3. Catch is to free as is to alive.
a. dead b. death c. die d. deadly
4. A group of prisoners were able to from the police van.
a. lock b. catch c. arrest d. escape
5. I asked my mother to hot pepper in the salad.
a. include b. cook c. grow d. sail
6. Some students were playing football. The were sitting under the leafy trees.
a. students b. rest c. whole d. other
7. Keep the password Never tell anyone what it is.
a. popular b. public c. known d. secret
8. The clever captain the ship safely during the storm.
a. sank b. flew c. sailed d. drowned
9. The police are searching for the gang who the money of the bank.
a. robbed b. guarded c. saved d. returned
10. Google help you to know the directions.
a. store b. maps c. cloud d. mail

Chapter 3

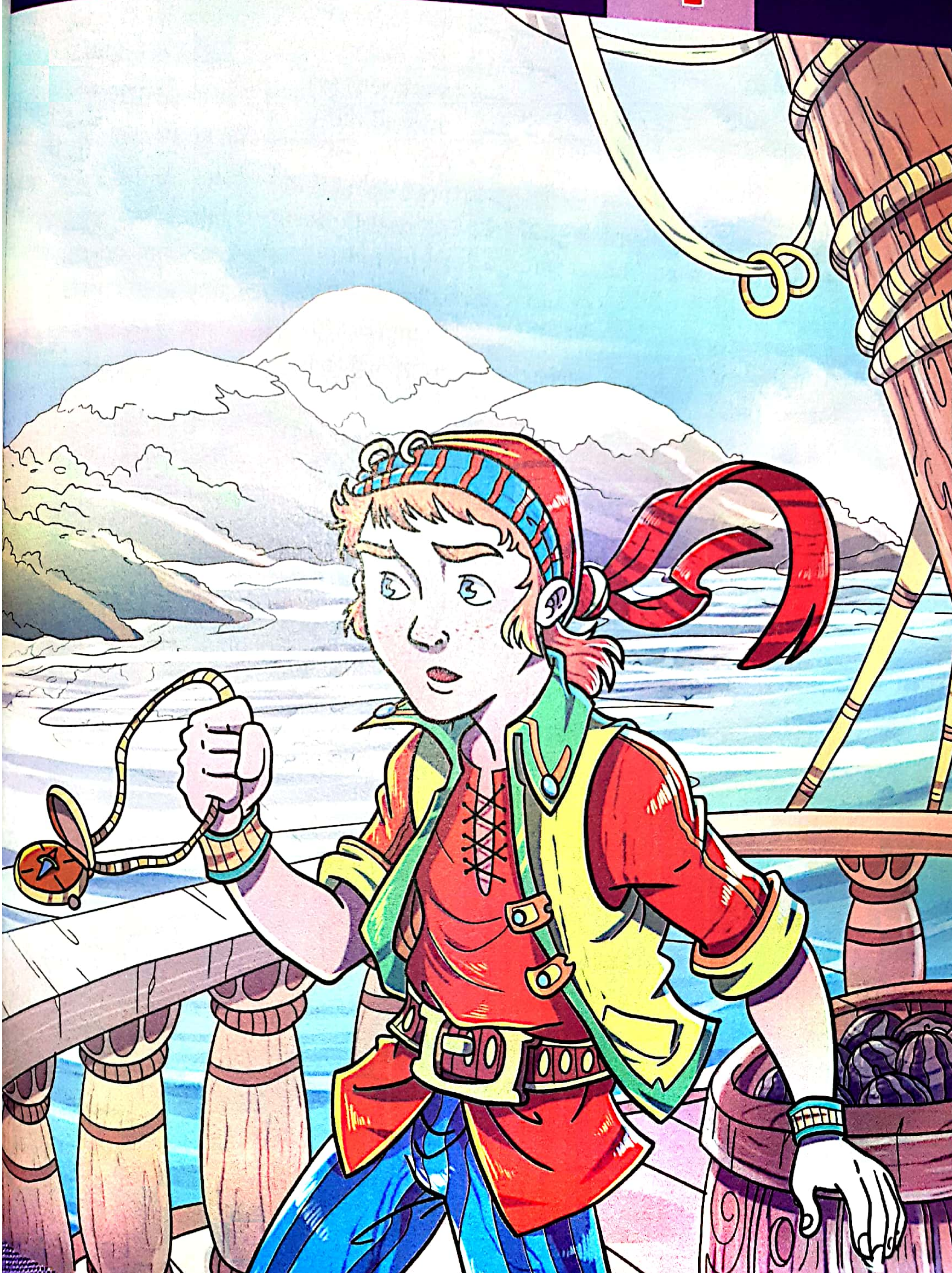
Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. One of the sailors led a against his captain.
a. rescue mission b. mutiny c. murder d. mirror
2. This oil field produces two million a day.
a. pirates b. destinations c. barrels d. parrots

3. I asked one of my secretaries to take a to the general manager.
 a. away b. rest c. meal d. note
4. After the accident that hurt his leg, Mr Nasser had to be on for three months.
 a. crutches b. prison c. charge d. crew
5. Nothing is left in the fridge. It is completely
 a. full b. filled c. empty d. stuffed
6. A learner has to be Learning takes its time.
 a. patience b. patient c. ill d. diseased
7. You have to for the drinks. They are not free.
 a. call b. drink c. take d. pay
8. Sama cried in pain when her brother shut the door on her
 a. finger b. note c. crutch d. harbour
9. He was the leader of the who robbed the supermarket.
 a. guard b. donors c. team d. gang
10. Don't worry about the baby. She will be with me.
 a. endanger b. save c. safe d. danger
11. There were three ships in the this morning.
 a. airport b. harbour c. flight d. destination
12. I have planned to go on a / an to Luxor and Aswan.
 a. mutiny b. barrel c. harbour d. journey
13. The police the woman from the gang.
 a. saved b. lost c. missed d. bought
14. He a leg in the accident.
 a. missed b. donated c. lost d. gave
15. These apples are of different; some are very big while others are tiny.
 a. tastes b. colours c. ages d. sizes

CHAPTER

4



Vocabulary

as usual	كالمعتاد	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - مُصاب
blow a whistle	يُطلق صافرة	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
branch (n)	فَرْع - غُصْن	low (adj)	مُنخفض
climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق	mark (ed) (v)	يُحدِّد - يُمَيِّز
climb out of	يتسلق خارجاً من	marked (adj)	مُحدَّد
close (to)	قريب - لصيق	mistake (n)	خطأ
coast (n)	ساحل	organise (d) (v)	يُنظِّم
count (ed) (v)	يَعِد - يُحْصِي	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي
disease (n)	مرض	rocky (adj)	صخري
excited (adj)	مُثار - سعيد	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - يصرخ
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل - يتشاجر	surprised (adj)	مُندهش
forever (adv)	للأبد	thought (n)	فكرة
hill (n)	تَلّ	trust(ed) (n - v)	يثق - الثقة
hold onto - held (v)	يتشبث بـ	whistle(d) (n - v)	صفارة - يُصَفِّر

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **branch** : a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk فرع شجرة
- ▶ **disease** : an illness which affects a person, animal or plant مرض
- ▶ **shore** : the land along the edge of a large area of water such as a sea, an ocean or a lake شاطئ
- ▶ **trust** : to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong يثق بـ
- ▶ **whistle** : a small object that produces a high whistling sound when you blow into it صفارة

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of⁽¹⁾ the ship. We could see two low hills⁽²⁾ and one big one. The island was now very close⁽³⁾.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

Check Vocabulary

- (1) على جانب
- (2) تلال منخفضة
- (3) قريب

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked⁽⁴⁾ on it. "Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled⁽⁵⁾ at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust⁽⁶⁾ anything that he said. I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news⁽⁷⁾."

Dr Livesy's expression⁽⁸⁾ did not change. He asked me to find his glasses downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me. "What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me. "Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

ملحوظ / لديه علامة (4)

يبتسم (5)

يثق بـ (6)

أخبار سيئة (7)

تعبير (الوجه) (8)

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected⁽⁹⁾. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately⁽¹⁰⁾. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the Hispaniola stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops⁽¹¹⁾ of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore⁽¹²⁾. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like⁽¹³⁾ bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases⁽¹⁴⁾," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual⁽¹⁵⁾.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax⁽¹⁶⁾, if they wanted to.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

- (9) توقع
- (10) في الحال
- (11) قمم صخرية
- (12) شاطئ (البحر)
- (13) رائحتها مثل
- (14) أمراض
- (15) كالمعتاد
- (16) يسترخى / يستريح

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise⁽¹⁷⁾ the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake⁽¹⁸⁾ ?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto the branch⁽¹⁹⁾ of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

(17) ينظم

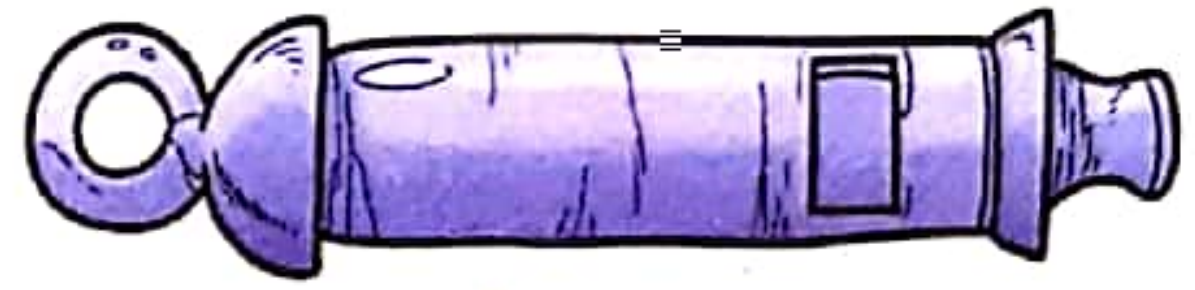
(18) خطأ

(19) فرع (شجرة)

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.



"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.

"What was that?" asked Tom.

Silver smiled and said "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back. He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife⁽²⁰⁾.

Silver now blew a whistle⁽²¹⁾ and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever⁽²²⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(20) سكين

(21) يصفر

(22) إلى الأبد

Skill Builder

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية
جزء يصرف مجاناً مع الكتاب



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A is a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk **الجذع** and that has leaves **أوراق** and fruit growing from it.
 a. leaf b. root c. branch d. seed
2. The is the area where the land meets the sea.
 a. shore b. coast c. wave d. harbour
3. The is the land along the edge **حافة** of a large area of water such as an ocean **مُحيط** or lake. **بحيرة**.
 a. shore b. coast c. wave d. harbour
4. A / An is an illness which affects **يؤثر علي** a person, animal, or plant.
 a. fight b. expression c. branch d. disease
5. A is a small object **شيء** that produces a high sound when you blow **ينفخ** into it.
 a. mark b. thought c. whistle d. mistake
6. To is to rest **يستريح** or do something that is enjoyable, especially after you have been working.
 a. mark b. relax c. exert d. labour
7. To is to believe that someone is honest **أمين** or will not do anything bad or wrong.
 a. blow b. doubt c. lie d. trust
8. The little child held the leg of a chair to help him stand up.
 a. of b. off c. onto d. into
9. The referee his whistle and ended the match.
 a. blew b. said c. fed d. bit
10. When the car hit the man, he gave a loud
 a. rhyme b. laugh c. smile d. shout

11. Our company plans to open a new in the city centre.
 a. coast b. shore c. branch d. hill
12. Seeing that he was very worried, I asked him to
 a. relax b. shout c. attack d. trust
13. Alexandria is on the south of the Mediterranean.
 a. branch b. coast c. wave d. island
14. It was a funny situation when the referee's was lost and he had to put his fingers in his mouth to end the match.
 a. hill b. expression c. blow d. whistle
15. Turtles lay their eggs and bury it on the
 a. sure b. shore c. mistake d. barrel
16. High blood pressure is a dangerous
 a. disease b. whistle c. fight d. gang
17. I my son. He won't make such a mistake.
 a. blow b. count c. trust d. fight
18. The place of the treasure is on the map.
 a. killed b. relaxed c. held on d. marked
19. The referee his whistle and stopped the match when one of the fans ran into field.
 a. killed b. blew c. trusted d. organised
20. From the on his face, it is clear that he is angry.
 a. expression b. disease c. thought d. shore

CHAPTER

5



Vocabulary

allow(ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	interested (adj)	مُتَمَنِّم
believe (d) (v)	يُصَدِّق - يُؤْمِن	kneel down - knelt (v)	يركع
bottom (n)	أسفل / سفح - قاع	leader (n)	قائد
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	on your own	بمفردك
crazy (adj)	مجنون	prefer (red) (v)	يُفَضِّل
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مُظْلِم	realise (d) (v)	يُدْرِك - يفهم
different (adj)	مُخْتَلِف	reply (ied) (v)	يرد - يجيب
directions (n)	اتجاهات	sail (ed) (n - v)	شراع المركب - يبحر
dry (adj)	جاف / خشن	skin (n)	الجلد
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يُفَسِّر	spade (n)	جاروف
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل	start (ed) (n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag (n)	علم - راية	voice (n)	صوت انسان
fresh (adj)	مُنْعَش	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

Words and their definitions

crazy	: unwell in your mind	مجنون
sail	: a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat	شراع
leader	: the person who controls other people	قائد
fight	: to hit, kick or fire guns at other people	يقاتل

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to⁽¹⁾ the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher⁽²⁾ here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous.

I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer⁽³⁾. I decided to walk towards the man.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قريب من
- (2) أكثر نقاءاً
- (3) يشعر أكثر أماناً

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise⁽⁴⁾, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down⁽⁵⁾ in front of me. "Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice⁽⁶⁾. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun⁽⁷⁾. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails⁽⁸⁾.

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of⁽⁹⁾ eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said. "It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

(4) دهشة

(5) يركع

(6) صوت جاف

(7) محترق من الشمس

(8) أشرعة السفن

(9) يحلم بـ

(10) يصدق / يعتقد



I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him⁽¹⁰⁾.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him. "Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader⁽¹¹⁾," I explained.

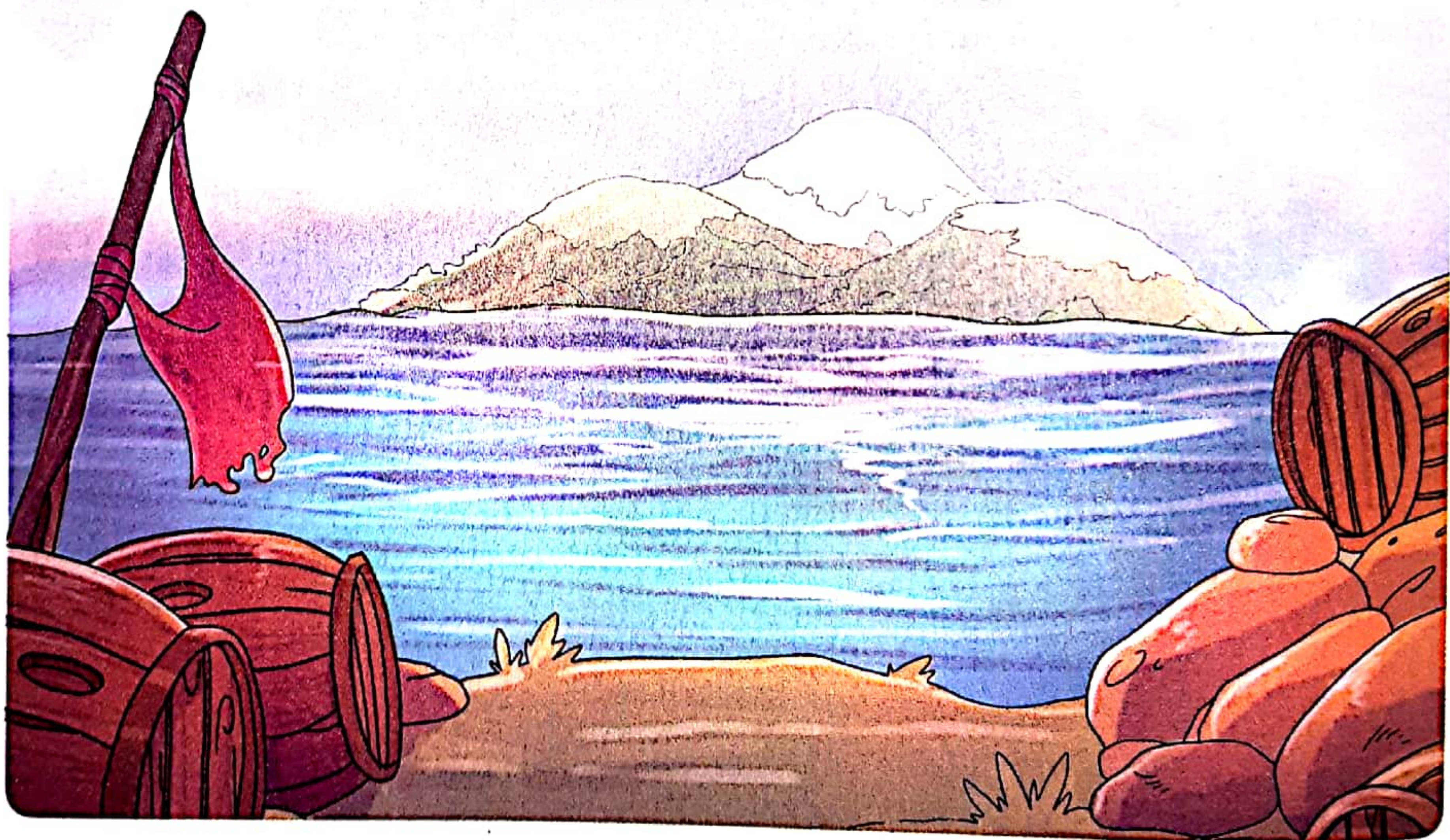
"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow⁽¹²⁾ me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.

قائد (11)

يسمع (12)



"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

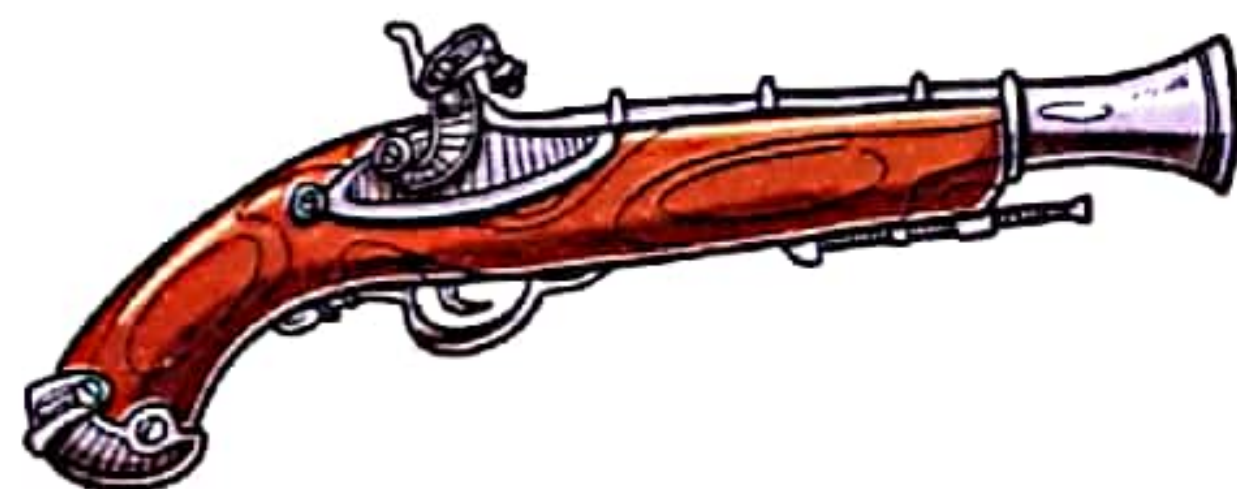
"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for

about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own⁽¹³⁾. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a spade⁽¹⁴⁾. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him. "I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!" Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!" I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions, and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.



بمفرده (13)

جاروف (14)

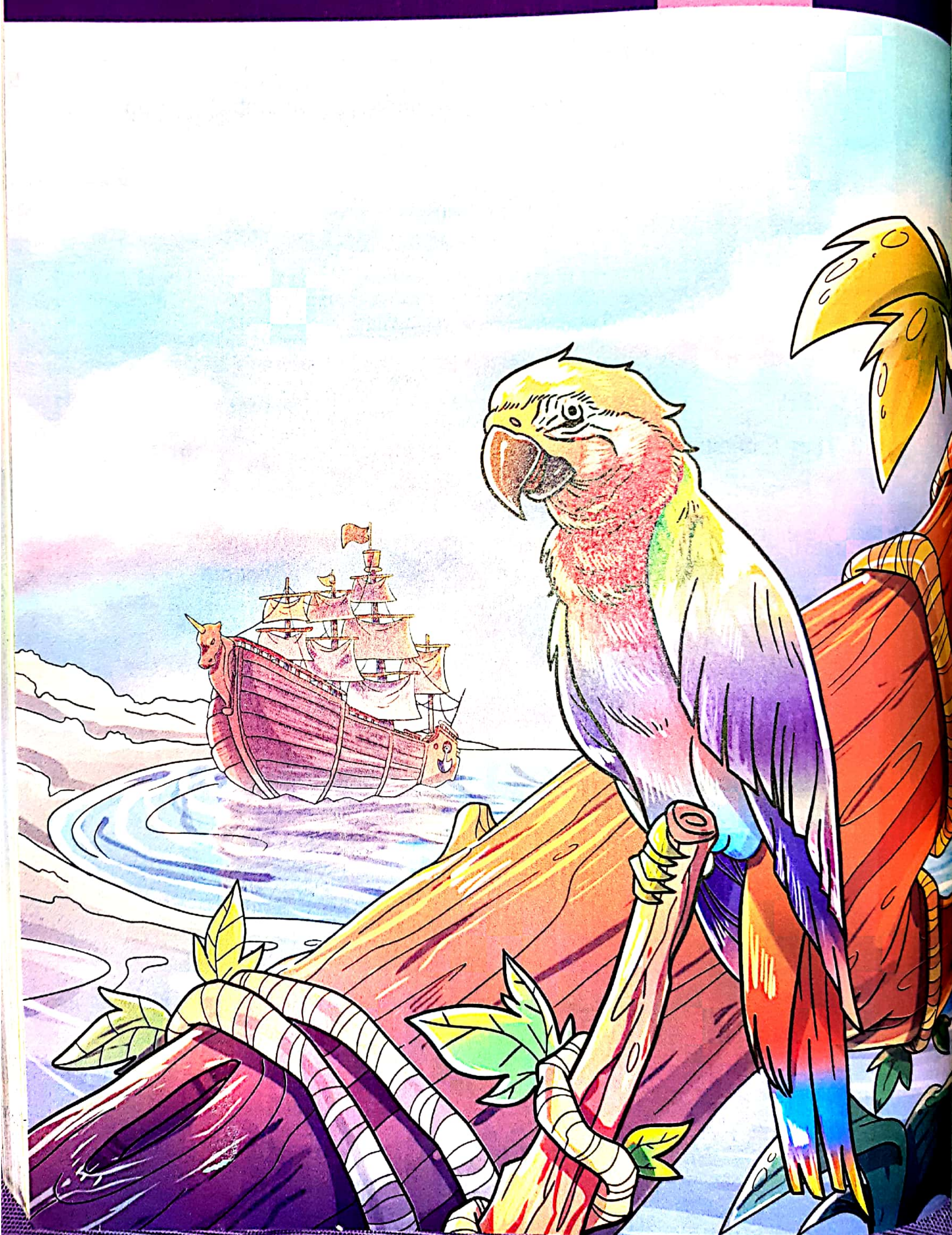
Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A / An is the person who controls other people.
a. servant b. pirate c. leader d. inn owner
2. To is to hit, kick or fire guns at other people.
a. fight b. help c. assist d. support
3. means unwell in one's mind.
a. Helpful b. Kind c. Sane d. Crazy
4. A / An is a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat.
a. sail b. row c. engine d. sailor
5. A is a tool for digging that has a long handle and a broad metal blade that you push into the ground.
a. gun b. spade c. note d. map
6. Your stops you thinking clearly and taking the right decision.
a. education b. health c. worry d. experience
7. When it is, it is difficult or impossible to see.
a. dark b. right c. light d. sunny
8. I that the man was a criminal when I saw the gun he was carrying.
a. fought b. sailed c. worried d. realised
9. Raise ارفع your so that we can hear you.
a. head b. sound c. voice d. noise
10. I felt relaxed after the walk in the air of the countryside.
a. fresh b. poisoned c. bad d. hot
11. When the police officer fired his gun, the terrorist down to his knees and gave up.
a. led b. believed c. replied d. knelt

12. He used a to dig a hole to plant a tree.
 a. spade b. whistle c. spoon d. fork
13. A good must be wise, strong, flexible and decisive حازم .
 a. servant b. cook c. leader d. gardener
14. During the storm, they had to lower يخفض the to protect the ship.
 a. rows b. sails c. shores d. coasts
15. It is a risk to a man who has a gun unless you are prepared.
 a. fight b. worry c. sail d. start
16. You are ! Do you want to cross the Atlantic on this small boat ?
 a. right b. wise c. interested d. crazy
17. My little son gets frightened when it is
 a. dark b. light c. dry d. funny
18. They found the lost ship at the of the sea.
 a. direction b. expression c. bottom d. spade
19. We enjoy the air of the sea when we go to the North Coast.
 a. dry b. fresh c. dark d. bottom
20. My mother's bad health me.
 a. fights b. starts c. worries d. sails

CHAPTER

6



Vocabulary

advantage (n)	مِيزة	fort (n)	حصن
adventure (n)	مغامرة	get to - got (v)	يصل إلي
alive (adj)	علي قيد الحياة	give ... an advantage	يمنح مِيزة
arrival (n)	وصول	hit - hit (v)	يصيب - يضرب
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	pick(ed) up (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
blow - blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	prevent(ed) (v)	يمنع
cannon (n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact (ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل بـ	race (n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink - sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغطس
diary (n)	مفكرة يوميات	supplies (n)	مؤن
entry (n)	مدخل مقدمة	well-defended (adj)	حصين - منيع
fire (ed) a gun	يطلق النار من بندقية	wind (n)	الرياح
fire (ed) at (ed) (v)	يطلق النار علي		

Words and their definitions

cannon	: a large gun with wheels	مدفع
contact	: communicate with someone or something	يتواصل مع
defend	: protect someone or something from being attacked	يدافع عن
supplies	: food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time	مؤن / تجهيزات

Dr Livesy :

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried about him.

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort⁽¹⁾. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended⁽²⁾. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the Hispaniola. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan⁽³⁾. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact⁽⁴⁾ Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the Hispaniola.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage⁽⁵⁾. On the Hispaniola, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons⁽⁶⁾ into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies⁽⁷⁾ now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent⁽⁸⁾ the boat from sinking⁽⁹⁾. The wind blew⁽¹⁰⁾ from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.

"We must keep in this direction⁽¹¹⁾," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon⁽¹²⁾!" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) حصن / قلعة
- (2) محصنة جيداً
- (3) خطة
- (4) يتصل بـ
- (5) ميزة
- (6) أسلحة
- (7) إمدادات / مؤن / ذخائر
- (8) يمنع
- (9) غرق
- (10) تهب الرياح
- (11) يستمر في هذا الاتجاه
- (12) مدفع

Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at⁽¹³⁾ the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

“Go as fast as you can,” said Captain Smollet. “If we don’t get to the beach, we’re finished.”

“They are only using one boat” I said. “The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us.” “It’s a long way for them to run,” said Captain Smollett. “It’s a race⁽¹⁴⁾ to get there first.”

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet⁽¹⁵⁾ of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including⁽¹⁶⁾ some of our guns.

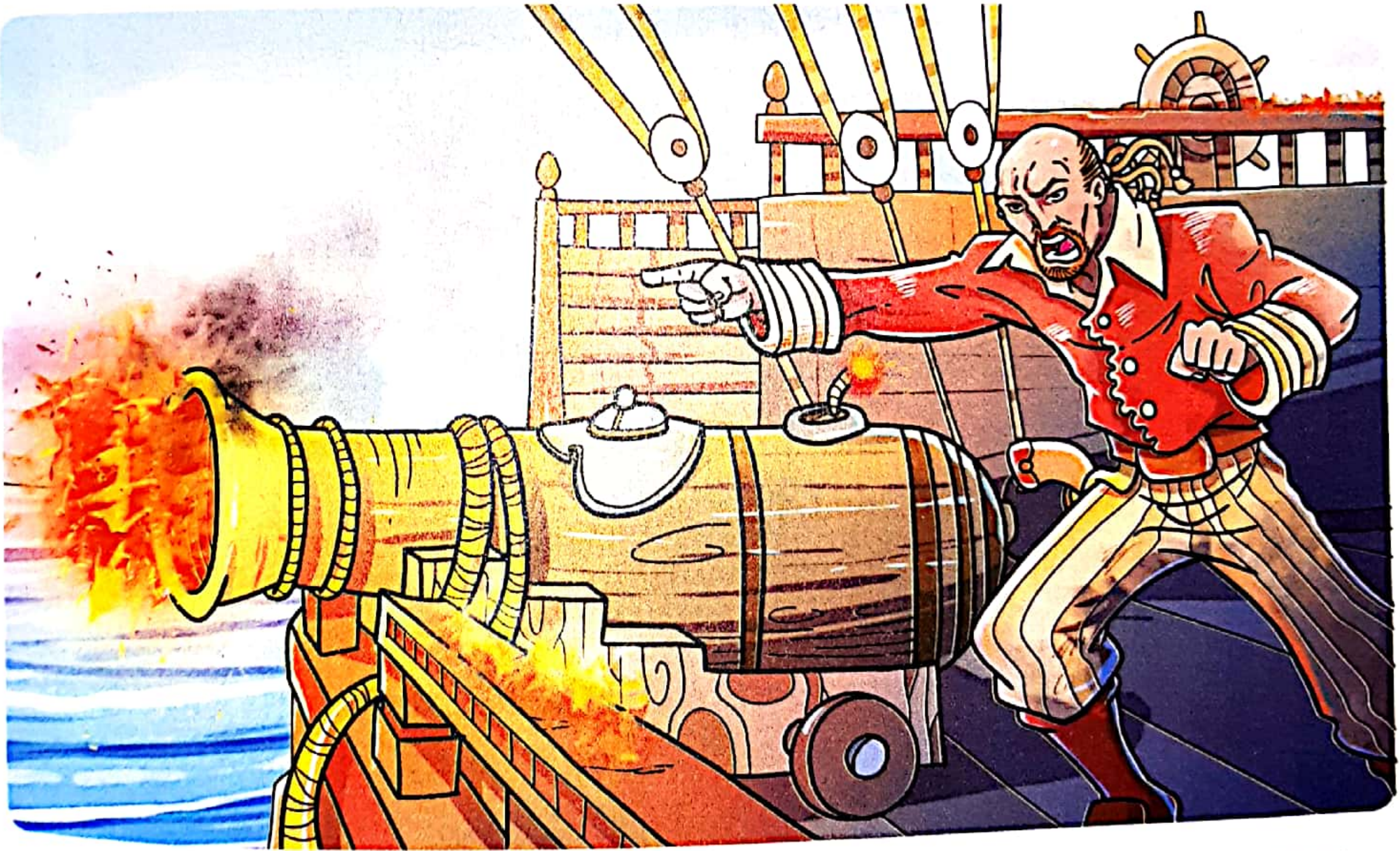
أطلق النار على (13)

سباق / عدو (14)

أقدام (مسافة) (15)

متضمنًا / مشتملاً (16)

يصل إلى (17)



There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to⁽¹⁷⁾ the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

Chapter 6

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire⁽¹⁸⁾, and poor Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up⁽¹⁹⁾ and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant⁽²⁰⁾ to him.

Captain Smollett put up a flag⁽²¹⁾ inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"

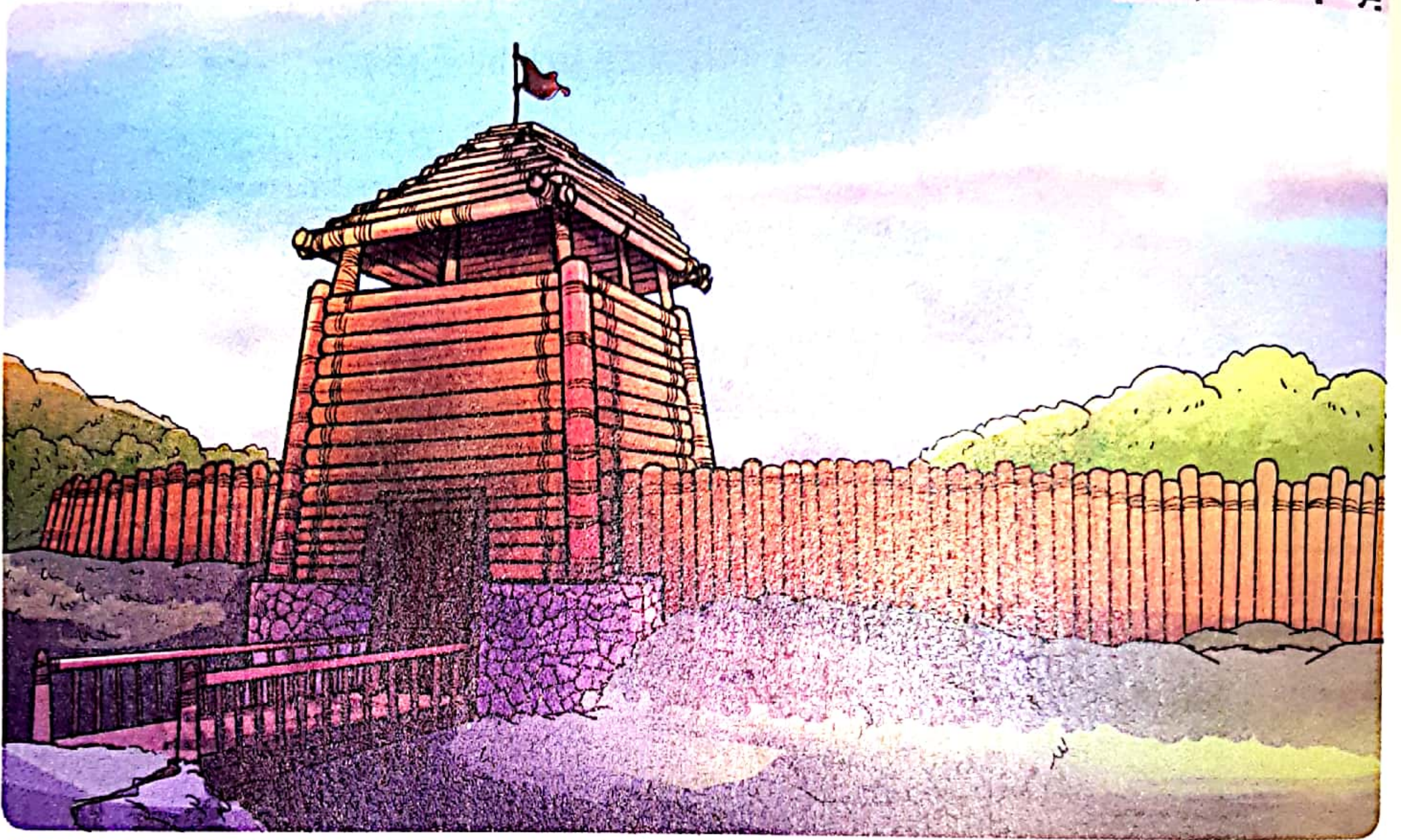
(18) إطلاق النار

(19) النفط

(20) خادم

(21) يرفع (العلم)

(22) ينزله / يخفض (العلم)



"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit. "They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down⁽²²⁾."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To is to protect someone or something from being attacked.
 a. fire b. pick c. sink d. defend
2. are food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time.
 a. Supplies b. Communications
 c. Diaries d. Entries
3. To is to communicate with someone or something.
 a. fire b. burn c. contact d. supply
4. A is a large gun with wheels.
 a. gun b. cannon c. sword d. fort
5. A is a strong building or group of buildings used by soldiers or an army for defending an important place.
 a. diary b. gun c. contact d. fort
6. A / An is an exciting experience in which dangerous or unusual things happen.
 a. adventure b. advantage c. contact d. connect
7. A / An is a good or useful feature سمة that someone or something has.
 a. adventure b. advantage c. contact d. connect
8. To means to arrive somewhere.
 a. sail b. arrive to c. get to d. leave for
9. A is a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day.
 a. dairy b. diary c. fort d. cannon
10. To means to shoot bullets قنابل or bombs. قنابل
 a. fire b. shout c. point d. defend

11. We all must the interests of our country.
 a. attack b. defend c. hit d. blow
12. The ship was low on , especially fresh water.
 a. sailors b. crew c. supplies d. sails
13. The airport lost with the plane which disappeared from the radar.
 a. contact b. arrival c. race d. diary
14. It is not easy to break into this strong
 a. entry b. dairy c. diary d. fort
15. The powerful engine gives this car an extra
 a. supplies b. adventure c. advantage d. disadvantage
16. It takes about two hours to to the port.
 a. reach b. get c. arrive d. b & c
17. He likes That's why he is interested in travelling to remote areas.
 a. winds b. races c. fire d. adventure
18. The sailors used the ship's to frighten the pirates.
 a. cannon b. sails c. rows d. cook
19. The soldiers their guns at the gang of thieves.
 a. sank b. hit c. fired d. attacked
20. You can't me from telling the truth. It is my right to defend myself.
 a. prevent b. pick c. put d. get

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. People who suffer from starvation usually need food
a. supplies b. surveys c. reviews d. analysis
2. Our brave army soldiers our country against enemies.
a. offend b. defend c. attack d. fight
3. When did you to your office ?
a. stay b. reach c. arrive d. get
4. I usually my friends by using my mobile phone.
a. communicate b. connect c. contact d. control
5. A is a heavy metal weapon.
a. knife b. cannon c. pistol d. gun
6. What are the and disadvantages of the internet ?
a. advantages b. points c. sides d. demerits
7. My mother down to take the little girl into her arms.
a. broke b. fell c. knelt d. raised
8. I used to depend on myself and do the homework my own.
a. on b. of c. from d. with
9. The young man behaved foolishly, so people believed he was
a. wise b. polite c. active d. crazy
10. Captain Smollett had a to save the ship from Silver and his men.
a. plane b. plan c. plain d. pain
11. Archaeologists try to look for the of the pharaohs.
a. pleasures b. pressures c. treasures d. sessions

12. The referee blew his to end the match.
a. whistle b. fire c. gun d. voice
13. If you have a, you should see your doctor.
a. habit b. disease c. review d. custom
14. I saw a lot of boats near the sea
a. shore b. bank c. valley d. canal
15. We our friend Ali because he never tells lies.
a. disagree b. agree c. trust d. distrust
16. In the morning, I usually see a lot of birds on the of trees.
a. roots b. branches c. seeds d. trunks
17. Children played on the and made sandcastles.
a. beach b. bank c. shore d. mud
18. Can I the poetry competition, please ?
a. take place b. take part c. go d. join
19. At work, the team has a great who tells each one what to do.
a. fool b. captain c. leader d. fellow
20. The worker used a to make a hole on the ground.
a. saw b. spade c. knife d. hammer

Chapter 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rodayna came first usual in maths lesson.
a. like b. as c. if d. so
2. The lion a deer and carried it to its cubs. أشبال
a. ate b. missed c. killed d. whistled
3. The was too weak to carry all the fruit on it.
a. branch b. leaf c. root d. seed
4. I asked the students to the High Dam on the map of Egypt.
a. organise b. blow c. build d. mark
5. I had to apologise because I made a big
a. achievement b. cake c. mistake d. success
6. I walked for half an hour along the of the sea.
a. coast b. bank c. waves d. water
7. The officer his soldiers before the attack on the enemy sites.
a. hurt b. shouted c. killed d. organised
8. He had a serious that made him unable to move.
a. shore b. disease c. whistle d. strength
9. It is dangerous to climb those steep heights. مرتفعات
a. safe b. loud c. low d. rocky
10. He is a naughty student who always against his schoolmates.
a. warns b. helps c. fights d. supports

11. I like this place and I want to live here
 a. forever b. all c. ago d. since
12. I was to see him in the office, I thought he was abroad.
 a. marked b. surprised c. organised d. exciting
13. I liked the of spending the mid-year holiday in Aswan.
 a. shout b. rock c. fight d. thought
14. Children become very when they buy new toys or clothes.
 a. shocked b. angry c. excited d. exciting

Chapter 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Tell Ahmed that we are going on a trip. I know he might be
 a. worried b. worrying c. interested d. interesting
2. Top is to as rich is to poor.
 a. low b. height c. high d. bottom
3. The Egyptian includes three colours in addition to the yellow eagle.
 a. flag b. army c. police d. leader
4. Use this to dig a hole for the tree. We will plant over there.
 a. gun b. spade c. sail d. ship
5. In the past, experienced traveller used to depend on stars for
 a. directions b. food c. light d. flight
6. I apologised when I that I had made a big mistake.
 a. allowed b. directed c. preferred d. realised
7. Young girls prefer light colours to ones.
 a. heavy b. thick c. dark d. close
8. I can't return home late at night. My father won't this.
 a. allow b. refuse c. kneel d. realise

9. He down and carried the little baby in his arms.
 a. broke b. turned c. knelt d. sailed
10. Don't Sir. Everything is OK.
 a. allow b. worry' c. prefer d. believe

Chapter 6

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Being fit is a / an
 a. adventure b. advantage c. disadvantage d. contact
2. The strong protected us from the enemy's attacks.
 a. flag b. diary c. fort d. advantage
3. The battery of my mobile was empty and I lost with my friends.
 a. contact b. defence c. fort d. attack
4. We need a lot of for our long journey across the desert.
 a. flags b. attack c. rhymes d. supplies
5. It is your right to yourself and your family.
 a. shoot b. fire c. defend d. sink
6. I up the pen that I dropped on the floor.
 a. picked b. allowed c. put d. fired
7. The policemen were not allowed to their guns.
 a. buy b. fix c. fire d. supply
8. We all are waiting for the of my father from his long business trip.
 a. arrival b. picking c. putting d. hitting
9. You are lucky that their shoots did not you.
 a. feed b. defend c. fire d. hit
10. Strong is to weak as is to dead.
 a. fired b. alive c. killed d. hurt

ANSWERS OF MAIN BOOK

UNIT 1

Vocabulary

Mini test 1

(Page 17)

Collocations :

1. a 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. b
6. b 7. d 8. c 9. a

Mini test 2

(Page 18)

Synonyms & Antonyms :

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. d 5. c
6. a

Mini test 3

(Page 20)

Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions :

1. a 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b
6. a 7. d 8. c 9. a 10. c

Mini test 4

(Page 22)

Clear the Confusion :

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 40)

1. b 2. d 3. d 4. c 5. a
6. c 7. b 8. d 9. a

Structure

Mini test 1

(Page 42)

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. b
6. d 7. c 8. a 9. d 10. a

Mini test 2

(Page 43)

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. d 5. b

Mini test 3

(Page 45)

1. b 2. d 3. c

إجابات كتاب الشرح

Mini test 4

(Page 46)

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. d

Mini test 5

(Page 48)

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b
6. a 7. b 8. d 9. a

Advanced Exercise On Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 55)

1. b 2. c 3. c 4. a 5. b
6. a 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. b

Gap filling :

(Page 56)

1. a. except b. Before
c. it d. did
2. a. there b. it
c. running d. him

Grammatical Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 61)

1. c 2. a 3. c 4. a 5. d
6. a 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. d
11. a 12. b 13. c 14. b 15. d
16. d 17. a 18. d 19. c 20. d
21. c 22. d 23. d 24. c 25. a
26. a

2. Gap filling :

(Page 62)

1. a. for b. to
c. with d. including
2. a. calling/call b. so
c. taking d. that

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 65)

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. d
6. c 7. a 8. b 9. c 10. d

UNIT 2

Vocabulary

Mini test 1

(Page 74)

Collocations :

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. d
6. b 7. a 8. c 9. c

Mini test 2

(Page 75)

Synonyms & Antonyms :

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. a

Mini test 3

(Page 76)

Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions :

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b
6. b 7. a 8. c 9. d 10. b
11. c

Mini test 4

(Page 78)

Clear the Confusion :

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. d
6. b 7. a

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 95)

1. b 2. d 3. d 4. c 5. a
6. d 7. b 8. c 9. b 10. a

Structure

Mini test 1

(Page 97)

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b
6. c 7. d 8. a 9. a 10. c
11. d 12. b 13. d

Mini test 2

(Page 99)

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d

Mini test 3

(Page 100)

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. a 5. b
6. d 7. c 8. d

Mini test 4

(Page 101)

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. c
6. b

Advanced Exercise On Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 107)

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. d
6. c 7. d 8. a 9. c 10. d

Gap filling :

- a. does b. does
c. enjoy d. his

Grammatical Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 112)

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. d
6. a 7. b 8. d 9. a 10. d
11. c 12. b 13. d 14. a 15. c
16. d 17. b 18. c 19. a 20. b
21. b 22. b 23. d 24. c 25. a

2. Gap filling :

(Page 113)

- a. Since / As / Because
b. was
c. had d. own

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 117)

1. a 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. b
6. d 7. c 8. a 9. b 10. c

UNIT 3

Vocabulary

Mini test 1

(Page 125)

Collocations :

1. a 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. c
6. a 7. c 8. d 9. a 10. b
11. d 12. a 13. a

⊙ Mini test 2

(Page 126)

Synonyms & Antonyms :

1. c 2. c 3. a 4. a 5. d

⊙ Mini test 3

(Page 128)

Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions :

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. a
6. b 7. c 8. d 9. d 10. c

⊙ Mini test 4

(Page 130)

Clear the Confusion :

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. d
6. b 7. d

⊙ Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 145)

1. d 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. b
6. d 7. b 8. a 9. d 10. c

Structure

⊙ Mini test 1

(Page 147)

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. b 5. d
6. c

⊙ Mini test 2

(Page 148)

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. d
6. d 7. a

⊙ Mini test 3

(Page 150)

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b
6. c 7. a

⊙ Mini test 4

(Page 153)

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. c
6. b 7. a 8. d

⊙ Advanced Exercise On Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 158)

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. c
6. c 7. d 8. c 9. a 10. b

⊙ Gap filling :

(Page 159)

- a. in b. far
c. to d. from

Grammatical Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 163)

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. c
6. d 7. d 8. b 9. a 10. b
11. c 12. c 13. b 14. b 15. d
16. c 17. a 18. a 19. d 20. b

2. Gap filling :

(Page 164)

- a. helped / made
b. during
c. The
d. had / made / let

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 167)

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. b 5. a
6. d 7. d 8. c 9. b 10. a

UNIT 4

Vocabulary

⊙ Mini test 1

(Page 184)

Collocations :

1. d 2. b 3. d 4. b 5. c
6. d 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. c

⊙ Mini test 2

(Page 185)

Synonyms & Antonyms :

1. c 2. d 3. d 4. a 5. d
6. c

⊙ Mini test 3

(Page 187)

Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions :

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. d
6. c 7. b 8. a 9. b 10. c

⊙ Mini test 4

(Page 189)

Clear the Confusion :

1. a 2. d 3. a 4. c

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 200)

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. d | 4. b | 5. c |
| 6. b | 7. d | 8. c | 9. a | 10. d |

Structure

Advanced Exercise On Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 223)

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. d | 4. b | 5. a |
| 6. b | 7. a | 8. a | 9. a | 10. b |

Gap filling :

(Page 224)

- | | |
|---------|------------------|
| a. many | b. us / them |
| c. much | d. some / others |

Grammatical Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 227)

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. a | 4. d | 5. c |
| 6. a | 7. d | 8. b | 9. d | 10. c |
| 11. b | 12. b | 13. a | 14. d | 15. c |
| 16. b | 17. a | 18. c | 19. b | |

2. Gap filling :

(Page 229)

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| a. by | b. other |
| c. year | d. on |

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Pages 232)

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. c | 4. b | 5. d |
| 6. a | 7. a | 8. d | 9. b | 10. c |

UNIT 5

Vocabulary

Mini test 1

(Page 240)

Collocations :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. a | 4. a | 5. b |
| 6. c | 7. d | 8. b | | |

Mini test 2

(Page 241)

Synonyms & Antonyms :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. a | 4. b | 5. c |
| 6. d | | | | |

Mini test 3

(Page 243)

Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. b | 4. a | 5. d |
| 6. c | 7. a | 8. b | 9. c | 10. d |

Mini test 4

(Page 245)

Clear the Confusion :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. b | 4. d |
|------|------|------|------|

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 259)

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. d | 4. c | 5. b |
| 6. d | 7. a | 8. c | 9. c | 10. b |

Structure

Mini test 1

(Page 260)

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. b |
|------|------|------|

Mini test 2

(Page 263)

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. b |
|------|------|------|

Mini test 3

(Page 265)

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. c |
|------|------|------|

Advanced Exercise On Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Page 275)

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. b | 4. c | 5. b |
| 6. d | 7. a | 8. c | | |

Gap filling :

(Page 276)

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| a. being | b. won't |
| c. in | d. Moreover |

Grammatical Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
(Page 277)

1. d 2. a 3. a 4. c 5. a
6. d 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. a
11. c 12. b

2. Gap filling :
(Page 278)
a. sending b. on
c. are d. yet / but

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
(Page 280)

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. d
6. d 7. b 8. c 9. a 10. c

UNIT 6

Vocabulary

⊙ Mini test 1
(Page 288)

Collocations :

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. d
6. c 7. b 8. d 9. a

⊙ Mini test 2
(Page 289)

Synonyms & Antonyms :

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. a

⊙ Mini test 3
(Page 291)

Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions :

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. c
6. a 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. d

⊙ Mini test 4
(Page 292)

Clear the Confusion :

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a

⊙ Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- (Page 305)
1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. d
6. b 7. b 8. b 9. d 10. d

Structure

⊙ Mini test 1
(Page 307)
1. b 2. d 3. c

⊙ Mini test 2
(Page 308)
1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b

⊙ Mini test 3
(Page 310)
1. d 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. b
6. c

⊙ Advanced Exercise On Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
(Page 317)

1. a 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. d
6. b 7. d 8. a 9. b 10. a

⊙ Gap filling :
(Page 318)
a. meeting b. being
c. their d. getting

Grammatical Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
(Page 319)

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. a
6. c 7. b 8. d 9. d 10. c
11. a 12. b

2. Gap filling :
(Page 320)

- a. why b. it
c. like d. because

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
(Page 325)

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. a 5. d
6. b 7. c 8. d 9. a 10. b

المهارات Skills



Contents :

1. Reading Skill
2. Writing Skill
3. Translation

١. مهارة القراءة

٢. مهارة الكتابة

٣. الترجمة

1

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

How to answer a comprehension :

* كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :

قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (تبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :

لا بد أن تقيس أسئلة قطعة الفهم المهارات التالية :

1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Topic الموضوع

- The topic / main idea of the passage is

= The text is mainly about

- موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هي

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟

- Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

- أي من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

Source المصدر

- This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from

- هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من

Title العنوان

- Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

- أي مما يلي يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟

Reference

- The underlined word / pronoun refers to

- الكلمة / الضمير الذي تحته خط يشير إلى

2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Synonym المرادف / المعنى

- In line, the word is closest in meaning to

- فى سطر رقم ، كلمة أقرب ما يكون فى المعنى لـ

- The underlined word gives the meaning of

- الكلمة التى تحتها خط تعطى معنى

- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to ?

- أى مما يلى مرادف فى المعنى لـ

- The word in the passage gives the synonym of

- كلمة فى النص تعطى مرادف

Antonym التضاد / العكس

- In the paragraph, the word is the antonym of

- فى الفقرة رقم ، كلمة مضاد لـ

- The word in the passage gives the opposite of

- كلمة فى النص تعطى عكس

- Which of the following gives the antonym of ?

- أى مما يلى مضاد فى المعنى لـ

- The word has two meanings in the passage. Explain.

- كلمة لها معنيين فى النص. وضح.

3

Understanding details and extracting information

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Yes / No questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد

Wh-questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

- أدوات وتعبيرات استفهامية هامة :

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	لكم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أي مدى
for whom	لأجل من	to whom	إلى من
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما لون
how far	كم بعد / لأي مدى	what size	ما حجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما وقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	أين
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	إلى أين
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أي
how often	كم مرة	who	من (فاعل أو مفعول عاقل)
how old	كم عمر	whom	من (مفعول عاقل)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لمن / ملك من
in / at which	في أي	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع من

ونماذج أخرى مثل :

True / Correct صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا
- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about ?
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ صحيحاً فيما يخص ؟

False / incorrect خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي خطأ ما عدا
- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about ?
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ غير صحيح فيما يخص ؟

4

Critical Thinking Skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي المرتبطة بقطع الفهم :

- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأي / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لا بد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدي كما يلي :
١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال. ٢. منطقية أو عقلانية. ٣. صحيحة من الناحية اللغوية.

- نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدي :

١ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الرأي الشخصي للطالب بخصوص الكاتب أو الأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :

- Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person?
What showed this to you?
- هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير في السن؟ ما الذي أوحى إليك بذلك؟
- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?
- في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

٢ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على قياس القدرة علي التعبير عن اتفاق أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب :

- Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced /raised? Why / Why not?
- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب؟ لم / لم لا؟
- Does the writer's idea make sense to you? Why / Why not?
- هل فكرة الكاتب مفهومة لديك؟ لم / لم لا؟

٣ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :

- What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.
- ما رأيك فيما قاله الكاتب؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.
- How would you put into your own words?
- كيف يمكنك صياغة بأسلوبك؟
- What do you think would be an example of ?
- ماذا تعتقد أنه مثلاً لـ ؟
- = Give an example of = Illustrate
- اذكر مثلاً لـ / وضح

٤ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على أن يفترض الطالب أنه في موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :

- If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).
- لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستتبني نفس الرأي؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.
- What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why.
- ما الذي كنت (ستفعله) لو أنك في مكان الكاتب؟ وضح السبب.
- If hadn't, what do you think would have happened?
- لو لم يكن ، ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث ؟

٥ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تقييم عرض الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا :

- Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail.

- هل نجح الكاتب في توضيح أفكاره؟ وضع وجهة نظرك بالتفصيل.

- Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas?

- هل أسلوب الكاتب مناسب للموضوع؟ كيف طوّر أفكاره؟

٦ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تخيل ردود أفعال فئات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

- How do you think poor people / patients would view these? Illustrate.

- في رأيك، كيف سيكون رأى الفقراء / المرضى تجاه ذلك؟ وضع.

- How would people who differ in age or gender react to?

- كيف سيكون رد فعل الناس الذين يختلفون في العمر أو الجنس تجاه؟

٧ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على التعبير عن المغزى أو الدروس المستفادة أو القيم الموجودة بالنص :

- How can you make use of (benefit from)?

- كيف يمكنك أن تستفيد من؟

- How could be put into practice?

- كيف يمكن تطبيق؟

- What is the moral of the story?

- ما المغزى الأخلاقي للقصة؟

Vocabulary used in Reading comprehension questions :

مفردات شائعة الاستخدام فى الأسئلة المرتبطة بقطع الفهم

- لابد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدى إلى
according to	طبقاً لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	يوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	يدعم بالدليل	moral	مغزى أخلاقى
based on	قائم على	moralities	قيم أخلاقية
be against	يعارض	opinion	رأى
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بخلاف / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
claim	يدعى / يزعم	passage	قطعة القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصنّف	point of view	رأى / وجهة نظر
comment	يعلق / تعليق	practical	عملى

core	جوهر / لب	predict	يتنبأ
demerits = disadvantages	عيوب	principle	مبدأ
discuss	يناقش	pros and cons	مزايا و عيوب
effect	أثر / تأثير	quality	سمة / ميزة
equal	مساوي	rather than	بدلاً من
equivalent	مرادف	reject	يعارض / يرفض
essay	مقال	result in	يؤدي إلى
essence	جوهر / لب	short for	اختصار لـ
example	مثال	simplify	يُبسِّط
explain	يشرح / يفسر	state	يذكر
express	يعبر عن	summarise	يُلخِّص
extra	إضافي / آخر	support	يدعم
impact	انطباع / أثر	synonym	مرادف
impression	انطباع / تأثير	underlined	تحت خط
introduce	يطرح / يقدم	value	قيمة
		writer	كاتب

Read and learn

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- A** All the different plants and animals in a natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other and with their non-living surrounding.
- An example of a natural community is woodland, and woodland is usually dominated by a particular species but there are also many other plants.

The plants of a community are the producers : they use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant eating animals (herbivores) which are in turn eaten by the flesh-eating animals (carnivores). Thus, plants produce the basic food supply for all animals of the community. The animals themselves are the consumers, and are either herbivores or carnivores in a woodland community.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice, and snails, and insects, such as aphids and caterpillars. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes.

Some carnivores feed on herbivores and some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains or food webs. All food chains start with plants. The links of the chains are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are some organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top : for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

Another important section of the community is made up of the decomposers. They include the bacteria and fungi that live in the soil and feed on dead animals and plants. By doing this, they break down the tissues of the dead organisms and release mineral salts into the soil.

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Decomposers soil for plants.
a. disturb b. enrich c. kill d. spoil
- The sun is nutrition in plants.
a. catalyst b. an element
c. responsible for d. secondary for
- According to the passage, a natural community comprises
a. living organisms b. non-living organisms
c. neither of them d. both of them

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

4. The underlined word "caterpillars" in the passage is similar in size to

- a. forests b. mice c. moth d. snails

مهارة التفكير النقدي Critical thinking skill

B. Answer the following questions :

5. According to the passage what do you think the writer's message to man?

- Man should interact with the elements of nature to benefit from them not to damage them.

6. In your opinion, what are the three components of a food chain mentioned in the passage ?

- Plants, herbivores & carnivores.

7. From your view point, what is meant by the balance in the passage?

- There should be a balance between plants (producers), herbivores and carnivores (consumers).

B How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometers from Earth ? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return ?

That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars one mission in 2031. Surprisingly, 200000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they will never see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or diseases. They also knew that their new lives would be difficult and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars.

The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space. A special settlement will be built on Mars where food will

be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life. There will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, it is an adventure they can not refuse.

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The number of people who will be made ready through training is
 - a. a thousand people
 - b. less than a thousand people
 - c. two hundred thousand people
 - d. less than ten people

Understanding the main idea فهم الفكرة الرئيسية

2. The main idea of the passage is
 - a. One day we will all live on Mars
 - b. Life on Mars will be very difficult
 - c. The people who will go to Mars will be famous
 - d. Life on Mars will be impossible

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

3. The underlined word "settlement" means
 - a. a farm
 - b. a place where a group of people live
 - c. a factory
 - d. a rocket

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

4. The thing that made those who sent applications want to travel to Mars is that
 - a. they want to know if they can survive there
 - b. they want to see the dust storms
 - c. scientists made them go there
 - d. they don't like Earth

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What do you think the qualities of people who wanted to travel to Mars ?

I think they should be adventurous and brave.

6. How would you feel if someone told you that you will never return to the Earth ? Why would you have such a feeling ?

It's a terrible feeling to know that you will never see your family or friends again.

7. What difficulties do you think will be found on Mars ?

On Mars, there will be very little water. People who will go there will have to grow their own food. Mars is known for its giant dust storms.

Practise by yourself تدرب بنفسك

★ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

- 1 There is a common expression in the English language referring to a blue moon. When people say that something happens "**only once in a blue moon**," they mean that it happens only very rarely, one in a great while. This expression has been around for at least a century and a half; there are references to this expression that date from the second half of the nineteenth century.

The expression "a blue moon" has come to refer to the second full moon occurring in any given calendar month. A second full moon is not called a blue moon because it is particularly blue or is any different in the hue from the first full moon of the month. Instead, it is called a blue moon because it is so rare. The moon needs a little more than 29 days to complete the cycle from full moon to full moon. Because every month except February has more than 29 days, every month will have at least one full moon (except February, which will have a full moon unless there is a full moon at the very end of January and another full moon at the very beginning of March). It's on the occasion when a given calendar month has a second full moon that a blue moon occurs. This doesn't happen very often, three or four times a decade.

The blue moons of today are called blue moons because of their rarity and not because of their colour; however, the expression "blue moon" may have come into existence in reference to unusual circumstances in which the moon actually appeared blue. Certain natural phenomena of **gigantic** proportions can actually change the appearance of the moon from Earth. The eruption of the Krakatoa volcano in 1883 left dust particles in the atmosphere, which clouded the sun and gave the moon

a bluish tint. This particular occurrence of the blue moon may have given rise to the expression that we use today. Another example occurred more than a century later. When Mount Pinatubo erupted in the Philippines in 1991, the moon again took on a blue tint.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This passage is about
 a. an unusual colour b. an idiomatic expression
 c. a month on the calendar d. a phase of the moon
- The expression "**once in a blue moon**" means
 a. for around fifty years b. for less than one hundred
 c. for more than one hundred d. for two hundred years
- The antonym of the underlined word "gigantic" is
 a. large b. huge c. colossal d. tiny
- According to the passage, the moon actually looked blue
 a. when it occurred late in the month
 b. several times a year
 c. during the month of February
 d. after large volcanic eruptions

B. Answer the following questions :

5. Do you think February can have more than one full moon ? Why/ Why not ?

.....

6. Do you think the "blue moon" seldom occurs ? Why ? Why not ?

.....

7. Do you think that natural catastrophes have an influence on the lunar system ? Why ? Why not ?

.....

- 2** Most human beings are awake during the day and sleep all night. Owls live the opposite way. Owls are nocturnal. This means that they sleep all

day and stay awake at night. Because owls are nocturnal, this means they must eat at night. But finding food in the dark is generally difficult. To help them, they have special eyes and ears.

Owls also have very good hearing. Even when owls are in the trees, they can hear small animals moving in the grass below. This helps owls catch their prey even when it is very dark.

Like owls, mice are also nocturnal animals. Mice have an excellent sense of smell. This helps them find food in the dark.

Being nocturnal helps mice to hide from the many different snakes and lizards that want to eat them. Most of the birds, snakes, and lizards that like to eat mice sleep at night except, of course, owls.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The owl

a. can't see at night	b. has trouble seeing in the dark
c. can see well at night	d. is likely to be eaten by an owl
2. Being nocturnal helps mice to

a. find food for other animals	b. keep themselves safe
c. kill owl and snakes	d. release stress
3. Owls use senses to find food.

a. smell and hearing	b. sight and smell
c. hearing and sight	d. taste and smell
4. The underlined word "them" refers to

a. mice	b. lizards	c. snakes	d. owls
---------	------------	-----------	---------

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What do you think is special about nocturnal animals ?

.....

6. Why do you think owls have special eyes and ears ?

.....

7. Find a word in the passage which means :

a) take in =

b) sleepless =

2

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

Forms of composition you have to master for the exam

الصيغ التعبيرية التي يجب أن تجيد كتابتها

عزيزى الطالب / عزيزتى الطالبة :

- لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية فى نظام التقويم الجديد ، وعلى الطالب أن ينمى هذه المهارة ليصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعداً للكتابة عن أى موضوع ، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة جميع الصيغ التالية :

① A narrative essay /short story

مقال سردى أو قصة قصيرة

② A descriptive essay

مقال وصفى

③ A comparative/argumentative essay

مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف) / مقال جدلى

- Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation card, a book review or brochure.

صيغ مختلفة مثل: رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية وغير الرسمية - وصف الوظائف - وصفات الطهي - الخطابات - بطاقة الدعوة - عرض نقدي لكتاب - نشرة ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائي؟

- كتابة حوالى (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد الصيغ (مقال - قصة ...)
- يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه
- يتم صياغة رأس الموضوع على شكل:
- عبارة قد تحتوى علي العنوان المطلوب مباشرة
- حكمة أو قول مأثور يتخذه الطالب محوراً أساسياً لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائي
- سؤال مباشر

أمثلة :

Write about 150 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."

- An essay or short story about the statement: "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

- وفيما يلي سيتم عرض مبسط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعبيرية وهي :

1 Essay writing	كتابة المقال
2 Short story writing	كتابة القصة القصيرة
3 Email writing	كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay) ؟

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بفكرة معينة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة فرعية متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفضّل أن يحتوي المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

- إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال:

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

- من حيث الشكل Form

- تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
- ترك مسافة صغيرة (١ سم تقريباً) في بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
- لا بد أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف (Capital).
- وضع نقطة (.) في نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) في نهاية السؤال.

- من حيث المضمون Content

- يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التي تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
- من المهم جداً أن تلتزم بالحديث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بموضوعية وبساطة.
- ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أي جملة رئيسية تحتوي على الفكرة التي تناقشها الفقرة.
- لا بد من تنوع بدايات الجمل.
- استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
- استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع في أخطاء أنت في غنى عنها.

The Form of the Essay الشكل العام للمقال

Title العنوان



Education and Technology

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

Introduction المقدمة

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive ^{تفاعلي} and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

Body الجزء الأساسي

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. No more paper will be wasted. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

Conclusion الخاتمة

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

Indentation المسافة البادئة في أول كل فقرة

The main parts of the essay الأجزاء الرئيسية للمقال

المقدمة

(1) Introduction :

- هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع، وكيف سيتم تسلسل وعرض الأفكار.

- بالنسبة للطلاب الذي يجيد الكتابة، هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ بها فقرة المقدمة مثل :

❶ جملة عامة تعبر بها عن الفكرة التي يدور حولها الموضوع :

- مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن نبدأ كالتالي:

- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعليم الطلاب وحياتهم الخاصة على السواء.

Or :

- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.

- جميعنا ندين بالكثير لمعلمينا وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

❷ حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.

- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل ويشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

❸ جملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.

- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

٤ سؤال عام يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع :

- What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صياغة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- بالنسبة للطلاب الذي لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعد مثل :

• We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

- نتفق جميعاً أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.

• We all admit the importance and necessity of ... in our life.

- كلنا نقر بأهمية وضرورة ... في حياتنا.

• No wonder if we say that ... has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.

- لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعاً.

• We all agree that is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.

- كلنا نتفق أن ... ضروري جداً ويلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• We should put into consideration that ... has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.

- يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحداً من أهم الأشياء في حياة كل شخص.

• In my opinion, ... is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring all the good to our society.

- في رأيي ... هو حقاً مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعاً وإنني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعنا.

• No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

- لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً بالغاً علينا.

* لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم جمع يراعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل.

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات السلبية

- In my opinion, ... is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring evils to our society.

- من وجهة نظري ... خطير وضار هذه الأيام، وقد يكون له آثار سيئة وسلبية علينا جميعا. وانني اعتقد ذلك لان ... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعنا.

- There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

- مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له اثاره السيئة والسلبية في وقتنا هذا.

- Frankly speaking, ... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.

- بصراحة أقول أن ... واحدا من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا. وعلى هذا فان دولتنا لا تدخر جهدا لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

مثّل الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسي)

(2) Body :

- لكي يكون المقال الذي تكتبه معبراً ومفهوماً ومؤثراً، عليك بمراعاة ما يلي :

1. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات جيداً واختر أفضلهم وأسهلهم بالنسبة لك.
2. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب.
3. لا بد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار.
4. تحدث عن كل فكرة في فقرة مستقلة.
5. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.
6. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هواياتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).
7. يجب تنويع بدايات الجمل، ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يناسب من العبارات التالية في بدايات الجمل :

- Everyone knows that + جملة

- I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة

- I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة

- It can't be denied that + جملة

- It goes without saying that + جملة

- يعرف الجميع أن ...

- لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ...

- لا أفسئ سرّاً عندما أقول أن ...

- لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ...

- غنى عن البيان أن ...

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| - It is crystal clear that + جملة | - من الواضح تماماً أن ... |
| - It is known that + جملة | - من المعروف أن ... |
| - It is taken for granted that + جملة | - من المسلم به أن ... |
| - There is no doubt that + جملة | - مما لا شك فيه ... |

٨. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :

- I think / believe that ... أعتقد أن ...
 - In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظري ...
 - As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمي ...
٩. عندما تريد أن تعطى مثالاً ابدأ جملتك بـ :
- For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال ...

الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

(3) Conclusion :

- غالباً ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصاً (summary) للأفكار التي تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها.
- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأي أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التي يمكن استخدامها في الفقرات الختامية للمقال

- Finally, it is quite clear that ... (الموضوع) ... is really... (صفة).
- أخيراً، من الواضح أن ... فعلاً ...
- I can end my speech saying that...
- يمكنني أن أنهي حديثي بالقول أن ...
- In brief, I think that ... is really ...
- باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقاً ...
- In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear.
- في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطرقت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحاً.
- To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.
- ختاماً، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتي كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.
- To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...
- الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلاً ...

Related essay models

نماذج للمقالات المرتبطة بموضوعات القراءة

1 How to use the internet

Introduction

Nowadays, most people use the internet. I think there are both good and bad things about using it. In this essay, I'm going to throw light on both the merits and demerits **مزايا وعيوب** of using the internet.

Advantages

On the one hand, the internet makes life easier. There is so much information on the internet that people don't need to go to libraries to do research into. People can also use emails through the internet and they no longer have to send letters through traditional post offices. With emails, they can expect the other person to get their messages and reply to them at once **على الفور**.

Disadvantages

On the other hand, the internet makes people waste much time. There are too many interesting things on the internet. People can download music and movies, read blogs, and play games. Many people spend so much time on the internet that they don't have time to do their work or sleep. Children can sometimes see things that are harmful or not suitable for their age.

Conclusion

To conclude, too much internet is bad. If people don't spend too much time on the internet, it is a useful thing. There should be some sort of control on the content **المحتوي** children can see.

2 Living in the countryside

Introduction

Where would you prefer to live: in the city or in the countryside? Most people prefer living in the city. However, I would rather live in the country. I'll tell you the reason for this preference.

Disadvantages of city life

People may think that the country is not as exciting as the city. It is true that the city has many activities to do like going to cinemas, parks and clubs. However, you probably have to pay for all these activities. Some of these activities are also very expensive. City life is noisier with the sounds of busy streets and car horns. The city has much air pollution because of exhaust fumes.

Advantages
of countryside life

In contrast, you can enjoy many nice things for free in the countryside. You can go fishing in the rivers or hiking التَّريُّض in the fields. In addition, the country is cleaner and quieter than the city. The country has fresh air and many quiet places. There's also the enjoyable green landscape. There's one more advantage to live in the countryside : the simple kind-hearted people.

Conclusion

To sum up باختصار, the city is expensive, not clean, and loud. The countryside is cheaper, cleaner and quieter. I wish I could spend all my life in the countryside.

3 Keeping Healthy

Introduction

I think health is one of the most important things in our life. Everyone wants to keep healthy. However, some people think it is too hard to be healthy because they are too busy. In this short essay, I'm going to tell you about some easy things you can do to keep healthy.

Advice about
food and drink

Instead of drinking fizzy drinks, you should drink water. Fizzy drinks taste good, but they have sugar. Eating too much sugar will make you gain weight or get cavities تجاويف. If you are eating a snack or meal, drink a cup of water with it. You'd better avoid eating much food. Much food means much weight but less health.

Doing exercise

You can also exercise. Exercising will help you not get sick or feel tired. If you don't have time to play sports or run outside, you can do other things. For example, you can walk up the stairs instead of taking the lift. If you are watching television or doing homework, get up now and then بين الحين والآخر and move around. It's also better to depend on yourself for doing what you need.

Conclusion

In brief باختصار, you don't have to have a diet or do hard exercises every day to be healthy. Making small changes will help you be healthier, fitter and happier.

4 Pollution

Introduction

Most of us know that pollution is the most dangerous threat to life on earth. It is mostly a man-made problem. Man has interfered with nature and disturbed its balance. What are the causes of pollution? How can we fight these causes?

Causes of pollution

The smoke from factories and exhaust fumes are the main causes of air pollution. Factory waste pollutes river water. Oil spill from ships pollutes seas and oceans. Using chemicals in agriculture also pollutes water and the soil. Noise pollution is caused by car horns, the sound of machines and planes taking off and landing. Orange light pollution is caused by the overuse of light in streets and shops.

Fighting pollution

Fighting pollution needs cooperation among people and governments all over the world because it is a global problem. Factories have to use modern machines that cause less problems. The number of cars should be reduced by using public transport. Factories mustn't throw their waste into rivers.

Conclusion

To put the whole matter in a nutshell, we have to fight pollution as soon as possible or the future of life on earth will be in danger. If we don't do something now, we don't deserve to live.

5 Great works of engineering in Egypt

Introduction

Egypt has some of the greatest works of engineering in the whole world. The Egyptians have been known to be clever engineers since the time of the pharaohs. In this essay, I'm going to write about three of the great works of engineering in Egypt.

The Great Pyramid

In ancient Egypt, our ancestors had a lot of great works of engineering. The greatest thing they built was the Great Pyramid at Giza. Up till now, we haven't known how they could use these enormous rocks to build the pyramids without machines. The way the Great Pyramid was built is also scientifically complex.

The Suez Canal

The Suez Canal is another great engineering project. It was dug in the 19th centuries. It has been widened and deepened many times ever since.

The High Dam

The High Dam is also a great work of engineering. It has protected Egypt from floods and droughts الجفاف. It also produces some of the electricity we use in our factories and houses.

Conclusion

Finally, I'd like to say that Egypt has always been great. However, we want it to be greater. If we want to get our glories back, نستعيد أمجادنا we must depend on science, good planning and hard work.

6 How to be qualified for labour market

Introduction

Getting a good job these days is not easy. The requirements of labour market سوق العمل have changed. If you want to get a good job, you need to have some qualifications and skills. Let me tell you about some of the most important requirements of labour market.

Qualifications and skills

A university degree شهادة is very necessary, but it is not enough to get you a job. You need to master تجيد at least two foreign languages. The more languages you speak the better your chance to get a good job is. You also need to know how to use computers professionally. You should have experience in programming and database.

Personal qualities

A job applicant needs to have some positive personal qualities. You must know how to get on with people. The more sociable اجتماعي you are, the more success you achieve at work. Working with a team is necessary, so you must be ready to work with people who are different from you. Learn to accept others even if you disagree with them.

Conclusion

Finally, we all need to get good jobs that pay well. The employers أصحاب الأعمال look for people who have the best qualifications and skills.

2 Short Story writing كتابة القصة القصيرة

- ما الفرق بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن عرض أو نقاش لفكرة رئيسية عن طريق تقسيمها لمجموعة أفكار جزئية، ويكون العرض موضوعي ومباشر.
- القصة القصيرة (Short story) عبارة عن وصف لموقف معين أو سرد لأحداث معينة.
- للقصة عناصر معينة مثل : الحبكة - الشخصيات - المكان والزمان - الحوار - المغزى الأخلاقي ... إلخ.

- ما أوجه التشابه بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- التشابه فقط يكون في استخدام اللغة، فالقصة مثل المقال تنقسم إلى فقرات (Paragraphs) يتناول كل منها فكرة معينة.
- القصة المطلوبة في نفس حجم المقال حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة.
- لا بد من استخدام لغة بسيطة واضحة.
- يجب مراعاة التسلسل الزمني للأحداث.
- لا بد من مراعاة علامات الترقيم.

إرشادات هامة لكتابة القصة القصيرة :

- عند كتابة كل قصة قصيرة، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج القصة بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون :

(1) Plot حبكة القصة (الأحداث)

- وهي الأسلوب المُحكَّم الذي يتم به عرض الأحداث وتساعدنا وصولاً لذروة الموقف حتى الوصول للنهاية .

(2) Setting المكان والزمان

- لا بد من تحديد المدى الزمني والمكان الذي تدور فيه الأحداث.

(3) Characters الشخصيات

- يجب الاهتمام بعرض وتطوير الشخصيات حتى تبدو حقيقية بالنسبة للقارئ، فالشخصيات هي التي تقوم بالأحداث في القصة ولا بد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث.

(4) Narrating السرد

- يجب الاهتمام بأسلوب الكتابة، واستخدام الجمل القصيرة يعطى تشويقاً ويجعل تسلسل الأحداث أكثر وضوحاً.

(5) Moral المغزى الأخلاقي

- لا بد أن يكون للقصة مغزى أخلاقي أو درس مستفاد يخرج به القارئ.

Short Story Model

نموذج للقصة القصيرة

A situation of great fear

I lived in a small village where most farmers kept dogs to guard their animals and farms. They regarded **اعتبروا** dogs as a kind of danger alarm **إنذار بالخطر** at night because dogs barked **كانت تنبح** when they saw strangers in the streets. When farmers heard dogs' barking at night, they got ready to face the expected danger.

I was a young boy of about five when this situation took place. **حدث** My uncle, who was a young man then, asked me to go with him to the farm. My father didn't want me to go but when I started to cry, he allowed me to go.

There on the farm, my uncle was busy doing some jobs here and there. I wandered around the field. I didn't realise that I had gone far away from my uncle.

Suddenly, I found myself face to face with a party **مجموعة** of five large dogs. They all looked at me in a frightening way, their mouths were open and their tongues were hanging out.

I turned around and started to run. Fear made my legs weak. I was breathless and had no power to run. In seconds I was on the ground and the dogs surrounded me. I felt it was the end.

I was saved by a farmer who was in a nearby field. He carried me home where he told my father what had happened. I have never liked dogs since then.

Follow your progress in writing skill

تابع مستواك في إتقان مهارة الكتابة باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر

UNIT 1

1. Write an essay of about (150) words on eco-tourism.

.....

.....

.....



UNIT 2

2. Write an essay of about (150) words on a famous person.

.....

.....

.....



UNIT 3

3. Write an essay of about (150) words on describing a character from a book, film or TV who is similar to you.

.....

.....

.....



UNIT 4

4. Write an essay of about (150) words on to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

.....

.....

.....



UNIT 5

5. Write an essay of about (150) words on the internet, possible advantages, disadvantages and how to protect yourself online.

.....

.....

.....



UNIT 6

6. Write an essay of about (150) words on a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.

.....

.....

.....



3

Translation

الترجمة

السادة معلمى اللغة الإنجليزية، أبنائنا وبناتنا طلبة و طالبات المرحلة الثانوية :

نقدم لكم هذا الجهد المتواضع "El-Moasser Translation Guide" كإسهام بسيط منا للقضاء نهائيا علي مشكلة الترجمة بالنسبة لأبنائنا في المرحلة الثانوية، وذلك باستخدام أسلوب السؤال و الإجابة الوافية السلسلة البسيطة في عرض المادة العلمية الخاصة بكيفية الترجمة ، وقد تم تقسيم المادة العلمية في هذا الدليل إلى عدد من الحصص ، و في كل حصة نتناول جزئية محددة ثم نعقبها بتدريبات مُتعلقة بما تم عرضه في الحصة.

تنويه : كل مجموعة تدريبات يتبعها جدول مرتب أبجديا للمفردات الهامة للطالب، كما يوجد جدول لبعض التعبيرات الهامة في نهاية هذا الجزء.

Introduction

Expressing the sense of (words or text)

ترجمة المعنى

السؤال : هل المقصود بالترجمة ترجمة الكلمات الموجودة بالجملة حرفياً ؟

طبعاً لا ، فالترجمة تعني نقل المعني من لغة إلى أخرى دون التقيد بالألفاظ ، لاحظ ترجمة الجملة التالية:

- Diamond cuts diamond

الماس يقطع الماس.

هذه ترجمة حرفية ولا تؤدي معني المقولة الإنجليزية ، لكن إذا أردنا أن نترجم بشكل صحيح فنقول لا يفل الحديد إلا الحديد :

- It's raining cats and dogs.

إنها تمطر بغزارة.

ولكي نترجم بشكل صحيح عليك بمراعاة ما يلي :

(١) اقرأ النص الذي تريد أن تترجمه بالكامل لكي تفهم الفكرة العامة له.

(ب) اقرأ النص من جديد قراءة جيدة لتعرف ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب وكيف كان إحساسه حين قال هذا الكلام، فمثلاً كيف تترجم الجملة التالية ؟

- Ahmed is always listening to loud music.

أعتقد أنك ستترجمها كالتالي : « يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى موسيقى صاخبة »

وتلك بالطبع ترجمة غير سليمة ، حيث أن استخدام "always" مع المضارع المستمر "is listening" يوحي بضيق وضجر المتحدث، لذلك فإنه من الدقة أن تترجم الجملة كما يلي: « يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى تلك الموسيقى الصاخبة؟ ».

لاحظ أننا استخدمنا صيغة السؤال و علامة استفهام رغم أن الجملة الأصلية ليست كذلك ، فالأهم هو نقل المعني بالإحساس الموجود في النص الأصلي.

(ج) لا تترجم الكلمات كمعاني مستقلة ، لكن حسب استخدامها في السياق ، لاحظ كيف تترجم الجملة التالية:

- The teacher asks me to use my right hand to draw a right angle right now.

لاحظ تكرار كلمة "right" ثلاث مرات بثلاث معان مختلفة :

الآن على الفور right now - زاوية قائمة right angle - اليد اليمنى right hand

وهكذا تكون ترجمة الجملة كالتالي: « يطلب مني المعلم أن أستخدم يدي اليمنى لرسم زاوية قائمة الآن على الفور ».

(د) اقرأ النص الذي قمت بترجمته ، هل فهمت نفس المعنى الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي ؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المُترجم نفس الإحساس الذي يصل من النص الأصلي ؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس المعنى بنفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة.

Part I Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية

1 Starting the English Sentence كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية

السؤال : كيف أبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(1) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفاعل:

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية.

- Dr Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذي ينوب عن الفاعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالي لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(ج) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالي :

يتكون الأمر المثبت في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة. **comp.** + مفعول **obj.** + الفعل في المصدر **Inf.** →

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" في بداية جملة الأمر المثبت لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : دوماً ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفي (النهي) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة. **comp.** + مفعول **obj.** + الفعل في المصدر **Inf.** + **Don't** →

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلاً من "Don't" في بداية جملة النهي لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تُصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بـ «هل»

ابدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الزمن:

- Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had

- Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought / Need / Dare

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فاعل إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمعلوم :

مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لتشارلز ديكنز؟ (لاحظ الفعل في زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أتمارس الرياضة بشكل يومي؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يوميًا؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل في صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمجهول :

مثال : هل شُرح لك هذا الدرس بالأمس؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ (أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد المنفي:

مثال : أليست تتبع نظاماً غذائياً؟ / أليس من عاداتك اتباع نظاماً غذائياً؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بمشاهدة الأفلام؟ (عادات في الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بأداة استفهام إبدأ بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة حسب الزمن:

What	ما / ماذا	Which	أى
Where	أين	When	متى
Why	لماذا	Who	من
Whose	لمن	How	كم / كيف

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن تفعله لتحمي البيئة من التلوث؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه الغش في الامتحانات؟

- How can we fight exam cheating?

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. تعمل اختى مضيقة طيران وترتدى زياً خاصاً بالشركة التى تعمل بها.
٢. تُستخدم الأقمار الصناعية فى اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن و البترول.
٣. فى كل عام يأتى السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل فى الشتاء.
٤. تُبنى المدارس والجامعات فى كل المحافظات لتوفر تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.
٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش معاً فى حب وسلام.
٦. ساعد والدك و اعمل بجد.
٧. لا تُكثّر من الطعام و لا تنسى ممارسة الرياضة.
٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.
٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.
١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟
١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة فى وقت فراغك؟
١٢. أتغسل أسنانك بالفرشاة مرتين يومياً؟
١٣. كيف تمكّن قدماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟
١٤. لماذا تضيع وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟
١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعياً؟

Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	يضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

2 Tenses of Sentences الزمن الجملة

السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمني المضارع و الماضي ، و يتم التعبير عن المستقبل بـ « سوف / س + الفعل المضارع » ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمنا ، فكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة؟

- تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة و معرفة استخدامات كل زمن و هذا متروك لدروس القواعد اللغوية ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التي قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة:

(1) الجملة التي تدل علي حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يُوضع فعلها في صيغة المضارع البسيط : (inf. / inf. + s, es, ies)

مثال : المخ البشرى يتحكم في كل شيء نقوم به.

- The human brain **controls** everything we do.

مثال : يتسلم الكتاب والعلماء جوائز قيّمة كل عام.

- Writers and scientists **receive** valuable prizes every year.

مثال : التعليم ليس غاية في حد ذاته، إنما وسيلة تؤدي إلى غاية.

- Education **is** not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التي تدل علي حدث مستمر في الوقت الحالي يُوضع فعلها في المضارع البسيط إلى مضارع مستمر : (am / is / are + inf. + ing)

مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهودا كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.

- Nowadays, the government **is exerting** great efforts to improve health and education.

(ج) الجملة التي تدل علي خبرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير علي الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p.p.) بشرط عدم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل :
مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتي الآن.

- Ahmed **has won** two gold medals so far.

- أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) :
مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.

- Ahmed **won** two gold medals last year.

(د) عادات الماضي يتم التعبير عنها كالتالي :

- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never التصريف الثاني

مثال : كان جدي أحيانا يأخذنا لزيارة أقاربنا في الريف.

- My grandfather **sometimes took** us to visit our relatives in the countryside.

(هـ) عادات الماضي التي تتوقف في الحاضر :

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing

مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية بدراجتي الصغيرة.

- I **used to go** to primary school on my small bike.

مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل.

- My grandmother **was used to making** bread at home.

(و) الجملة التي تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي (غالبا تحتوي عل كلمة « كان + فعل مضارع ») تُترجم إلى ماضي مستمر (was / were + inf. + ing) :

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه.

- Ahmed **was playing** football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التي تدل علي حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي نستخدم ماضي تام (had + p.p.) :

مثال : انتهى المعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطى لنا بعض التدريبات.

- The teacher **had finished** explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التي تدل علي المستقبل (سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل) تُترجم الي الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing) :

مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم.

- Huda **is celebrating** her fifth birthday next month.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامه في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.

.....

٢. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب في كثير من الأمراض.

.....

٣. لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا في إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

.....

٤. أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي هاما للحصول علي وظيفة.

٥. في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا علي قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.

٦. في بعض المنازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية في تسخين المياه.

٧. قد قام السد العالي بحماية مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياه لوقت الحاجة.

٨. لن نتحقق أهدافك دون أن تعمل بجد.

٩. كنت عائدا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمتي في الشارع.

١٠. اعتادت جدتي أن تحكي لنا قصصا شيقة.

١١. أحاول جاهدا أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة.

Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهداً	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مسألة / مشكلة	try hard	يحاول جاهداً
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	ينشئ	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

3 كيفية ترجمة الصفات والظروف Translating Adjectives and Adverbs

السؤال : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟

(أ) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف علي عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ:

- ولد ماهر a clever boy - فتاة جميلة a beautiful girl - قصص شيقة interesting stories -

مثال : العمل الجاد والخلق الحسن من سمات الإنسان الناجح.

- Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person.

(ب) علي غير العادة ، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف و ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكلمات التالية :

something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone
/ everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody -
somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere

- someone evil شخص ما شرير - something important شيء ما مهم
مثال : وضع أحمد شيء ما صغير الحجم في حقيبته.

- Ahmed put something small in his bag.

- (ج) تأتي الصفة وبعدها موصوف أو بدون موصوف بعد أفعال مثل :
be - get يبدو sound - له رائحة smell - له مذاق taste - يشعر feel - يصبح become - يصبح be - get
- seem يبدو look - يبدو

- مثال : لقد أصبح عجوزا / لقد أصبح رجلا عجوزا.
- He became old. / He became an old man.

- (د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط نبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة، لاحظ:
- a famous rich man رجل ثرى مشهور.
- an intelligent young lady سيدة شابة ذكية.

- مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة تساعد أطفال الشوارع المشردين.
- Different charitable organisations help homeless street children.

- (هـ) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا في الغالب نكتب الصفة الأولى أولا ثم الثانية، لاحظ:
- a rich and famous man رجل ثرى ومشهور.
- a young and beautiful lady سيدة شابة وذكية.

- مثال : العمل الجاد والمستمر هو الخطوة الأولى نحو تحقيق هدفك في الحياة.
- Hard and continuous work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life.

- (و) إذا وضعنا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يتبع الصفة اسم فنقصد بذلك كل من يتصفون بهذه الصفة.
- a blind man رجل كفيف - blind men رجال مكفوفين - The blind المكفوفين
مثال : ينبغي علي الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.

- Rich people should help poor people.
= The rich should help the poor.

السؤال : وماذا عن الظرف؟ كيف يُترجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه في الجملة ؟

- (1) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) ويمكن أن يأتي بعضها في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never

- مثال : تحاول أُمي دائما الحفاظ علي بيتنا نظيفاً و مرتباً.
- My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

- Always my mother tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

مثال : غالبا ما أكون في عملي في الموعد المحدد.

- I am usually at my work in time.

(ب) ظروف الكيفية التي تدل على كيفية أو طريقة حدوث الفعل تأتي بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

مثال : أسير إلى مدرستي مسرعا.

- I walk quickly to my school.

مثال : من حقا أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية.

- It is your right to express your opinion freely.

(ج) ظروف الدرجة التالية تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة ، و توضع قبل الصفة مباشرة :

تماما / completely / كلياً / utterly / بشكل مطلق / absolutely / للغاية / extremely
إلى حد ما / rather / إلى حد ما / quite / جدا / so / very / حقا / really

مثال : إنني في الحقيقة غاضب جدا من ذلك الجار السيء.

- I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.

(د) في اللغة الانجليزية يُفضل ان يكون ظرف الزمان أو المكان إما في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها وذلك حسب المعنى :

مثال : أسافر إلى أوروبا مرتين كل صيف.

- I travel to Europe twice every summer.

- Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من اجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.

٢. العلم الحديث والتخطيط الجيد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.

٣. هبة تذهب إلى الفراش مبكراً.

٤. يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزة الكمبيوتر في مدارسهم.

٥. يقدم العلماء شيء ما جديد كل يوم لخدمه البشرية.

٦. كان الجو حاراً للغاية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.

٧. يجب أن تقود السيارة بحرص حتي تبقي بأمان.

٨. أحيانا أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

٩. المكفوفون يمكنهم التعلم و العمل.

١٠. الوجبات الصغيرة الخفيفة مفيدة للصحة.

١١. حصلت علي درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد و المستمر.

١٢. يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضبا بعد خسارة المباراة.

Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	الوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	البشرية	humanity	البشرية

4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (١)

السؤال : كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبنى للمجهول؟

(١) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم كالتالى :

- Subj. جملة + **that** + (حسب الزمن) **consider** + فاعل.
- Subj. جملة + **as** + مفعول **obj.** + (حسب الزمن) **regard** + فاعل.

مثال : تعتبر الحكومة التعليم استثماراً فى مستقبل مصر.

- The government **considers that** education is an investment in the future of the country.
- The government **regards education as** an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمجهول كالتالى :

- Obj. مفعول **be** + (حسب الزمن) **considered**
- Subj. جملة + **be** + (حسب الزمن) **regarded as** + noun

مثال : يُعتبر التعليم استثماراً فى مستقبل مصر.

- Education is **considered** an investment in the future of Egypt.
- Education is **regarded as** an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحياناً يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم) ، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟

هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هي الأفعال الأساسية للجملة ، وفي هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلي :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدي معنى (تحاول) ، فتترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- All nations try **to solve** the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم معلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدرستنا بشرح الدروس جيداً.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معنى فيتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، وتُترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- The teachers of English in our school **explain** lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التي تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم على التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معنى ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :

- The problems which face students **are solved** to help them learn well.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

(١) هناك الجمل الاسمية التي ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

- Hard work **is** your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة لـ (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن) :

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

- Healthy food and sport **are** the keys to good health and happiness.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يعتبر المصريون نهر النيل مصدر الحياة لهم.

٢. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام المروري.

٣. يُعد السد العالي أفضل إنجاز للرئيس عبد الناصر.

٤. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

٥. يعتبر أبي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيعة للوقت.

٦. تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين.

٧. التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقي لمستقبل أفضل.

٨. يُعتبر الدكتور الباز رمز من رموز العلم في كل أنحاء العالم.

٩. إن الإنترنت أضخم مكتبة في التاريخ.

١٠. يقوم أبي بزيارة جدى في الريف كل شهر.

١١. إن زراعة الصحراء شيء ضرورى لتوفير الغذاء.

١٢. تقوم الحواس بإرسال رسائل إلى المخ.

Related Vocabulary

achievement
a waste of time
president

إنجاز
مضيعة للوقت
الرئيس

source
symbol
traffic jam

مصدر
رمز
الازدحام المرورى

5 Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (٢)

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عندى / عنده / عندنا / لها / لهم ... إلخ) وليس بها فعل؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالى مع مراعاة زمن الجملة :

I have	عندى - لدى - لى - أملك	You have	عندكم - لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - لديه - له - يملك	We have	عندنا - لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - لها - تملك	They have	عندهم - لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لديه - لديها - له - لها	One has	للمرء - لدى المرء - يمتلك المرء
You have	عندك - لديك - لك - تملك		

مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات فى وقت فراغنا.

- We have a lot of interests in our free time.

مثال : كان لأبى دور كبير فى نجاحى.

- My father had a great role in my success.

مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير في تقدم الوطن.

- Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (عليه / عليها / عليك / لابد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي إلخ) ؟
تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب القاعدة التالية :

- Subj. + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf

مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.

- We should keep the environment clean.

مثال : لابد أن تُطيع والديك و تحترم مُعلميك.

- You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.

مثال : كان عليّ أن أراجع دروسي جيدا لأجتاز الإمتحان.

- I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسى / لعل / ليت) ؟

(1) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.

- I hope + subj. + will + inf.

- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتني أقدر أن أساعدك.

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.

- I hope I will be able to help you.

- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضي فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...

- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتني ذاكرت جيدا العام الماضي.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.

- I regret not studying hard last year.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(1) نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

- standard of living	- living standard	مستوى المعيشة
- pollution of the air	- air pollution	تلوث الهواء
- the rate of birth	- birth rate	معدل المواليد

(ب) تستخدم (s') الملكية غالبًا عندما يكون المضاف إليه عاقل أو اسم حيوان :

- My mother's house. (s') ملكية مفرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا.

٢. تعمل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتنمية مواهبهم.

٣. يجب أن ننشئ الأطفال على حب الوطن و احترام الوالدين.

٤. علينا ان نشارك بإيجابية في تقدم وطننا.

٥. علينا أن نداوم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.

٦. يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.

٧. من الضروري أن ننمي الإهتمام بالعلم لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.

٨. للعلماء دور هام في إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.

٩. ليتني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.

١٠. للتليفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

Related Vocabulary

bringing up	تربية	positively	إيجابية
conditions	ظروف	progress	تقدم
culture	ثقافة	share	نشارك
effective	مؤثر	society	المجتمع
generation	جيل	solutions	حلول
interest	اهتمام	talents	مواهب

6 Special Cases (3) حالات خاصة (٣)

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

(١) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام في حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.

- My brother passed the driving test last week.

(ج) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.

- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف ونستخدم بدلاً منها زمن الماضي البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

(١) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل ماضي) مثل (لقد) :

مثال : قد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :

مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غدا.

- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية غالبا ما تبدأ بـ

(noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة؟

(١) الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :

مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.

- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.

(ب) كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم :

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولاً لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كرة القدم بمباراة هامة.

٢. لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحية والطقس الرائع.

٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لا يمكن أن يحدث إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

٤. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقاً يعيشون حياة أطول.

٥. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس.

٦. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء في إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

٧. إن إهدار مياه النيل جريمة في حق الوطن.

٨. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غني عنها للحصول علي وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي.

٩. إن البحث العلمي وسيلة هامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أي أمة.

١٠. إن زراعته الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

١١. إن زيادة الانتاج واجب وطني لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان.

١٢. لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

١٣. إن سيناء جزء هام من أرض مصر يجب الاهتمام بتنميتها ورعاية أهلها.

Related Vocabulary

against	في حق / ضد	nation	أمة
co-operation	تعاون	national	وطني / قومي
crime	جريمة	production	إنتاج
duty	واجب	research	بحث
fictional	خيالي	resources	موارد
grant (ed)	يهب	skills	مهارات
increasing	زيادة	wasting	إهدار
means	وسيلة		

7 Special Cases (4) حالات خاصة (4)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك الخ) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been / will be / can be / must be + noun اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض.

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة.

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بدائل للبترول في المستقبل.

- There will be replacements for oil in the future.

مثال : لابد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء.

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التي بها (كلما ... كلما) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- The + subj. + verb + the + subj. + verb + صفة مقارنة

مثال : كلما تمرنت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة.

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما تكون أكثر طولا كلما تستطيع أن تجري أسرع.

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل بفعل ؟

(1) ضمير الفاعل المتصل بفعل يترجم ضمير فاعل (I - he - she - it - you - we - they) ، لاحظ :

- We wrote كتبنا

- She wrote كتبت

- I wrote كتبت

مثال : زرت جدتي مع أخي واشترينا لها هدية.

- I and my brother visited my grandmother and bought her a present.

(ب) ضمير المفعول المتصل بفعل أو حرف جر يُترجم ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them):

مثال : سمعته يقول بعض المعلومات الهامة فاستمعت إليه بحرص.

- I heard him say something important, so I listened to him carefully.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل باسم ؟

الضمير المتصل بالاسم يُترجم إلى صفة ملكية (my - his - her - its - our - your - their - 's) لاحظ :

كتابي my book - كتابها her book - كتابنا our book

مثال : يبذل جميع المواطنين ما بوسعهم من أجل وطنهم.

- All citizens do their best for their home.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. توجد بعض قواعد النظافة الشخصية التي يجب اتباعها لتجنب الأمراض.

٢. علمتني الحياة ألا أحزن على ما ضاع مني لأنه ليس لي.

٣. كلما ساعدت الناس وقت الحاجة كلما شعرت بالسعادة.

٤. كان هناك حادثاً مروعاً على الطريق الصحراوي إلى أسوان.

٥. تحتاج الدولة جهودنا نحن الشباب لتحقيق التقدم.

٦. أعتقد أن الناس سوف تستمر في قراءة الكتب من أجل المتعة.

٧. كلما زاد العمل والإنتاج كلما ارتفع مستوى المعيشة.

٨. لا يوجد دين يدعو إلى القتل وترويع الناس.

٩. ندين بالكثير للعلماء لما قدموه لنا من إنجازات.

١٠. أفكر جدياً في دراسة الطب في الجامعة.

١١. تعطينا الشمس الحرارة والضوء، وهي مصدر للطاقة النظيفة.

١٢. نعيش الآن عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالماً مفتوحاً.

Related Vocabulary

achievements	إنجازات	in need	وقت الحاجة
age	عصر	owe	يدين
for fun	من أجل المتعة	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة

8 Special Cases (5) حالات خاصة (5)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (من + صفة) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
- تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- It is + adj. صفة + (for + ضمير مفعول + to + inf.

مثال : من الجيد أن تقضي وقت فراغك بشكل مفيد.

- It is good (for you) to spend your free time in a useful way.

مثال : من الضروري أن يشارك الطلاب في الأنشطة المدرسية.

- It is necessary for students to take part in school activities.

السؤال : كيف أترجم المفعول المطلق إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- بصفة عامة يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.

مثال : تتأثر الصحة تأثراً كبيراً بالتدخين.

- Health is greatly affected by smoking.

السؤال : هناك أيضاً الأعداد، هل تُترجم أرقاماً حسابية أم حروفاً ؟

(1) الأعداد من (1 - 9) تكتب هجائياً دائماً ، أما إذا زاد عن ذلك فيكتب أرقاماً حسابية :

مثال : أرسلت دعوات الحفل لخمسين صديقاً لكن لم يحضره منهم إلا ثمانية.

- I sent the invitations of the party to 50 friends, but only eight of them attended it.

(ب) عندما تبدأ الجملة الانجليزية بذكر العدد فإنه يكتب هجائياً دائماً :

مثال : وصل ثلاثون مسافراً إلى المحطة بعد أن غادر القطار.

- Thirty passengers arrived at the station after the train had left.

السؤال : وماذا عن حروف الجر ؟

- لحروف الجر استخدامات يعرفها الطالب بالتدريج من خلال دراسته للغة ، و المهم هنا أن هناك بعض الأفعال التي لا تأخذ حرف جر مثل :

admire	يعجب بـ	include	يشتمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق بـ
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين بـ

celebrate
enjoy
fear
feel

يحتفل بـ
يتمتع بـ
يخشى أن
يشعر بـ

pass
reach
recognise
sacrifice

ينجح / يجتاز / يمر على
يصل إلى
يتعرف على
يضحى بـ

- Smoking affects health badly.

مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. من الضروري أن نهتم أكثر بالتعليم والصحة.

٢. يجب أن تهتم الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالمشروعات فى صعيد مصر.

٣. من الطبيعى أن يكون لمصر جيش قوى يحمى حدودها وشرطة قوية تحمى أمنها الداخلى.

٤. من المتوقع أن تكون الحروب القادمة بين الدول هى حروب للسيطرة على مصادر المياه.

٥. تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

٦. تتأثر السياحة تأثيرًا كبيرًا بالأحداث الجارية فى العالم.

٧. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحذيرًا شديدًا من التدخين.

٨. تتطلع مصر تطلعًا كبيرًا لتحسين مستوى معيشة مواطنيها.

٩. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.

١٠. تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأنهم قادة المستقبل.

١١. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

Related Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	pay attention	تولى اهتماماً
deep thought	تفكير عميق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
It is wise	من الحكمة		

Part II Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التي قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلي :

السؤال : ما الذى يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

- (أ) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزي لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للموضوع.
- (ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية للوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.
- (ج) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.
- (د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربى سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلاً أساسياً ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه فى الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

- (أ) المعنى الأساسى للفعل (be) فى اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. - My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتى صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيداً عن الوطن.

- (ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل آخر فى اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g. - The wedding was last week.

- تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضى.

- A knife is for cutting food.

- تستخدم السكين لتقطيع الطعام.

- (ج) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصى مثل (هو / هى / هما / هم / هنّ) فى اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g. - My mother is everything to me.

- إن أمي هى كل شىء بالنسبة لى.

- Our children are the joy of our life.

- أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

- (د) يمكن إسقاط الفعل (be) نهائياً من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g. - Ahmed is a hard-working student.

- أحمد طالب جاد فى العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city.

- يقع منزلى فى جزء هادئ من المدينة.

السؤال : قالوا لي أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعاني، فكيف أترجمه إلى العربية ؟

- هذا كلام صحيح، فهذا الفعل يستخدم بمعاني كثيرة منها :

(1) المعنى الأصلي للفعل (have) هو (يمتلك / عنده / لديه) حسب الزمن :

- لدى / عندي / أمتلك منزلاً ذو حديقة صغيرة. - I have a house with a small garden.

(ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يتناول طعاماً أو شرباً) :

- I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday.

- تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز في الغداء أمس.

(ج) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يقيم / يعقد / يحضر) :

- I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success.

- سأقيم حفلاً كبيراً بمناسبة نجاح ابنتي.

(د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعاني / لديه معاناه) :

- She had a bad headache after the party.

- لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد الحفل.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة في الترجمة ؟

نعم بالفعل، ولكي تترجم بشكل سليم لا بد أن تتذكر دائماً أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التي تأتي بعده مباشرة:

- Only my mother helped me with my homework.

- أمي فقط هي من ساعدني في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother only helped me with my homework.

- لم تقم أمي إلا بمساعدتي في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped only me with my homework.

- ساعدتني أمي أنا فقط في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped me with only my homework.

- ساعدتني أمي في واجبي المنزلي فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية مبنياً للمجهول ؟

(1) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنجليزية المبنية للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم عند الترجمة للعربية طالما كان

الفاعل معروفاً :

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.

- لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.

(ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلي مثل :

e.g. - The task was carried out on time.

- تم تنفيذ المهمة في الوقت المحدد.

Now, test yourself**Translate into Arabic :**

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Be free and respect others' freedom.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour.
6. Children learn good habits by imitating of their elders.
7. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.
8. Currently, there're major powers trying to dominate the whole world through technology.
9. Don't cry over spilt milk.
10. Eat less, exercise more, and fill your eyes with sleep.
11. Egypt is one of the earliest cradles of human civilisation.
12. Everyone has the right to express their opinion freely and take part in the social life.
13. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2050.
14. Good citizens are ready to sacrifice their lives when their country is in danger.
15. Great efforts have been made for the equality between men and women.
16. Growing older is a natural process that we cannot stop.
17. Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood.
18. Has technology made the world a better place to live in?
19. If an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it.
20. If you risk nothing, then you risk everything.
21. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence.
22. In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up.
23. In the third world countries, the number of smokers is increasing, mainly due to ignorance.
24. Inside their homes, children get their first lessons in behaving towards others.

El Moasser's Glossary for Translation Vocabulary

- قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالترجمة.

الاقتصاد والعمل Economy and work

ambitions	تطلعات / طموحات	low income	دخل منخفض
bargains	صفقات	manufacture	يُصنَّع
budget	ميزانية	manufacturer	مُصنَّع
capital	رأس المال	marketing	تسويق
capitalism	رأسمالية	monopolist	محتكر
commerce	تجارة	monopoly	احتكار
commercial	تجاري	national duty	واجب وطني
compete	ينافس	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
congestion	التكدس / الزحام	national income	الدخل القومي
consume	يستهلك	nationalization	تأميم
consumer	مستهلك	nationalize	يؤمم
consumption	استهلاك	necessitate	يستلزم
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة	overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني
creation	خلق / إيجاد	price control	ضبط الأسعار
crime	الجريمة	priorities	أولويات
current stage	المرحلة الراهنة	products	منتجات
dealer	وكيل	profits	أرباح
development	تنمية / تطوير	promote	يُرقي / يُرَّج
discount	تخفيض / خصم	prosperity	ازدهار
dissatisfaction	عدم إشباع	rate	معدل
due care	الاهتمام اللازم	rationalise	يضبط / يُرشد
economic	اقتصادي	rationalization	ترشيد
economic	الأزمة الاقتصادية	reclaim	يستصلح
crisis		reclamation	استصلاح
economical	موفر / اقتصادي	recycling	إعادة تصنيع
economics	علم الاقتصاد	reduction	تخفيض
economist	خبير اقتصادي	reform	إصلاح
enterprise	مشروع / منشأة	renaissance	نهضة
expenses	نفقات	resources	موارد
facing	مواجهه / مواجهة	revenue	عائد
famine	مجاعة	risky	خطير
finance	مال / يمول	sales / discounts	مبيعات / تخفيضات
financial	مالي	shares	أسهم
food shortage	نقص الطعام	short-term	قصير الأجل
		slogan	شعار
		slums / squatters	العشوائيات

foreign aids	معونات خارجية	long-term	طويل الأجل
funds	مدخرات	spread	انتشار / ينتشر
goods / commodities	السلع / البضائع	standard of living	مستوي المعيشة
grant(ed)	يهب / يمنح	statistics	إحصائيات
greed	جشع / طمع	stock market	بورصة
growth	نمو	strict measures	معايير صارمة
handmade	صناعة يدوية	strict procedures	إجراءات صارمة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	subsidy	الدعم
high income	دخل مرتفع	tax	ضريبة
humour	الفكاهة / المرح	trade	يتاجر / تجارة
in turn	بدوره	trader	تاجر
inflation	التضخم	unemployment	البطالة
inhabitants	سكان	unrest	اضطراب
inject	يضع	vast	كبير / شامل
insurance	تأمين	via	من خلال / عبر
investment	استثمار	violence	العنف
investor	مستثمر	welfare	رفاءة / رفاهية
job opportunities	فرص عمل	youth	الشباب
labour force	القوى العاملة		

The Nile and saving water

النيل و توفير المياه

a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت	improve relationships	تحسن العلاقات
artery of life	شريان الحياة	International Treaty	معاهدة دولية
civilisation	الحضارة	lack of water	نقص المياه
constructive dialogue	الحوار البناء	majority	معظم / أغلبية
cradle	مهد	must	ضرورة
dam	سد	national security	الأمن القومي
date back to	يعود تاريخه إلي	Nile Basin	حوض النيل
demand for	الطلب علي	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
downstream countries	دول المصب	shortage	نقص
drought	جفاف / قحط	supplies	موارد
Egypt's share	حصة مصر	main source	المصدر الرئيسي
emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ	thirst	الظمأ
essential	ضروري	tributaries	روافد
generate	يُولد	upstream countries	دول المنبع
company	صُحبة	water security	الأمن المائي

consequently	لذلك	noncommunicable	غير ساري
contributions	إسهامات	noninfectious	غير معدي
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	nuclear	نووي
creativity	الأبداع	nuclear waste	النفايات النووية
creatures	مخلوقات	observatory	مرصد
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	owe	يدين
destructive	مدمر	pathology	علم امراض الدم
developed countries	دول متقدمة	pharmaceutical	خاص بالصيدلة
developing countries	دول نامية	philosophy	الفلسفة
deviation	إنحراف	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي
diabetes	مرض السكر	physical illness	مرض بدني
diagnose	يُشخّص	physiology	علم وظائف الأعضاء
diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض	physiotherapy	العلاج الطبيعي
disaster	كارثة	pillars	ركائز
disastrous	مدمر / كارثي	positive	بَنَاء / إيجابي
distance learning	تعلّم عن بُعد	potentials	قدرات
donation	تبرع	power plant	محطة توليد طاقة
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	preservation	صيانة
eagle	صقر	prevention	وقاية
ecology	علم البيئة	properly	بشكل صحيح
Egyptology	علم المصريات	proportional to	متناسب مع
end / target / goal	غاية / هدف	psychiatrist	طبيب نفسي
endanger	يعرّض لخطر	psychologist	عالم نفسي
epidemic	وباء	psychology	علم النفس
erosion	تآكل / تعرية	public opinion	الرأي العام
evergreen	دائم الخضرة	radiation	إشعاع
evils	شرور	rare species	فصيلة نادرة
existence	وجود	reactor	مفاعل
extinction	إندثار / إنقراض	reform	إصلاح
females	إناث	regional	إقليمي
fever	حمى	remarkable progress	تقدم ملحوظ
		remedy	علاج

field	مجال	respiratory system	جهاز تنفسي
fragile	هش / ضعيف	restoration	ترميم
frustration	إحباط	scales	قشور / موازين
generation	جيل / توليد (طاقة)	scientific research	البحث العلمي
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية	seabed	قاع البحر
global warming	الإحتباس الحراري	self	النفس / الذات
harness	يُسخر	set up	ينشئ
herbal medicines	الأدوية العشبية	sociology	علم الاجتماع
heritage	تراث	sooner or later	عاجلاً أم آجلاً
hibernation	بيات شتوي	sterilization	تعقيم
humidity	رطوبة	stubborn	عنيد
hurricane	إعصار	support	يدعم / دعم
ideal solution	حل مثالي	surgery	جراحة
immune system	جهاز المناعة	symptoms	أعراض
impact	أثر	tame	أليف
incurable	لا علاج له	techniques	تقنيات
indigestion	عسر الهضم	thanks to	بفضل
individual	الفرد	therapist	معالج
infection	عدوى	therapy	علاج
infectious	معدى	thinkers	مفكرين
injection	حقن	tide	المد والجزر
innovation	الإبتكار	tornado	إعصار
insomnia	أرق	transfusion	نقل دم
instinct	غريزة / فطرة	tropical	إستوائي
intensive care	عناية مركزة	tumor	ورم
issue	قضية	vaccine	مصل / لقاح
kidneys	كليتين	vegetarian	إنسان نباتي
knowledge	المعرفة	vehicle	مركبة
limit	يحد من / يقلل	waterfalls	شلالات
lungs	رئتين	wheel of production	عجلة الإنتاج
		zoology	علم الحيوان

الأدب والفنون المختلفة Literature & Different Arts

ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	kindergarten (KG)	حضانة
aware	واع	loyalty	ولاء
awesome	مدهش / رهيب	manners	سلوكيات
barriers	حواجز	manuscripts	مخطوطات
borders	حدود	masterpieces	روائع
brain drain	هجرة المتفوقين	merely	فقط
bringing up	تنشئة	motives	دوافع
bullying	بلطجه	nobility	نبيل
censorship	رقابة	non-verbal	غير لفظي
coherence	ترابط / تناغم	nutrition	تغذية
commemorate	يحيى ذكرى	objective	موضوعي
cope with	يجاري / يساير	obstacle	عقبة
core	لب / جوهر	peer	نظير / ند
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	personal interests	مصالح شخصية
craftsmen	أصحاب الحرف	personify	يُجسّد
creative	مبدع	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
cultural	ثقافي	potentials	قدرات
curriculum	مناهج	pre-historic	يخص ما قبل التاريخ
descendants	ذرية / نسل	principles	مبادئ
deterioration	تخلف / تدهور	procedures	إجراءات
edition	نسخة / طبعة	producer	مُنتج
elegance	إناقة	professional	مهني
enrich	يُثري	public library	مكتبة عامة
exceed	يتجاوز	public opinion	الرأي العام
faithfulness	إخلاص	reference	مرجع
fashion designer	مصمم أزياء	science fiction	خيال علمي
fashion houses	بيوت الموضة	spiritual	روحي
fashion show	عرض أزياء	sponsor	راعي
fine arts	فنون جميلة	sponsorship	رعاية
for entertainment	من أجل المتعة	storyteller	قصاص
		strategy	خطة

fortification	تحصين	sufficiency	إكتفاء
fortress	حصن	suspense	تشويق
glory	مجد	talented	موهوب
graphics	فن الجرافيك	tastes	أذواق
heritage	تراث	timid	متحفظ / جبان
hero	بطل	traditions	تقاليد
heroine	بطلة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
honest	صادق	unique	فريد
imagination	خيال	values	قيم
immigrants	مهاجرين	verbal	لفظي
immortal	خالد	vision	رؤية
incidents	أحداث	warmth	دفء
inspiration	الهام	weave	ينسج
invaders	غزاة	willingness	إستعداد
justice	العدالة	wonders	عجائب

Politics & Society

السياسة والمجتمع

activist	ناشط	military	حربي / عسكري
administrative capital	العاصمة الإدارية	military secrets	اسرار عسكرية
ambassador	سفير	miracles	المعجزات
armed forces	قوات مسلحة	Muslims	المسلمين
assassinate	يغتال	nation	أمة
assassination	إغتيال	national security	الامن القومي
belonging	الإنتماء	national unity	وحدة وطنية
betray home	يخون الوطن	nationalism	القومية
bomb	قنبلة / يفجر قنبلة	negotiate	يفاوض
carry out	يُنَفَّذ	negotiation	التفاوض
citizen	مواطن	obstacles	عقبات
citizenship	المواطنة	parliament	برلمان
civilian	مدني	partner	شريك
civilized	متحضر	party	حزب
commitment to	الإلتزام بـ	peace	السلام
conflict	صراع		

congested	متكدس	peace makers	صناع السلام
conspiracy	مؤامرة	policy	سياسة
constitution	دستور	politician	سياسي (شخص)
contribute to	يساهم في	politics	علم السياسة
cooperation	التعاون	pray	يدعو / يصلي
Copts	الأقباط	president	رئيس
crossroad	مُلتقي	prevail	يسود / ينتشر
democracy	ديموقراطية	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
democratic	ديموقراطي	principles	المبادئ
devote	يُكرّس	progress	التقدم
dictatorship	ديكتاتورية	protective	واقِي
difficulty	صعوبة - مأزق	rebel	بتمرد
diplomacy	دبلوماسية	rebellion	تمرد / متمرّد
domination	هيمنة / سيطرة	refugee	لاجئ
efforts	جهود	regime	نظام حكم
eliminate	يقضي علي	rejecting	رفض - نبذ
emigration	الهجرة	require	يتطلب
equality	مساواة	resistance	مقاومة
exert	يبذل	restrictions	القيود - الضوابط
extremism	تطرف	revolutions	الثورات
extremist	متطرف	rights	حقوق
fatal	قاتل / خطير	sacrifice	يضحي - تضحية
flourish	يزدهر	secret agent	عميل سري
formal request	طلب رسمي	security forces	أجهزة الأمن
freedom	حرية	service	خدمة
government bodies	المؤسسات الحكومية	shield	درع
governorate	محافظة	spy	جاسوس
heavenly religions	الديانات السماوية	spying	تخابر
housing	الإسكان	stability	استقرار
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	strictness	الحزم
human values	القيم الإنسانية	subjects	رعايا
ignorance	الجهل	tendency	تَوَجُّه
illegal	غير شرعي		

illiteracy	الأمية	terrorism	الإرهاب
impose	يفرض	terrorist	إرهابي
independence	إستقلال	the state	الدولة
injustice	الظلم	tolerance	التسامح
intelligence	المخابرات	transitional stage	مرحلة إنتقالية
leak secrets	يسرب أسرار	treason	خيانة عظمى
legal	شرعي / قانوني	treaty	معاهدة
lethal	قاتل	truce	هدنة
liberation	تحرير	tyranny	طغيان
loyalty	انتماء	victim	ضحية
major	كبير - رئيسي	violate	ينتهك
martyr	شهيد	violation	انتهاك
		weapons	أسلحة

Various Issues

قضايا متنوعة

accommodation	إقامة	intimacy	ألفة - مودة
acquire	يكتسب	journalism	صحافة
amateur	هاو	local tourism	سياحة داخلية
amuse	يمتع / يسلى	magical	ساحر - خلاب
ancient / long-standing	عريق	major powers	قوي عظمي
annually	سنويا	manufacturer	صانع
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوي	mass tourism	سياحة جماعية
attractions	أماكن جذب	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
audience	جمهور	monuments	أثار
ban	يحظر	motivate	يحث / يدفع
bear	يحمل	mountaineers	متسلقو الجبال
broaden	يُوسّع	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
champion	بطل رياضي	news agency	وكالة انباء
championship	بطولة رياضية	Olympic games	الالعاب الاولمبية
coach/ trainer	مدرب	outlet	مُتنفّس - مخرج
competition	منافسة	pay	راتب / أجر
competitors	منافسين	pharaohs	فراعنة
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية
critical	نقدي / حرج	professional	محترف
criticism	نقد	prohibition	حظر - منع
criticize	ينقد		

cultural tourism	سياحة ثقافية	propaganda	الدعاية
current events	الأحداث الجارية	public relations	علاقات عامة
decisive	حازم / حاسم	public transport	المواصلات العامة
deprive	يَحْرِم	purity	نقاء
deviation	الإنحراف	rapprochement	التقارب
dignity	كرامة	rare	نادر
disasters	كوارث	recreational tourism	سياحة ترفيهية
disputes	التزاعات	reinforce	يعزز - يدعم
dominance	هيمنة / سيطرة	relationship	العلاقة
dominate	يهيمن / يسيطر علي	resort	منتجع
earner	مصدر دخل	rights	الحقوق
ecotourism	سياحة صديقة للبيئة	risk	خطر
enrich	يُثري	rumour	إشاعة
equality	المساواة	satisfy	يُرضي / يُشبع
erosion	التعرية	security	أمن
fair play	اللعب النظيف	seek	يسعي / يرغب في
farming	الزراعة	self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
finals	نهائيات	self-dependence	الاعتماد علي النفس
flourish	يزدهر	selfishness	الأنانية
flow of traffic	انسياب المرور	set a record	يسجل رقما قياسيا
free press	صحافة حرة	set an example	يعطي قدوة
migration	هجرة	settlement	تسوية / حل
friendship	الصداقة	sightseeing	زيارة المعالم
gallantry	الشهامة	silver	الفضة / فضي
generous	كريم	source	مصدر
glory	المجد	stamina	قوة الاحتمال
grateful	شاكر / ممتن	stream	التيار
greed	جشع / طمع	surroundings	الأشياء المحيطة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	take drugs	يتعاطى المخدرات
homesickness	حنين للوطن	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
honour	شرف / يكرم	therapeutic tourism	سياحة علاجية
hospitality	كرم الضيافة	tourist site	موقع سياحي
humour	فكاهة	tournament	دورة
hurricanes	أعاصير	traffic regulations	قواعد المرور
ideal	مثالي	transition	تَحَوُّل
ignorance	الجهل	travel agency	وكالة سفريات
impression	إنطباع	unite peoples	توحد الشعوب
instruct	يُعَلِّم	unselfishness	الإيثار
interpret	يترجم فوري	vacations	عطلات / اجازات
interpreter	مترجم فوري	victory	نصر
		virtues	الفضائل

New Hello!

& Treasure Island

Answers Notebook
مفكرة الإجابات

خاص بالسادة المعلمين



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



AL TALADA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication and distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com

**1st
Sec.**
2021
FIRST TERM

Unit (1)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 36 : 40)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. b | 4. c |
| 5. c | 6. a | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. c | 10. d | 11. b | 12. d |
| 13. d | 14. a | 15. b | 16. c |
| 17. a | 18. c | 19. b | 20. b |
| 21. d | 22. b | 23. c | 24. b |
| 25. a | 26. c | 27. b | 28. c |
| 29. b | 30. a | 31. c | 32. b |
| 33. a | 34. d | 35. c | 36. a |
| 37. b | 38. c | 39. d | 40. b |
| 41. c | 42. a | 43. c | 44. c |
| 45. b | 46. a | 47. c | 48. b |
| 49. b | 50. a | 51. c | 52. d |
| 53. a | 54. b | 55. d | 56. b |
| 57. d | 58. a | 59. b | 60. c |

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 49 : 54)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. b | 10. a | 11. b | 12. b |
| 13. a | 14. d | 15. c | 16. d |
| 17. d | 18. b | 19. d | 20. c |
| 21. c | 22. d | 23. b | 24. d |
| 25. b | 26. c | 27. b | 28. b |
| 29. d | 30. c | 31. c | 32. a |
| 33. b | 34. c | 35. b | 36. c |
| 37. a | 38. c | 39. c | 40. c |
| 41. d | 42. b | 43. a | 44. a |

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 45. c | 46. b | 47. d | 48. b |
| 49. a | 50. d | 51. d | 52. d |
| 53. b | 54. a | 55. b | 56. a |
| 57. c | 58. a | 59. d | 60. c |
| 61. b | 62. b | 63. d | 64. b |
| 65. b | 66. c | 67. a | 68. c |
| 69. d | 70. a | 71. a | 72. b |
| 73. c | | | |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable

word(s) :

(Pages 54 : 55)

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 1. a. was | b. spent |
| c. with / do / to do | |
| d. while / as | |
| 2. a. to | b. was |
| c. but | d. him |
| 3. a. first | b. After |
| c. did | d. stopped |
| 4. a. It | b. there |
| c. had | |
| d. that/ travelling | |
| 5. a. a | b. that |
| c. was | d. hour |
| 6. a. That | b. happened |
| c. had | d. didn't |

Translation

Translate into Arabic (Page 63)

١. بعض أنواع الحيوانات معرضة للخطر بطريقة أو بآخرى، فهم يواجهون خطر الانقراض مثل الديناصورات وغيرها من المخلوقات.

٢. إن الإنسان هو المسؤول عن تدمير النظام البيئي، فالتشظية الإنسان هي التي أدت عن غير قصد إلى معظم المشاكل البيئية التي تواجهها اليوم.

٣. إن حماية الحياة البرية مسؤولية العالم أجمع، فمن الإجماع أن نترك السياسات الرعناء تدمر العالم الذي نعيش فيه.

Translate into English (Page 64)

1. Protecting rare species of animals and plants from extinction is an environmental duty. These creatures play a vital role in the ecological balance.
2. The Red Sea coast in Egypt, which extends for hundreds of kilometers, is a tourist attraction, it is characterized by a healthy environment and fascinating coral reefs.
3. Voluntary work is indispensable in any human society. Those who have the time and experience should use them to help others in the society in which they live.

Test on Unit (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (Pages 66 : 68)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. a | 3. a | 4. a |
| 5. a | 6. c | 7. b | 8. d |
| 9. c | 10. b | 11. c | 12. a |
| 13. b | 14. c | 15. b | 16. c |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. a. driving b. it
c. had d. none

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. b 19. b 20. c 21. c
22. No, they can't. Bats can't live in water and dolphins can't live away from water for a long time.
23. Dolphins are friendly, helpful and intelligent. However, it is better for them to be free.
24. Yes, I like them because they are intelligent animal that are very kind to people.

25. Translate into Arabic :

لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن السياحة في مصر ضرورية للغاية، فهي تخلق فرص عمل وتجلب عملة صعبة إلى البلاد.

26. Translate into English :

Egypt has the largest part of the ancient monuments in the world, so this should be used to attract more tourists through good promotion.

27. Writing :

Student's own answer

Unit (2)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (Pages 91 : 95)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. a | 8. d |
| 9. a | 10. d | 11. a | 12. b |
| 13. b | 14. a | 15. a | 16. a |

Answer

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 17. b | 18. c | 19. b | 20. c |
| 21. b | 22. d | 23. a | 24. c |
| 25. b | 26. a | 27. d | 28. b |
| 29. c | 30. a | 31. d | 32. a |
| 33. b | 34. d | 35. d | 36. c |
| 37. a | 38. b | 39. c | 40. a |
| 41. b | 42. d | 43. a | 44. c |
| 45. a | 46. d | 47. b | 48. c |
| 49. a | 50. d | 51. b | 52. a |
| 53. c | 54. b | 55. a | 56. b |
| 57. b | | | |

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Pages 102 : 105)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. c | 8. b |
| 9. a | 10. d | 11. c | 12. d |
| 13. c | 14. c | 15. d | 16. d |
| 17. a | 18. a | 19. c | 20. b |
| 21. d | 22. c | 23. c | 24. a |
| 25. a | 26. d | 27. a | 28. c |
| 29. d | 30. c | 31. b | 32. c |
| 33. a | 34. b | 35. b | 36. c |
| 37. b | 38. a | 39. a | 40. b |
| 41. b | 42. b | 43. a | 44. c |
| 45. c | 46. c | 47. d | 48. b |
| 49. c | 50. d | 51. b | 52. a |
| 53. d | 54. a | 55. b | |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

(Page 106)

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. a. don't | b. have |
| c. work | d. playing |
| 2. a. didn't | b. used |
| c. were | d. visiting |

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| 3. a. is | b. was |
| c. His | d. ago |
| 4. a. used | b. They |
| c. growing | d. are |
| 5. a. met | b. had |
| c. a | d. The |

Translation

Translate into Arabic (Page 115)

١. لقد كانت المرأة المصرية دائما شريكة هاما للرجل، فالمرأة في مصر قوية وحكيمة ومتعاونة وذكية وطموحة.

٢. لا يمكن لأحد أن ينكر الدور الذي لعبه الدكتور زويل في العلم، فلقد تمكن من اكتشاف الفوتونانية بمساعدة فريق البحث.

٣. سيساعد استخدام أجهزة الكمبيوتر اللوحية الطلاب بطريقة إيجابية، فسوف تمكنهم من الوصول إلى مصادر المعرفة بسهولة.

Translate into English

- You can be great and famous in one field. All you need is to trust yourself and plan well to reach your goal.
- The government should be assisted (helped) in the development of the educational process in Egypt. Good education will provide us with scientists and thinkers who will make our lives better.
- Underground water under the Western Desert can be used to grow some crops, which

will provide more food for the population and it will provide a lot of jobs.

Test on Unit (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (Pages 118 : 120)

1. d 2. b 3. b 4. b
5. b 6. c 7. b 8. d
9. d 10. b 11. a 12. c
13. d 14. b 15. b 16. c

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. a. was b. is
c. spends d. to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. b 19. d 20. c 21. c

22. I think she was wise because she knew how to face that difficult situation without losing anything.

23. I think she thought he was one of her sons. Perhaps she wanted a few seconds to think and decide what to do.

24. I think she didn't owe any money to anyone. Thieves do not break into the houses of poor people. That was just a situation she created to trick the thief.

25. Translate into Arabic :

يُعتَبَرُ مُحَمَّدٌ صَلاَحٌ حَالِيًا وَاحِدًا مِنْ أَشْهُرِ الْمَصْرِيِّينَ، فَهُوَ لَاعِبُ كُرَةِ قَدَمٍ عَالِمِي شَهِيرٌ حَقَّقَ تَجَاوُحًا كَبِيرًا.

26. Translate into English :

Girls' education is not less important than that of boys. Everyone must have the same opportunities in education and work.

27. Writing :

Student's own answer

Unit (3)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (Pages 142 : 145)

1. b 2. a 3. c 4. c
5. a 6. b 7. c 8. d
9. c 10. b 11. b 12. d
13. b 14. c 15. b 16. d
17. d 18. a 19. c 20. a
21. c 22. d 23. c 24. a
25. b 26. c 27. d 28. a
29. d 30. c 31. d 32. a
33. b 34. d 35. a 36. a
37. b 38. c 39. d 40. a
41. a 42. c 43. b 44. b
45. a 46. b 47. c 48. c
49. b 50. c 51. d 52. b
53. d 54. a

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (Pages 154 : 157)

1. d 2. b 3. a 4. b
5. c 6. b 7. c 8. c
9. a 10. c 11. b 12. a
13. c 14. b 15. b 16. b

Answer

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 17. a | 18. d | 19. a | 20. a |
| 21. c | 22. b | 23. a | 24. c |
| 25. c | 26. b | 27. a | 28. a |
| 29. c | 30. c | 31. a | 32. b |
| 33. d | 34. d | 35. b | 36. a |
| 37. c | 38. c | 39. c | 40. b |
| 41. c | 42. c | 43. c | 44. d |
| 45. c | 46. b | 47. a | 48. c |
| 49. d | 50. c | 51. d | |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

(Page 158)

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. a. has | b. was |
| c. for | d. to |
| 2. a. last | b. when |
| c. He | d. already |
| 3. a. last | b. in |
| c. have | d. since |
| 4. a. have | b. The |
| c. was | d. ever |

Translation

Translate into Arabic (Page 165)

١. بعد شكسبير ، يُعدّ تشارلز ديكنز هو الكاتب الأكثر شهرة في اللغة الإنجليزية، فالأول كتب قصائد عظيمة والأخر ألف روايات رائعة.

٢. إن قراءة الأعمال الأدبية مثل الروايات والمسرحيات والقصائد مفيدة للغاية، فذلك يوسع آفاقنا ويعطينا تجارب مفيدة.

٣. النجاح ليس شيئاً يحدث بالصدفة، ولكي تكون ناجحاً يجب أن تعمل بجد وفقاً للخطة.

Translate into English (Page 166)

1. You have to work very hard to succeed in reaching your goal in life.

Real success comes after years of perseverance and ambitious work.

2. It is better to tell the truth in all situations even if it makes others angry. Lying is one of the bad features which is not religiously or socially acceptable.
3. Street children are timed bombs that can explode at any time. Everyone has to do what they can to solve this serious problem.

Test on Unit (3)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (Pages 168 : 170)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. c | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. c | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. c | 10. c | 11. d | 12. d |
| 13. b | 14. d | 15. a | 16. b |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 17. a. is | b. hasn't |
| c. yet | d. got |

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. a 19. c 20. b 21. b
22. I think it is easy for a lion to hunt at night. Perhaps the day is very hot.
23. Lions eat meat while zebras eat plants. Lions belong to the cat family while zebras are mammals.

24. If meat eaters disappeared, grass eaters would increase in number and will eat all the plants and tree leaves. If grass eaters disappeared, meat eaters would find nothing to eat and they would die out.

25. Translate into Arabic :

المدينة مليئة بالحركة والضوضاء والإثارة، فهي المكان الذي يمكنك العيش فيه بين الآلاف من الناس ولكنك تشعر بالوحدة.

26. Translate into English :

One of the main reasons for the migration from villages to cities is the economic situation. Working in agriculture does not provide the same income as individual gets in other fields.

27. Writing :

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Units (1, 2 & 3)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (Pages 176 : 178)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. b | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. a | 7. a | 8. a |
| 9. b | 10. c | 11. d | 12. c |
| 13. b | 14. c | 15. b | 16. c |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. travelled | 2. enjoyed |
| 3. took | 4. were sailing |
| 5. fell | 6. was |
| 7. bought | |

Translate into Arabic :

١. إنها المرة الأولى التي أقوم فيها بعمل تطوعي.
٢. لقد أقام الفراغة حضارة عظيمة منذ آلاف السنين.

Translate into English :

- Egypt develops ecotourism to protect different environments along the Red Sea Coast.
- My father gave me this book last week. However, I haven't finished reading it so far.

Reading Passage :

- b
- b
- b
- c
- I would make sure to save what I type on the laptop more often. I would make sure the battery of my laptop is charged.
- Having good imagination is very important, especially for writers. Good imagination helps you find different exciting ideas.
- I think she would take a short rest. Perhaps she would go to bed for the night.

Unit (4)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (Pages 197 : 200)

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. c | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. b | 8. d |

Answer

9. c	10. c	11. d	12. d
13. c	14. c	15. b	16. a
17. c	18. b	19. d	20. c
21. a	22. b	23. d	24. b
25. a	26. d	27. d	28. d
29. c	30. d	31. d	32. b
33. a	34. b	35. d	36. c
37. c	38. a	39. c	40. b
41. a	42. c	43. b	44. a
45. b	46. c	47. b	48. a
49. d	50. b		

Exercises on Structure

Countable & Uncountable Nouns

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 208 : 211)

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. a
5. c	6. b	7. b	8. c
9. d	10. d	11. d	12. b
13. a	14. c	15. a	16. d
17. b	18. b	19. d	20. d
21. d	22. b	23. c	24. c
25. c	26. d	27. a	28. c
29. d	30. b	31. c	32. c
33. d	34. c	35. d	36. d
37. b	38. c	39. d	40. d
41. b	42. d	43. a	44. b
45. a	46. d	47. c	48. a
49. c	50. a	51. d	52. c
53. a	54. b		

Articles

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 217 : 222)

1. c	2. c	3. a	4. c
5. a	6. a	7. c	8. c

9. c	10. a	11. a	12. a
13. c	14. a	15. a	16. d
17. c	18. d	19. b	20. c
21. c	22. c	23. c	24. a
25. c	26. a	27. a	28. a
29. d	30. b	31. b	32. d
33. c	34. c	35. a	36. a
37. b	38. d	39. b	40. b
41. a	42. c	43. c	44. d
45. d	46. d	47. c	48. c
49. d	50. c	51. c	52. a
53. d	54. a	55. d	56. d
57. c	58. d	59. c	60. d
61. c	62. d	63. d	64. b
65. c	66. a	67. d	68. c
69. d	70. c	71. d	

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

(Page 223)

- a. loaves b. a
c. some d. any
- a. no word / some
b. some
c. some d. any
- a. Many / Some
b. the
c. hour d. no word
- a. much
b. no word / some / enough
c. the d. less

Translation

Translate into Arabic (Page 230)

١. عندما يكون لديك الكثير من الأعمال (المهام) التي عليك القيام بها دون راحة وترفيه ، فإنك تتشعر بالتوتر ، وهذا الشعور يقضي علي فرحة الحياة والاستعداد للعمل.

٢. بمجرد أن تبدأ في التعمود على حياتك الجديدة في مكان مختلف ، يختفي التوتر تدريجياً ، حينئذ سوف تبدأ في معرفة مزايا حياتك الجديدة.

٣. يجب أن يكون هناك احترام لتنوع الآراء والأفكار ، فلدى الأشخاص المختلفين مجموعة متنوعة من الأفكار والآراء التي تثري الحياة في المجتمع.

Translate into English

1. Good education is the cornerstone of building a modern and prosperous Egyptian society. Nations advance by science, culture, sound planning and the hard work of all citizens.
2. The life of any person must have two aspects: hard work and entertainment. We will not be happy without entertainment and we will not be successful without work.
3. Many people are afraid of the beginnings of everything they do. The beginnings are always difficult and need a lot of adventure and self-confidence.

Test on Unit (4)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (Pages 233 : 235)

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. b | 7. b | 8. d |

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 9. c | 10. c | 11. d | 12. a |
| 13. b | 14. b | 15. a | 16. c |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 17. a. an | b. many |
| c. a | d. much |

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. b 19. d 20. c 21. c

22. I think she was wise because she knew how to face that difficult situation without losing anything.

23. I think she thought he was one of her sons. Perhaps she wanted a few seconds to think and decide what to do.

24. I think she didn't owe any money to anyone. Thieves do not break into the houses of poor people. That was just a situation she created to trick the thief.

25. Translate into Arabic :

ليس من السهل التكيف مع الحياة في مكان جديد خاصة عندما لا تكون اجتماعياً ، فبدء حياة جديدة في مكان جديد يحتاج إلى الكثير من الذكاء.

26. Translate into English :

No man can live happily away from others. By nature, man is a social creature who affects and is affected by those around him.

27. Writing :

Student's own answer

Unit (5)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 255 : 259)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. a | 4. b |
| 5. c | 6. c | 7. b | 8. b |
| 9. d | 10. d | 11. c | 12. a |
| 13. a | 14. d | 15. a | 16. b |
| 17. d | 18. a | 19. c | 20. b |
| 21. c | 22. d | 23. c | 24. a |
| 25. c | 26. b | 27. d | 28. b |
| 29. a | 30. b | 31. c | 32. d |
| 33. b | 34. d | 35. c | 36. a |
| 37. b | 38. c | 39. a | 40. a |
| 41. b | 42. c | 43. d | 44. d |
| 45. d | 46. a | 47. b | 48. c |
| 49. c | 50. c | 51. b | 52. a |
| 53. d | 54. a | 55. b | |

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 269 : 274)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. a | 3. b | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. c | 7. a | 8. c |
| 9. a | 10. c | 11. c | 12. b |
| 13. b | 14. c | 15. d | 16. c |
| 17. b | 18. c | 19. c | 20. d |
| 21. a | 22. c | 23. d | 24. c |
| 25. b | 26. b | 27. d | 28. c |
| 29. a | 30. d | 31. c | 32. d |
| 33. b | 34. b | 35. a | 36. d |
| 37. c | 38. a | 39. a | 40. c |
| 41. c | 42. d | 43. a | 44. b |
| 45. b | 46. c | 47. a | 48. d |
| 49. b | 50. b | 51. c | |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

(Page 274)

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. a. are | b. will |
| c. have | d. her |
| 2. a. not | b. am |
| c. a | d. it / I |
| 3. a. The | |
| b. starts / begins | |
| c. is | d. leave |
| 4. a. are | b. it |
| c. have | d. will |
| 5. a. arrives | b. will |
| c. and | d. with / of |

Translation

Translate into Arabic (Page 279)

١. لقد حققت مصر تقدماً كبيراً في مختلف مجالات الصناعة والتعليم والتكنولوجيا الحديثة.

٢. الشيء الوحيد الذي يمكننا التأكيد منه في المستقبل هو أن التكنولوجيا لن تبقى ثابتة في هذا العالم المتغير باستمرار.

٣. يستخدم الكثير من الناس الآن الهواتف الذكية التي يمكنها الاتصال بالإنترنت وإرسال رسائل البريد الإلكتروني، ويمكن أن تساعد هذه الهواتف في التحكم في حياتك الشخصية وكذلك في عملك.

Translate into English

1. Wasting time is one of the main drawbacks of using social media. You should limit the time that you can spend on these sites.

2. The mobile phone is a great revolution in the world of communications. It has made it possible to communicate with anyone anywhere very quickly.
3. New generations of smartphones allow you to make video calls. They also have many applications that help you in your studies or work.

Test on Unit (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (Pages 281 : 283)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. a | 10. d | 11. a | 12. d |
| 13. a | 14. d | 15. d | 16. d |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. a. is b. for
c. arrives d. waiting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. c 19. b 20. c 21. c
22. Yes, they are very important. Sea water evaporates and turns into fresh water through rain. Ice is a store of fresh water on earth.
23. People's health will be damaged. Agricultural soil will be harmed.

24. People should be aware of the importance of keeping rivers clean. Strict laws must be introduced to punish those who pollute rivers.

25. Translate into Arabic :

بحلول عام ٢٠٢٢، يتوقع العلماء أننا سنكون قادرين على إرسال رسائل نصية بقوة التفكير. هل تظن أن هذا سيكون ممكناً ؟

26. Translate into English :

Social networking sites are some of the most important achievements of technology, but these sites have some serious disadvantages that we should avoid.

27. Writing :

Student's own answer

Unit (6)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (Pages 302 : 305)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. a | 3. a | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. d | 7. d | 8. c |
| 9. b | 10. a | 11. a | 12. a |
| 13. d | 14. c | 15. b | 16. a |
| 17. b | 18. c | 19. a | 20. d |
| 21. b | 22. c | 23. a | 24. b |
| 25. d | 26. c | 27. c | 28. a |
| 29. a | 30. c | 31. c | 32. b |
| 33. d | 34. b | 35. c | 36. a |
| 37. c | 38. c | 39. d | 40. c |
| 41. a | 42. d | 43. b | 44. a |
| 45. d | 46. b | 47. c | 48. b |
| 49. d | 50. a | 51. b | 52. c |
| 53. b | 54. b | 55. c | |

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 312 : 316)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. d | 6. d | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. d | 10. b | 11. b | 12. a |
| 13. d | 14. c | 15. a | 16. b |
| 17. c | 18. b | 19. b | 20. c |
| 21. a | 22. b | 23. c | 24. b |
| 25. c | 26. c | 27. b | 28. b |
| 29. a | 30. a | 31. b | 32. c |
| 33. b | 34. c | 35. b | 36. b |
| 37. b | 38. a | 39. c | 40. c |
| 41. a | 42. c | 43. c | 44. c |
| 45. a | 46. a | 47. a | 48. c |
| 49. d | 50. a | 51. b | 52. b |
| 53. c | 54. c | 55. a | |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

(Page 316)

- | | |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1. a. to | b. the |
| c. not | d. because |
| 2. a. tried | b. but |
| c. to | d. There |
| 3. a. every | b. start / begin |
| c. would | d. my |
| 4. a. to | b. Don't |
| c. to | d. let |
| 5. a. to | b. be |
| c. how | d. go / practise |

Translation

Translate into Arabic (Page 323)

١. الروايات والقصص تعتمد على السرد والتفاصيل، لكن الشعر، من ناحية أخرى، يعتمد على القافية والإيقاع والصورة البيعية.

٢. الطبيعة، كما تم خلقها، كانت مليئة بالتناغم والجمال، وعندما تدخل الإنسان بغيره دمر كل شيء جميل.

٣. على المرء أن يبذل قصارى جهده في العمل لتحقيق أهدافه، ويجب أن يستمتع أيضًا بجمال الحياة لتخفيف ضغط العمل.

Translate into English

- When the leaves of trees fall in autumn and the branches become bare, nature loses much of its beauty and attractiveness.
- There is no doubt that reading literary works has many benefits. It enriches our culture, gives us many experiences and makes us enjoy the situations that the writer creates.
- Poetry takes you into a fantasy world full of happiness and spiritual harmony. It addresses the beautiful feelings that not everyone is able to express.

Test on Unit (6)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 326 : 328)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. d | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. a | 7. b | 8. b |
| 9. c | 10. a | 11. c | 12. c |
| 13. c | 14. b | 15. d | 16. a |

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. a. had b. work
c. have d. made

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. d 19. c 20. a 21. b

22. I think he wanted to seem knowledgeable and show he knew important people. He had better be natural.

23. Of course I wouldn't. I would apologise and leave at once.

24. I would tell him not to worry and that it gives me great honour to know him. Of course, it would not be easy.

25. Translate into Arabic :

هناك عدة أنواع من الكتابات الأدبية، لكن بلا شك النوع الأكثر جاذبية للطبيعة العاطفية للإنسان هو الشعر.

26. Translate into English :

Everyone knows that women are love, appreciate and enjoy poetry more, but it is ironic that the most famous and most poets are men, not women.

27. Writing :

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Units (4, 5 & 6)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (Pages 335 : 338)

1. b 2. c 3. c 4. d

5. d 6. d 7. a 8. b

9. d 10. c 11. d 12. a

13. c 14. b 15. b 16. c

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

1. be 2. going
3. will 4. won't
5. are 6. will

Translate into Arabic :

١. هل تعتقد أن الإنسان سيعيش علي القمر في المستقبل ؟
٢. لدي الشباب القدرة علي المشاركة في العمل التطوعي في مجالات مختلفة.

Translate into English :

1. I always remember to change my mobile password every month.
2. We should make use of our free time in practicing useful hobbies.

Reading Passage :

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b

5. I think getting information easily is the most important positive effect of the internet. We can get information about everything at any time from any place with a few clicks on the mouse.

6. I think digital technology will go on developing.

7. I limit the time I look at the screen. I get enough sleep and do physical exercises regularly.

Treasure Island

Chapter (1)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 347 : 348)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. b | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. b |
| 9. c | 10. a | 11. d | 12. a |
| 13. c | 14. b | 15. c | 16. d |
| 17. b | 18. a | 19. c | 20. a |

Chapter (2)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 354 : 355)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. d | 8. c |
| 9. a | 10. c | 11. b | 12. d |
| 13. a | 14. d | 15. c | 16. b |
| 17. a | 18. c | 19. d | 20. a |

Chapter (3)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 362 : 363)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. a | 7. b | 8. a |
| 9. d | 10. c | 11. d | 12. b |
| 13. a | 14. c | 15. b | 16. d |
| 17. a | 18. c | 19. b | 20. d |

Exercises

on Chapters (1, 2 & 3)

General Exercises: Multiple

Choice :

(Page: 364)

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. a |

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 9. d | 10. c | 11. c | 12. a |
| 13. d | 14. c | 15. b | 16. a |
| 17. c | 18. c | 19. d | 20. b |

Consolidate your vocabulary:

Chapter 1 :

(Page: 366)

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. d | 7. c | 8. a |
| 9. c | 10. b | 11. d | 12. c |

Consolidate your vocabulary:

Chapter 2 :

(Page: 367)

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. d | 8. c |
| 9. a | 10. b | | |

Consolidate your vocabulary:

Chapter 3 :

(Page: 367)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. d | 10. c | 11. b | 12. d |
| 13. a | 14. c | 15. b | 16. d |

Chapter (4)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 375 : 376)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. d | 8. c |
| 9. a | 10. d | 11. c | 12. a |
| 13. b | 14. d | 15. b | 16. a |
| 17. c | 18. d | 19. b | 20. a |

Chapter (5)

Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d :

(Pages 382 : 383)

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. a | 8. d |
| 9. c | 10. a | 11. d | 12. a |

13. c 14. b 15. a 16. d
17. a 18. c 19. b 20. c

Chapter (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (Pages 389 : 390)

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. b
5. d 6. a 7. c 8. b
9. b 10. a 11. d 12. c
13. a 14. d 15. c 16. b
17. d 18. a 19. c 20. a

Exercises on Chapters (4, 5 & 6)

General Exercises: Multiple

Choice : (Page 391)

1. a 2. b 3. d 4. c
5. b 6. a 7. c 8. a
9. d 10. b 11. c 12. a
13. b 14. a 15. c 16. b
17. a 18. d 19. c 20. b

Consolidate your vocabulary:

Chapter 4 : (Page 393)

1. a 2. c 3. a 4. d
5. a 6. c 7. a 8. d
9. b 10. d 11. a 12. c
13. a 14. b 15. d 16. c

Consolidate your vocabulary:

Chapter 5 : (Page 394)

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b
5. a 6. d 7. c 8. a
9. c 10. b

Consolidate your vocabulary:

Chapter 6 : (Page 395)

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d
5. c 6. a 7. c 8. a
9. d 10. b

Answers of Governorates Examinations

Model 1

Vocabulary & Structures

1. c. was talking
2. d. don't have 3. c. doing
4. a. a
5. d. is going to shower
6. b. living
7. c. community 8. c. fight
9. d. cyberbullying
10. a. head
11. c. sunbathing 12. a. talk
13. a. structure 14. d. avoid
15. b. another 16. d. scar

Gap Filling

17. a. If / When / once
b. is
c. them d. Never / Don't

Reading

1. b. curing serious illnesses.
2. a. is exactly the same as.
3. c. there is only one of each person.
4. d. The Debate over cloning.
5. Cloning can help provide human organs for transplant surgeries. It can help protect endangered species from extinction.
6. No, I don't think so. It can lead to disasters. Through cloning, evil leaders such as Hitler could be cloned. It will also cause to ethical (أخلاقية) problems in societies.

7. I'd like to clone my grandfather because I miss him very much.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

يفضل بعض الناس مشاهدة الأفلام على القراءة وهذه مشكلة كبيرة، في المقارنة بالقراءة تعد مشاهدة الأفلام طريقة سلبية لقضاء الوقت.

B. Translate into English :

The use of modern software can help improve the environment of personal information from hacking.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 2

Vocabulary & Structures

1. a. helped me learn
2. c. has been visited
3. a. is played
4. d. to
5. d. to seeing
6. b. part
7. c. writer
8. a. expression
9. d. contact
10. a. defend
11. c. fort
12. b. certainly
13. d. cannon
14. a. experience
15. a. poet
16. b. supplies

Gap Filling

17. a. the b. However
c. of d. in

Reading

1. c. A psychologist.
2. a. make laughing sounds
3. d. laughed out loud
4. a. beat me
5. Yes, I agree. Scientific research has proved that animals laugh. I believe in science.
6. I think the main idea is :
Animals do laugh.
The writer presented it through giving two examples of two scientists with two animals.
7. Yes, I think so. It was delighted when Shumaker flicked it with water and it laughed out loudly. When Shumaker walked away, Junior threw him with water.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

الكتابة مهنة تحتاج إلى الكثير من المهارات وقراءة الكثير من الكتب في شتى الموضوعات، وبالإضافة إلى ذلك ينبغي أن يتمتع الكاتب بالموهبة والاستعداد الفطري.

B. Translate into English :

Traditional methods of learning can no longer be relied upon. There are many ways to make education more enjoyable, and most of these depend on software that is available on the internet.

Answer

Gap Filling

17. a. an b. if
c. who / that d. at

Reading

1. b. Careers are always open to change
2. d. 10 years before his death
3. c. an actor
4. a. knowing what you really want to do
5. I am for it because it is impossible to do the same job all your life. You need to prepare for job at any time.
6. He succeeded as a politician as he had the qualities and qualifications for this kind of work.
I don't think he expected to be the president of the USA.
7. Yes, I think so. Because he was a talented painter.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

إن مساعدة ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة مسؤولية كل فرد في المجتمع، فيجب أن نبدل قصارى جهدنا لجعلهم يختلطون مع أفراد المجتمع.

B. Translate into English :

Before using modern devices, we should read the instructions of the operation of each device. These instructions explain the best way to use those devices properly in a way that does not harm the user or the device.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 5

Vocabulary & Structures

1. c. broke 2. a. are
3. a. have met
4. d. No article
5. c. is going to fall
6. d. doing
7. d. comment 8. b. rhyme
9. d. rob 10. a. biology
11. c. plump 12. a. true
13. c. device 14. a. lock
15. d. grapped 16. c. with

Gap Filling

17. a. Every / Each b. had
c. too / as well d. it

Reading

1. b. Jules verne : The father of science fiction.
2. a. study law
3. d. Five weeks in Balloon.
4. c. still read and loved.
5. Yes, I'm interested in both because they have new and imaginative ideas.
6. Yes, I do. Science fiction films need very high-tech. They also cost too much money. Arab film makers can't afford this.

7. I don't like it very much. The writer gave only one example of science fiction writers.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

دعم (تشجيع) فريق رياضي لا يعنى كراهية الآخرين الذين يدعمون (يشجعون) الفرق المنافسة، فيجب علينا تغيير أفكارنا حول ذلك، وأن نتذكر أنه مجرد وسيلة للتسلية لا أكثر.

B. Translate into English :

Good planning, good time utilization and constructive cooperation among team members must lead to great success in work and save time and effort.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 6

Vocabulary & Structures

1. d. will do
2. a. want
3. c. tore
4. c. lots of
5. d. have you ever
6. a. have studied
7. b. guardians
8. d. biologist
9. c. encouraged
10. a. clues
11. c. charity
12. d. crew
13. b. improve
14. c. makes
15. b. fatter
16. a. imprisoned

Gap Filling

17. a. why
- b. the
- c. as
- d. of

Reading

1. a. most
2. d. engineers
3. c. cities
4. b. closed at both ends
5. Scientists have been studying this idea as a possible solution to the problem of the world's decreasing fresh water supply.
6. Yes, I think so. Scientists can invent a huge container which can be easily moved in the sea depending on the fact that ice floats in water.
7. Moving ice caps.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

تقوم المرأة الآن بنفس الوظائف وتحصل على نفس الأجر مقابل نفس العمل مع الرجل، ومع ذلك، يجب ألا تنسى المرأة أن دورها الأكبر هو تنشئة مواطنين صالحين.

B. Translate into English :

Success cannot be achieved by chance. You may be lucky once, but lasting success requires effort, good planning and cooperation with others.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 7

Vocabulary & Structures

1. c. to buy
2. a. is travelling
3. a. a
4. c. has hit
5. c. don't feed
6. b. got used
7. b. paradise
8. c. footballers
9. a. cultures
10. c. online
11. d. trust
12. c. hay
13. d. crazy
14. c. into
15. b. sure
16. c. post

Gap Filling

17. a. it / that / this b. to
c. the d. fitter

Reading

1. a. leak
2. c. gas
3. b. salty
4. c. water cycle
5. There are two stage : the evaporation stage and the precipitation stage.
6. Yes, of course. The increase in population increases water consumption.
7. I think it is true. Most rain water seeps into the ground through infiltration and collects under the earth's surface.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

كلما تمتع الناس بالحرية، يمكنهم تحقيق التقدم في جميع المجالات، ومع ذلك فهذه الحرية ليست مطلقة، فهي تنتهي عند حدود حرية الآخرين.

B. Translate into English :

The government carries out several giant national projects such as the New Administrative Capital project, power plants and desert land reclamation for agriculture.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 8

Vocabulary & Structures

1. d. was doing
2. b. was
3. a. broken
4. b. haven't
5. c. while
6. d. amazingly
7. b. design
8. a. impact
9. d. limited
10. c. beach
11. b. isolated
12. a. unique
13. c. inn
14. d. sustainable
15. a. trek
16. b. pale

Gap Filling

17. a. of b. both
c. They d. an

Reading

1. a. scarce
2. a. affected hunting
3. c. different from others
4. c. killed for food.
5. The Great Reindeer.
6. We knew about them from their fossilised bones and their

appearance from the superb portraits of them painted by prehistoric man, particularly in the cave of Lascaux in Central France.

7. It led to the reduction of reindeers' size. Perhaps when food was served to reindeers on farms, they didn't need to be so large or strong.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

توفر التجارب الحياتية مواقف تعليمية أعمق من تلك التي توفرها المدارس، ما تتعلمه بالتجربة في الرياضة له تأثير عميق على شخصية الفرد.

B. Translate into English :

We must work on thoughtful plans to attract more tourists. Egypt has a lot of attractions such as the unique monuments, the beautiful climate throughout the year and the fascinating beaches.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 9

Vocabulary & Structures

1. b. During
2. d. have added
3. d. has gone
4. b. much luggage
5. b. will take
6. a. to go

7. b. debts
8. a. debate
9. c. online
10. d. use
11. c. eco-trip
12. c. bullied
13. b. sense
14. c. whistle
15. d. with
16. d. follow

Gap Filling

17. a. them b. to
c. Each / Every d. their

Reading

1. c. achievable
2. b. imaginative
3. b. people expect to believe it
4. a. many people
5. It can be believable by making it based on logical bases أُسُس. It has to present ideas that are linked to scientific progress.
6. Yes, I agree. When it is related to ideas which are not linked to the rules of the real world, it becomes unbelievable.
7. I think the main idea is :
How to make science fiction successful. The writer gave details about the qualities of successful and unsuccessful science fiction.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

نتعلم اللغات لتكون قادرين على التواصل مع الأجانب في مستقبلنا المهني وأن نكون قادرين على الاستفادة من ثقافات الشعوب الأخرى وتقسمهم العلمي.

B. Translate into English :

We have to exert more effort to reduce environmental pollution. Going on polluting the environment in this way is a process of destroying the future of life on the earth.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 10

Vocabulary & Structures

1. b. is fed
2. c. Have you done
3. b. is this
4. d. Are you
5. d. doing
6. a. have lived
7. b. owe
8. d. grabbed
9. c. scar
10. b. stuck
11. d. loads
12. a. over the moon
13. d. cliff
14. b. Dare
15. c. blind
16. c. cutter

Gap Filling

17. a. Each / Every b. our / the
c. another d. with

Reading

1. d. medication
2. b. to any part of the body
3. d. no purpose
4. c. interference of invading cells with the function of the cells.

5. The types of tumours and how cancer spreads. Yes, I got some information from it.
6. Cancer can be curable in some but not all causes. Early screening of cancer can help treat it.
7. There are two types of tumours mentioned in the passage : benign tumours and malignant one. Benign tumours are not deadly and they do not affect other body tissues.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

بالنظر إلى تأثير الحاسب الآلي على كل مناحي الحياة، فإننا لا نبالغ عندما نقول أنه أهم اختراع في العصر الحديث.

B. Translate into English :

Learning foreign languages and computer skills is a necessity for every learner at the moment, both of which are necessary for each graduate to get a suitable job.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 11

Vocabulary & Structures

1. d. lost
2. b. will win

3. d. a lot of sugar 4. b. just
5. b. never has 6. d. isn't
7. d. attractions 8. d. eco-
9. d. checked
10. b. responsibility
11. c. beliefs 12. b. felt
13. a. fresh 14. a. rhythm
15. b. went 16. b. to

Gap Filling

17. a. on b. and
c. a d. It

Reading

- a. flat
- d. layers
- a. only one shape
- d. many mountains
- The main idea is : the land forms of the earth. I think its style is direct. The writer presents directly in a range.
- Some valleys are V-shaped, and some are U-shaped. Plateaus are like mountains, but they are flat on top.
- Yes, I agree. Volcanoes can from some land forms like mountains and islands.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

يمكن أن تؤدي الحروب والتراعات الإقليمية إلى نقص الغذاء في أنحاء مختلفة من العالم. من ناحية أخرى، يؤدي السلام إلى الرفاهية والإزدهار.

B. Translate into English :

Most countries in the world suffer from high prices and unemployment as a result of the continuous increase in population, the wrong economic policies and natural disasters such as floods and droughts.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 12

Vocabulary & Structures

- a. conservation 2. c. swell
- b. to
- d. endanger
- a. Ecotourism 6. b. spicy
- c. pressure
- a. generous
- b. model
- c. transplant
- a. turning
- b. have just moved
- b. were you doing
- d. Did he play
- c. broken
- c. to apologise

Gap Filling

17. a. was b. where
c. well d. for

Reading

- egg
- butterfly

3. c. stage of seed growth
4. a. it never stops
5. Yes, I agree. A baby is born from a mother. This baby grows up to be an adult male or female who are able to give birth to new babies.
6. The plant would not get carbon dioxide (CO_2) and the process of photosynthesis would not take place. The life cycle of the plant would break. A seed needs water, sunlight, and nutrients from the soil to grow.
7. A dog does not start out as an egg. It is born from its mother's belly. A frog, on the other hand, begins as an egg. Not all puppies grow up and carry puppies in their bellies, only female ones.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا الاقتصادية عن طريق زيادة الأراض المزروعة في الصحراء الغربية وسيناء.

B. Translate into English :

Improving production and increasing exports are essential for economic stability. They will lead to lower prices, increasing job opportunities and providing hard currency.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 13

Vocabulary & Structures

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. a. on | |
| 2. c. does she go | 3. a. since |
| 4. b. an | |
| 5. c. am going to | 6. a. to talk |
| 7. c. home | |
| 8. a. website | 9. a. fight |
| 10. a. swell | |
| 11. a. repaired | |
| 12. b. rhyme | |
| 13. c. transplant | 14. a. social |
| 15. a. supplies | 16. a. done |

Gap Filling

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 17. a. It | b. took |
| c. The | d. of |

Reading

1. b. a gift
2. d. down slowly
3. c. before
4. c. just before the man reached the ground.
5. No, I don't think so. He was very delighted when he was safe after the fall.
6. I fell very surprised. Fate saved the falling man, and the same fate made a motorbike kill him.
7. I think he was a grateful man. He insisted on giving the lorry driver a treat for saving him even if by luck.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

عندما نرى شخصاً ما لأول مرة، غالباً ما نتسرع في الحكم على نوعية هذا الشخص، وهذا هو السلوك السلبي يسمى التحيز (الحكم المسبق).

B. Translate into English :

We should make positive use of our free time by doing useful activities such as sports, reading or joining a charity.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 14

Vocabulary & Structures

1. b. arranging
2. c. the book was written.
3. d. drawing
4. c. much
5. a. a
6. c. are visiting
7. a. donor
8. d. known
9. c. religious
10. b. short-term
11. b. hurt
12. a. cooperation
13. d. admire
14. c. praised
15. c. hometown
16. b. monitors

Gap Filling

17. a. it b. the
- c. an d. more

Reading

1. c. one and a half return tickets.
2. c. avoid paying money.
3. a. the receipt
4. b. Alexandria
5. The return ticket from Luxor to Alexandria costs 250 pounds. The station master said the half return ticket costs one 125 pounds.
6. No, I don't think so. This woman is a big liar. She lied about her daughter's age.
7. I think he was a clever man. He knew how to overcome the strange situation the woman put him in.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

تساعد منظمة الأغذية العالمية في إطعام أكثر من ٩٠ مليون شخص يعانون من سوء التغذية كل عام، وتعتمد هذه المنظمة الدولية على دعم الدول الغنية.

B. Translate into English :

The cultivation of desert land and the construction of modern cities there develop the national economy. It provides employment for young people and reduces the population in crowded areas.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Model 15

Vocabulary & Structures

1. d. they are expected to leave soon.
2. c. jobs
3. b. will see
4. c. are
5. c. to see
6. c. was having
7. a. businesses
8. a. sustainable
9. b. owe
10. c. take
11. c. knelt
12. c. poem
13. b. admire
14. d. pressure
15. b. done
16. c. fire

Gap Filling

17. a. has
- b. used
- c. At
- d. he

Reading

1. c. talented
2. b. fatherly
3. d. director
4. d. joys and sorrows
5. I think because Mr Regan was a successful manager at both work and his human relationships with his teachers. He leads a successful school and he considers its teachers his big family.

6. A successful organisation can't succeed without cooperation. Cooperation makes a manager strong and popular at the same time.
7. Yes, I like this example. A man like this is successful at work and loved in the humanitarian sense. I think he is happy as well.

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic :

لقد أحدثت اكتشافات واختراعات العلوم الحديثة تغييرات كبيرة في حياتنا منذ القرن الماضي.

B. Translate into English :

Reading is a means of developing culture and getting useful knowledge in leisure time. Exercising helps maintain physical fitness and renews activity.

Writing

Student's own answer.

Islamic Selections

Chapter (1) the Five Pillars of Islam

1. They form a cemented and unified structure of a Muslim.
2. Through the Five Pillars of Islam.

3. It is through Zakat that money and crops are protected, hatred and spleen are overcome and love and affability are developed to fill in the hearts of the faithful.
4. They break the fast provided that the prescribed number should be made up for days later.
5. Through the Five Pillars of Islam.

Chapter (2) Prayer

1. He becomes in a heavenly protection.
2. The Dawn prayer, the Noon prayer, the Afternoon prayer, the Sunset prayer and Night prayer.
3. They are a means to achieve internal and external purity.
4. He/She gets spiritual fuel.
5. They are fifty in reward.

